



EARL of KINTORE





INVERURY

THE
P R I N C I P L E S
OF
LATIN AND ENGLISH
G R A M M A R ;

DESIGNED

TO FACILITATE THE STUDY OF BOTH LANGUAGES,
BY CONNECTING THEM TOGETHER.

BY

ALEXANDER ADAM, LL. D.

RECTOR OF THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH.

Grammaticæ est ars, necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus, dulcis secretorum comes, et quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet operis, quam ostentationis. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammaticæ elementa; quia interiora velut sacri hujus aduentibus, apparet multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modo acuere ingenia puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditionem ac scientiam possit.

QUINCTILIAN. l. 4. 5.

THE SIXTH EDITION, IMPROVED AND ENLARGED.

EDINBURGH:

Printed at the University Press,

FOR WILLIAM CREECH, EDINBURGH; AND T. CADELL AND
W. DAVIES, LONDON.

Price 3s. bound in sheep, 3/6 bound in calf and lettered.

1805.

Entered in Stationers Hall.



Inverury High school

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

MAN enjoys the singular advantage of being able to communicate his thoughts by articulate sounds. Different nations employ very different verbal signs for the expression of thought; but with respect to the nature and use of the several parts of speech in general, they uniformly agree. Hence the Principles of Grammar in all languages are much the same.

The study of Grammar has been considered as an object of great importance by the wisest men in all ages. But, like other sciences, it has often been involved in mystery, and perplexed with needless difficulties. Instead of facilitating the acquisition of languages, which was its original design, it has frequently served to render that more laborious.

As language is regular in its general structure, rules must no doubt be useful to assist us in understanding it. We first learn to speak from imitation. We use the expressions which we hear from others. But when we have once gained a certain stock of words, we employ them according to general rules. When a child, for instance, has occasion to speak of two persons, he will say, "two mans," instead of "two men;" because he learns the general method of forming the plural, before he attends to particular exceptions. The same may be observed of a person who endeavours to acquire any foreign language. Memory furnishes us with proper terms to express our thoughts, but judgement must be exerted in adapting these to particular circumstances.

Every science may be reduced to principles. The principles of Grammar may be traced from the progress of the mind in the acquisition of language. Children first express their feelings by motions and gestures of the body, by cries and tears. This is the language of nature, and therefore universal. It fitly represents the quickness of sentiment and thought, which are as instantaneous as the impression of light

on the eye. Hence we always express our stronger feelings by these natural signs. But when we want to make known to others the particular conceptions of the mind, we must represent them by parts, we must divide and analyze them. We express each part by certain signs, and join these together according to the order of their relations. Thus words are both the instrument and signs of the division of thought. But as words are only artificial signs of thought, and their connection with what they represent, merely arbitrary; the same thought may be expressed by different signs, and these signs variously arranged: Hence the diversity of languages and idioms. All languages, however, must consist of the same essential parts. There must be some words to mark the subject of discourse, and others to express what we affirm concerning it. The former excite our curiosity, and by the latter it is gratified. In this manner must language have been originally invented, if it be a human invention; and in this manner do children always acquire the use of speech. We are first taught the names of objects; and then we learn the words, which express their qualities and actions. As we grow up, we become acquainted with the use of Prepositions, Adverbs, and Conjunctions, together with the different variations of Verbs, employed to mark time, number, and person. By joining these together, we form sentences, which we compound and arrange variously, according to the sentiments we want to express. Thus we come to analyze our thoughts, and represent them by parts, so as to convey them properly to others, with all their circumstances and relations.

Grammar is founded on common sense. Every sentiment expressed by words exemplifies its rules, and the ignorant observe them, as well as the learned. The Principles of Grammar are the first abstract truths which a young mind can comprehend. Children discover their capacity for understanding the rules

rules of Grammar, by putting them in practice. It is indeed difficult to make young people attend to what passes in their own minds. But perhaps this is partly owing to the abstruse manner, in which it is laid before them. The Principles of Grammar will be most successfully taught by arranging and explaining them according to the order of nature. Every art is more or less involved in obscurity by the hard terms peculiar to it. In no art is this more remarkably the case than in Grammar. The terms it employs are so abstract, that, unless they be properly explained, even persons of advanced years cannot understand them. Could this inconvenience be thoroughly removed, the Principles of Grammar might be adapted to the meanest capacity: For were the nature of the different parts of speech, and their use in sentences properly explained, the mind would recognise its own operations, and perceive that Grammar is nothing else than a delineation of those rules, which we observe in every expression of thought by words. Thus the study of Grammar would not only improve the memory, but serve in a high degree to strengthen and enlarge all the faculties of the mind.

Whatever we learn first, is the most familiar to us. For this reason children will most easily apprehend the Principles of Grammar, when explained and exemplified in that language which is natural to them. Hence it seems proper to begin in Grammar, as in reading, with the language of our own country. But as most of the modern languages in Europe are in a great measure founded on the Latin, and as a very considerable part of our knowledge, with regard both to science and taste, is derived from Latin authors, the study of Latin Grammar has generally been preferred to that of the Grammar of the mother tongue. This has particularly been the practice in this country. Till of late very little attention has

been paid to the study of English Grammar; in consequence of which many irregularities have crept into the language, which might otherwise have been prevented. Were the importance of the two languages to come into competition, that would no doubt deserve the preference which we have the most frequent occasion to use. But to such as aim at polite literature, the study of both seems necessary: and the knowledge of the one will be found highly conducive to that of the other. The English language has received its greatest improvements from those who were masters of classical learning; and perhaps it cannot be thoroughly understood, without some acquaintance with the Latin. It is certain, no one can properly translate from the one language into the other, without understanding the idioms of both. In order therefore to teach Latin Grammar with success, we should always join with it a particular attention to the rudiments of English. This is the design of the following attempt. And as in writing upon Grammar, materials entirely new cannot be expected, the compiler has with freedom borrowed from all hands whatever he judged fit for his purpose. He acknowledges himself particularly indebted to Mr. Harris's *Hermes* with regard to the principles of universal Grammar; to Wallis and Dr. Lowth, for most of his observations concerning the English; and to Gerard Vossius, and Ruddiman, with respect to the Latin.

The merit of any performance on this subject must in a great measure depend upon the method of illustration and arrangement. In the present essay that arrangement has been observed, which appeared most natural. The several parts of Grammar are reduced to general principles; and after these are subjoined particular observations and exceptions. The most essential rules and remarks are printed in larger characters; and the committing of these to memory, together

gether with the examples, will to a learner at first, it is thought, be found sufficient. A careful perusal of the particular observations, afterwards, joined with the reading of the classics, and the practice of writing and speaking Latin, will supersede the use of any other Grammar rules. If a further exercise for the memory be wanted, beautiful passages selected from the Classics seem much more proper for this purpose, than Latin verses about words and phrases, however accurately composed.

Whatever other Grammar may have formerly been taught, the perusal of the following, it is hoped, will be attended with advantage. The compiler has done every thing in his power to prepare it for the public. He has examined with care the method of education, and the several Grammars made use of both at home and abroad. He has communicated his own plan to many persons of the first character for letters in this kingdom: and the attention which they have been pleased to pay it, and the many useful observations which he has received from them, he will always remember with gratitude. He is still afraid, that notwithstanding all his care, some defects may be found in the execution; but hopes that his design at least will meet with approbation, and earnestly entreats the assistance of the encouragers of learning, to enable him to bring his scheme to greater perfection.

EDINBURGH, }
 May 1772. }

ADVERTISEMENT

TO THE THIRD EDITION.

IN this edition there are several improvements.—
 In *Etymology*, under the different terminations of nouns and verbs, are enumerated, in alphabetical order

der, not only all the simple and primitive words of the Latin tongue, but also the most common derivatives and compounds, with their signification, gender, declension, conjugation, and quantity, carefully marked; so that the Learner may see the various accidents of each word at once, without being obliged to consult different books for that purpose, or in the same book to turn to one place for the gender of a noun, to another place for its declension, and to a third place for its quantity.

The *Syntax* is greatly enlarged, by the addition of many useful observations and examples; and particularly by a full explanation of the different meaning and construction of Verbs and Prepositions, and of those phrases which occasion most difficulty to Learners, collected from the Classics, and from the best writers on Latinity.

By the natural division of words and sentences into Simple and Compound, no rule or example is introduced in *Syntax* or *Profody*, till the Learner is properly prepared, by what goes before, to understand it; which is not the case in the Latin Grammars commonly used: where, not to mention other instances, the construction of the Relative, which requires a previous acquaintance with most of the other rules of construction, is placed near the beginning of *Syntax*; and, what appears still more preposterous, in *Profody*, the rules concerning the quantity of compounds are placed before those concerning the quantity of simple words. These improprieties in arrangement occasion greater inconvenience to Learners than is generally imagined.

After the *Syntax*, there is a brief account and explanation of the various *Tropes* and *Figures* of words and of thought, which occur in the Classics, compiled from the most approved authors, chiefly from *Quintilian*, and *Marsais sur les Tropes*.

The greatest care has every where been taken, to make the translation of Latin words and phrases subservient to the knowledge of English.

These, and several other particulars not mentioned, it is hoped, will be found to be improvements of some importance in the plan of Education.—1786.

PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION.

THE compiler was first led, at an early period of life, to think of composing this Book, by observing the hurtful effects of teaching boys Grammar Rules in Latin verse, which they did not understand; while they were ignorant, not only of the principles of that language, but also of those of their mother tongue. Experience has since afforded him the most convincing proofs of the impropriety of this practice; and his opinion has been still further confirmed by perusing the writings of the old Grammarians, and of the most eminent among the moderns. The old Grammarians, *Charisius, Diomēdes, Priscianus, Probus, Donatus, Servius, Victorinus, Augustinus, Cassiodorus, Macrobius, Beda, Alcuinus, &c.* have no verse rules; and so in later times, *Perotte, Manutius, Erasmus, Valerius, Buchanan, Milton, &c.* Nicolaus Perotte was one of the chief restorers of learning in the fifteenth century. He died Archbishop of Siponto in 1480. The compiler has a copy of the first edition of his Grammar, printed at Brescia anno 1474. It is composed by way of question and answer; but without any verse rules.—Soon after the invention of printing, and perhaps before, for the compiler has not been able to ascertain the precise period, the custom was introduced of expressing the principles of almost every art

* TERENTIANUS MAURUS, a learned Grammarian, by birth an African, who is supposed to have lived under Trajan, and wrote in verse, treats only of poetry.

and science in Latin and Greek verse. The rules of Logic, and even the aphorisms of Hippocrates, were taught in this manner. Among the versifiers of Latin Grammar *Despauter* and *Lily* were the most conspicuous. The first complete edition of *Despauter's* Grammar was printed at Cologne, anno 1522; his *Syntax* had been published anno 1509. *Lily* was made first Master of St. Paul's school in London, by Dr. Colet, its founder, anno 1510; so that he was contemporary with *Despauter*. His Grammar was appointed, by an act which is still in force, to be taught in the established schools of England. Various attempts were afterwards made by different authors, as, *Sanctius*, *Alvarus*, *Scioppius*, *Kirkwood*, *Watt*, *Ruddiman*, &c. to improve on the plan of *Despauter* and *Lily*; but with little success. The truth is, it seems impracticable to express with sufficient perspicuity the Principles of Grammar in Latin Verse; and it appears strange, that when scholastic jargon is exploded from elementary books on other sciences, it should be retained by public authority, where it ought never to have been admitted, in Latin Grammars for children. But such is the force of habit and attachment to established modes, that we go on in the use of them, without thinking whether they be founded in reason or not. When there are a great many exceptions from a general rule, whatever can assist the memory is no doubt useful. On this account the principal rules for the genders of nouns, &c. are here subjoined, for local reasons, from *Ruddiman's* Grammar; although many of them are by no means adapted to the capacity of boys: and more of them are inserted, in compliance with the opinion of others, than the compiler judges necessary. They are printed at the end of the book; and such as chuse it, may have *Lily's* rules, *Watt's* rules, or any other, substituted in their place.

The authors of the *Nouvelle Methode*, or *Port Royal*

Royal Grammar in France, judging it as absurd to teach Latin by rules in Latin verse, as to teach Greek, by rules in Greek verse, or Hebrew by rules in Hebrew, composed the rules of Latin Grammar, in French verse. Some authors in England, as, *Clarke*, *Philips*, &c. have imitated their example. But this plan has not in either country been much followed. Nothing can be more uncouth than such versification. So that Latin rules, on the whole, seem preferable.— However this may be, the following remarks concerning the method of teaching Latin, it is hoped, will not be deemed improper.

When the learner is once master of the inflexion of nouns and verbs, he should be exercised in getting by heart words and phrases, while at the same time he is employed in reading some easy author, and in turning plain sentences from English into Latin. The sooner he can be brought to write part of his exercises, the better; but he should never be obliged to get Grammar rules in Latin verse, till he is capable of understanding them by himself; because though the teacher may explain them, the scholar will soon forget the interpretation, and repeat the words merely by rote, without attending to their meaning: Nor should he be forced to get rules in Latin verse, which may be remembered equally well in English prose. Rules in verse are only useful when they assist the memory; as when there is a number of exceptions from a general rule, where alone they are indeed of advantage: and even here, perhaps, any chime of words might answer the purpose as well as Latin hexameters. It is of importance, when the rule is long; that the learner be accustomed to repeat no more of it than is strictly applicable to the word or phrase in question. The repetition of the whole is an useless waste of time. The great object ought to be, to bring the learner, in

as short time as possible, to join without hesitation, an adjective with a substantive in any case, number, or degree of comparison; and in like manner to touch upon any part of a verb, and tell readily by what case any adjective, verb, or preposition is followed. This facility practice alone can teach, and the method of acquiring it must in all languages be much the same.

The niceties of construction, the figures of Syntax, and the other parts of Grammar, should be occasionally taught, as the learner proceeds in reading the more difficult authors.

As the antient Romans joined the Grammar of their own language with that of the Greek; so we ought to connect the study of English Grammar with that of the Latin; and when the learner properly understands Latin Grammar, he ought to join with it the study of the Greek; the knowledge of both these languages being requisite for the thorough understanding of the English. This is the practice in England, and other countries, where the best Greek and Latin scholars are formed. It is particularly necessary in Scotland to pay attention to the English in conjunction with the Latin, as by neglecting it boys at school learn many improprieties in point of Grammar, as well as of pronunciation, which it is difficult in after life to correct. This attention is less requisite in England; though even there, in the opinion of Dr. Lowth, to use his own words, "the connection of the English with the Latin Grammar, if it could be introduced into schools, might be of good service*."

EDINBURGH, }
O^r. 25, 1793. }

* In a letter concerning this book, after having read the manuscript, dated Cuddesdon, Sept. 27, 1771.

THIS new Edition is improved by the insertion of many useful observations and examples in different places; particularly in Syntax and Profody. For the convenience of young beginners, an abridgment of Syntax and Profody is printed, which may be bound in a small volume with Etymology, and serve as a *Rudiments and Vocabulary*: the enlarged Syntax, &c. bound in another volume, may be put into their hands afterwards. The Compiler proposed to have added, as an appendix to Etymology, a short interpretation of the most important Latin words not contained in the Grammar; and also, for an exercise to learners, a collection of moral sentences and instructive stories, selected from the Classics, with an explication of difficult words and phrases. But he has been prevented by other engagements from executing this design. He will endeavour to accomplish it, as soon as other business will permit.

GREAT attention has been paid to the correction of the press; in which the compiler has been assisted by the Masters of the High School, who have been so obliging as to read over the sheets, as they were printed; and likewise by the young Gentlemen, attending his class, who, in every proof, discerned several mistakes, which had escaped his notice.—After all, however, upon a repeated perusal, he has discovered the following errors, which he requests the reader will correct:—

page line		page line	
37	21 Arpinum, for <i>Arpium</i>	212	27 <i>se</i> , for <i>te</i>
84	29 Bear, to bring forth, bare born	225	22 col. 2d. labori, for labore
ibid.	Bear, to carry, bore, borne,	229	10 1st. aequo, for aequus
115	36 <i>ēdi</i> , for <i>ēdi</i>	230	33 2d. master, for <i>maſter</i>
136	37 of, for o f	234	41 2d. e, for e
138	18 conjugations, for conjugation	238	39 C. for Clc.
137	1 & 2 cornicor, &c.	246	1 word, for wo d
141	10 <i>illafus</i> , for <i>illa ut</i>	254	46 <i>babeo</i> , for <i>babui</i>
142	8 is, for in	255	11 member (of a sentence,) for number
146	30 participles, for particles	260	1 <i>dele</i> one or
148	2 <i>pergravis</i> , for <i>pergravis</i>	ibid.	6 <i>insert</i> esteemed a,
161	36 <i>noſtrum</i> , for <i>noſtrum</i>	273	18 <i>insert</i> a before verse
163	30 <i>multis</i> , for <i>multi</i>	277	12 Sapphic, for Saphic
168	27 <i>puer geſtit</i>	285	14 & 24 unum, for unam,
192	27 col. 2d. <i>fert</i> , for <i>fert</i>	296	20
205	fin. <i>cujus—damnatus</i>	ibid.	33 <i>Martii</i> , for <i>Mrtii</i> ,
208	21 <i>Sociis</i> , for <i>So iis</i>	300	24 <i>ſaluſque</i> , for <i>ſaluſque</i>
212	13 <i>triumphus</i> , for <i>triumphos</i>	312	20 <i>Diarreſis</i> , for <i>Diarrēſis</i> .
		308	15 <i>ynis</i> , for <i>inis</i> .

EDINBURGH, }
Sept. 25, 1805. }

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
Part I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats of	
LETTERS, - - - - -	1
Diphthongs - - - - -	2
Syllables - - - - -	3
Part II. ETYMOLOGY, which treats of WORDS,	4
Division of WORDS or PARTS of SPEECH - - - - -	ib.
The ARTICLE;—wanting in Latin - - - - -	5
I. NOUN or SUBSTANTIVE, - - - - -	6
English Nouns - - - - -	7
Latin Nouns - - - - -	8
DECLENSION of NOUNS - - - - -	ib.
GENDER of NOUNS - - - - -	10
First Declension - - - - -	13
Second Declension - - - - -	19
Third Declension - - - - -	28
Fourth Declension - - - - -	47
Fifth Declension - - - - -	49
IRREGULAR Nouns - - - - -	ib.
DIVISION of NOUNS, according to their signification and derivation	56
ADJECTIVE - - - - -	58
Numeral Adjectives - - - - -	66
COMPARISON of Adjectives - - - - -	69
II. PRONOUN - - - - -	72
English Pronouns - - - - -	ib.
Latin Pronouns - - - - -	73
1. Simple Latin Pronouns - - - - -	ib.
2. Compound Latin Pronouns - - - - -	74
III. VERB - - - - -	78
English Verbs - - - - -	81
CONJUGATION of LATIN VERBS - - - - -	86
First Conjugation - - - - -	90
Second Conjugation - - - - -	95
Third Conjugation - - - - -	97
Fourth Conjugation - - - - -	98

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
FORMATION of the different parts of Latin Verbs	99
SIGNIFICATION of the different TENSES	101
VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION	104
SECOND CONJUGATION	108
THIRD CONJUGATION	112
FOURTH CONJUGATION	122
DEPONENT and COMMON VERBS	124
IRREGULAR VERBS	128
DEFECTIVE VERBS	133
IMPERSONAL VERBS	135
REDUNDANT VERBS	136
<i>Obsolete Conjugation.</i>	138
DERIVATION and COMPOSITION of VERBS	ib.
IV. PARTICIPLE	140
V. ADVERB	142
VI. PREPOSITION	146
VII. INTERJECTION	148
VIII. CONJUNCTION	149
PART III. SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, which treats of SENTENCES,	151
Division of Sentences into Simple and Compound	152
I. SIMPLE SENTENCES	ib.
CONCORD or Agreement of Words in Simple Sentences	ib.
GOVERNMENT of Words in Simple Sentences	157
I. Government of SUBSTANTIVES	ib.
II. Government of ADJECTIVES	160
III. Government of VERBS	166
1. VERBS governing only one case	ib.
2. VERBS governing two cases	173
Government of PASSIVE VERBS	177
of IMPERSONAL VERBS	179
Construction of the INFINITIVE	181
of PARTICIPLES, &c.	182
of GERUNDS	183
of SUPINES	185
of ADVERBS	186
Government of ADVERBS	189
of PREPOSITIONS	190
Construction of CIRCUMSTANCES	196
1. Price	ib.
2. Manner and Cause	ib.
3. Place	197
	4. Measure

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
4. Measure and Distance	200
5. Time	201
II. COMPOUND SENTENCES	202
Sentences are compounded by Relatives and Conjunctions	ib.
Construction of RELATIVES	202
of CONJUNCTIONS	206
of COMPARATIVES	211
The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	213
APPENDIX to SYNTAX ; containing	
I. Various SIGNIFICATION and CONSTRUCTION of VERBS	216
II. FIGURATIVE CONSTRUCTION, or FIGURES of SYNTAX	237
III. ANALYSIS and TRANSLATION	241
IV. Different kinds of STYLE	245
V. FIGURES of RHETORIC	246
1. Figures of Words or TROPES	ib.
2. Repetition of Words	252
3. Figures of Thought	253
Part IV. PROSODY, which treats of the Quantity	
of Syllables, of Accent and Verse,	256
I. QUANTITY of SYLLABLES	ib.
1. Quantity of first and middle Syllables	257
2. Quantity of final Syllables	265
Quantity of Derivatives and Compounds	269
II. ACCENT	271
III. VERSE	272
The measuring of Verses by Feet, or SCANNING	273
Different kinds of Verses	ib.
FIGURES in SCANNING	278
Different kinds of POEMS	281
Combination of Verses in Poems	282
Different kinds of Verse in Horace and Buchanan	283
ENGLISH VERSE	287
APPENDIX I. Punctuation, Capitals, &c.	292
II. Rules from Ruddiman's Grammar	297

THE

RUDIMENTS

OR

LATIN AND ENGLISH

GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin or English Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin or the English language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; Words consist of one or more syllables; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of Grammar.

LETTERS.

A Letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar which treats of Letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five; A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

In English there is one letter more, namely, *W*, *w*.

A

Letters

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; *a, e, i, o, u, y*. All the rest are consonants.

A Vowel makes a full sound by itself; as, *a, e*.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, *b, d*.

A Vowel is properly called a *simple sound*; and the sounds formed by the concurrence of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes, Semi-vowels, and Double consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice; as, *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p, b; t, d; c, k, q, and g*: but *b, d, and g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are, *l, m, n, r, s, f*. The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r*; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable; as, *bla, fra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe, be, &c.*: but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as, *el, em, &c.*

The double consonants are, *x, z, and j*. *X* is made up of *cs, ks, or qs*. *Z* seems not to be a double consonant in English. It has the same relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being founded somewhat more softly.

In Latin *ss*, and likewise *h* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

Y in English is sometimes a consonant, as in *youth*.

H by some is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au*, *eu*, *ei*; as in *aurum*, *Eurus*, *quies*. To these, some, not improperly, add other three, namely, *ai*; as, in *Maia*; *oi*, as in *Trois*; and *ui*, as in *Harpua*, or in *cui* and *buic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two, *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ*; as *aetas*, or *atar*; *oe*, or *æ*; as *poena* or *pæna*; in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

The English language abounds with improper diphthongs, the just pronunciation of which practice alone can teach. In some words derived from the French, there are three vowels in the same syllable, but two of them only are sounded; as in *beauty*, *lieutenant*.

SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters pronounced by one impulse of the voice; as *a*, *to*, *strength*.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds; as, *in-fal-li-bi-li-ty*.

In Latin there are, as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*, as in *lingua*, *qui*, *sua-deo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable, are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Dissyllables*; and of more than two, *Poly-syllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Poly-syllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *up-on*, *wit-out*, &c. and so in Latin words, *ab-utor*, *in-ops*, *propter-ea*, *et-enim*, *vel-ut*, &c. In like manner, when a syllable is added in the formation of the English verb, as, *lov-ed*, *lov-ing*, *lov-eth*, *will-ing*, &c.

Observe, A long syllable is thus marked [-]; as, *amāre*;

or sometimes with a circumflex accent thus, [[^]]; as, *amāris*. A short syllable is marked thus, [[˘]]; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology*, or *Analogy*.

All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus, in the following sentence, "*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home*," the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pius*, pious; *ego*, I; *docco*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word, and some syllable added; as, *impius*, impious; *dēdocco*, I unteach; *egomet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pius*, pious; *discō*, I learn; *docco*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *pietas*, piety; *doctrīna*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight; 1. *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle*; declined: 2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, and *Conjunction*; undeclined.

In English the adjective and participle are not declined. Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined* which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the ARTICLE.

The *article* is a word put before substantive nouns, to point them out, and to shew how far their signification extends.

There are two articles, *a* and *the*: *a* becomes *an* before a vowel, or a silent *b*.

A is called the *Indefinite*, *The* the *Definite Article*.

A is used to point out one single thing of a kind, without fixing precisely what that thing is: *The* determines what particular thing is meant.

A man means simply some one or other of that kind: *the man* signifies that particular man who is spoken of.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined: thus *filius regis* may signify, either, *a son of a king*, or *a king's son*; or *the son of the king*, or *the king's son*.

The placed before certain common names, marks either a whole kind, or some individual of that kind, with which we are acquainted; as, *the lion*, *the ox*, &c.

A can only be joined to substantive nouns in the singular number: *the* may also be joined to plurals. *A* is likewise used before adjectives which express number, when many are considered as one whole; as, *a thousand men*, *a few*, *a great many men*.

The is likewise applied to adjectives and adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree, to mark their sense more strongly; as, "*the wiser*," "*the better*;" "*the more* I think of it, *the better* I like it."

NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun*; it is only a word added to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy, school, book.*

Substantives are of two sorts; *proper* and *common* names.

Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals; as the names of persons and places: such are, *Cæsar, Rome.*

Common names stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*

Every particular being should have its own proper name; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude: men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is *an* Alexander;" or, "The Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness, goodness, wisdom, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender*; females of the *feminine*; and all other things, of the *neuter gender*.

Such

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender*, that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connections or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive: in Latin, by declension, or by different cases; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, a king, or the king; *rēgis*, of a king, or of the king.

ENGLISH NOUNS.

In English, nouns have only one case, namely, the genitive or possessive case, which is formed from the noun, by adding *'n s*, with an apostrophe, or mark to separate it; as, *John's book*, the same with, *the book of John*. It was formerly written *Johnis book*.

Some have thought the *'s* a contraction for *his*; but improperly; because, instead of *the woman's book*, we cannot say, *the woman his book*. Others have imagined, and with more justness, that by the addition of the *'s* the substantive is changed into a possessive adjective.

When the noun ends in *s*, the sign of the possessive case is sometimes not added; as, *for righteousness' sake*; and never to the plural number ending in *s*; as, *on eagles wings**.—Perhaps it would be better in the plural, when it ends in *s*, always to use the particle, and not the possessive form; as, *on the wings of eagles*. Both the sign and the preposition seem sometimes to be used; as, *a soldier of the king's*: but here there are two possessives; for it means, *one of the soldiers of the king*.

A singular noun, in English, is made plural by adding to it *s*, or, for the sake of sound, *es*; as, *king, kings; church, churches; brush, brushes; witness, witnesses; fox, foxes; leaf, leaves*; in which last, and in many others, *f* is also turned into *v*, to make the pronunciation easier.

Several plurals are formed by adding *en*; as *ox, oxen*. Of these some are contracted, or interpose a letter on account of sound; as, *brethren, children, swine, kine, women, men, &c. for brotheren, soweren, &c.* Instead of *kine* we now commonly say *cows*; and we seldom use *brethren* but in solemn discourse.

Nouns in *y* change *y* into *ie*; as, *cherry, cherries; city, cities*. *Cherry's, city's, &c.* are in the possessive case.

*. But the apostrophe is now commonly added after such nouns; as, *for goodness' sake, soldiers' wives, &c.*

Some nouns form the plural more irregularly; as, *mouſe*, *mice*; *louſe*, *lice*; *tooth*, *teeth*; *foot*, *feet*; *gooſe*, *geefe*; &c.

The words *ſheep*, *deer*, are the ſame in both numbers. Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they expreſs, are uſed only in the ſingular, or in the plural form; as, *wheat*, *pitch*, *gold*, *ſtath*, *pride*, &c. and *bellows*, *ſaiſars*, *lungs*, *bowels*, &c.

Several nouns in English are changed in their termination, to expreſs gender; as, *prince*, *princeſs*; *actor*, *actreſs*; *lion*, *lioneſs*; *hero*, *heroine*; *duke*, *ducheſs*, &c.

The English language has a peculiar advantage over moſt other languages, in making all words whatever, except the names of males and females, to be of the neuter gender; unleſs when inanimate beings are perſonified, or conſidered as perſons; as, when we ſay of the ſun, *he ſhines*; or of the moon, *ſhe ſhines*; and of a ſhip, *ſhe ſails*.

LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders*, *Cases*, and *Numbers*.

There are three genders, *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

The caſes are ſix, *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accuſative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

There are two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called, the *firſt*, *ſecond*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fiſth declenſions*.

Caſes are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to expreſs the relation of one thing to another.

They are ſo called, from *cădo*, to fall; becauſe they fall, as it were, from the nominative; which is therefore named *căſus reclus*, the ſtraight caſe; and the other caſes, *căſus obliqui*, the oblique caſes.

The different declenſions may be diſtinguiſhed from one another by the termination of the genitive ſingular. The firſt declenſion has *ae* or *a* diphthong; the ſecond has *i*; the
third

third has *is*; the fourth has *us*; and the fifth has *ei* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

GENERAL RULES of Declension.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas, Thoma*; *Ancifes, Ancife*; *Paris, Pari*; *Parthus, Pantbu*; *Pollos, -antis, Palla*; names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s*; as, *ô Achilles*, rarely *-e*; *O Socrâtes*, seldom *-e*; and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *O Thais, Myfis, Pallas, -âdis*, the goddesses Minerva, &c.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural:

Unless several of the same name be spoken of; as, *duô-dëcim Cæsâres*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English;

1. With the indefinite article, *a king*.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	<i>a king,</i>	Nom.	<i>kings,</i>
Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Acc.	<i>a king,</i>	Acc.	<i>kings,</i>
Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>king,</i>	Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Abl. <i>with, from, in, by, a king:</i>		Abl. <i>with, from, in, by, kings.</i>	

2. With

2. With the definite article, *the king*.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	<i>the king,</i>	Nom.	<i>the kings,</i>
Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>the king,</i>	Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>the kings,</i>
Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>the king,</i>	Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>the kings,</i>
Acc.	<i>the king,</i>	Acc.	<i>the kings,</i>
Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>king,</i>	Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Ab. <i>with, from, in, by, the king:</i>		Ab. <i>with, from, in, by, the kings.</i>	

GENDER.

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination which is applied to females; as, *bōna penna*, a good pen, and not *bōnus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hęc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

GENERAL RULES concerning Gender.

- Names of males are masculine; as *Hōmērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.
- Names of females are feminine; as, *Hēlēna*, Helen; *mūlier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *māter*, a mother; *sōror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.
- Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either masculine or feminine; as, *Hic bos*, an ox; *hęc bas*, a cow; *hic pārens*, a father; *hęc pārens*, a mother.

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adolescens,

Adolescens, { a young man, or woman.	Conjux, a husband or wife.	Nemo, no body.
Juvenis, }	Conviva, a guest.	Obses, an hostage.
Affinis, a relation or connection by marriage.	Custos, a keeper.	Patruelis, a cousin-ger- man, by the father's side.
Antistes, a prelate.	Dux, a leader.	Præ, a surty.
Auctor, an author.	Hæres, an heir.	Princeps, a prince or princeps.
Augur, a soothsayer.	Hostis, an enemy.	Sacerdos, a priest, or priestess.
Canis, a dog or bitch.	Infans, an infant.	Sus, a swine.
Civis, a citizen.	Interpres, an interpre- ter.	Testis, a witness.
Clieus, a client.	Judex, a judge. (ter.)	Vates, a prophet.
Comes, a companion.	Martyr, a martyr.	Vindex, an avenger*.
	Miles, a soldier.	
	Municeps, a burgoess.	

But *antistes*, *clieus*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine, thus, *antistita*, *clieuta*, *hospita*: in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leona*, a lioness; *æquus*, *æqua*; *mulus*, *mula*; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *advēna*, a stranger; *agricola*, a husbandman; *assecta*, an attendant; *accōla*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber: *fur*, a thief; *opifex*, a mechanic; &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *scortum*, a courtesan; *mancipium*, *servitium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner *opera*, slaves or day-labourers; *vigilia*, *excubia*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. I. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *âquila*,

* *Conjux*, atque *parens*, *infans*, *patruelis*, et *hæres*,
Affinis, *virux*, *juvex*, *dux*, *miles*, et *hostis*,
Augur, et *antistes*, *juvenis*, *conviva*, *sacerdos*,
Municeps, *vates*, *adolescens*, *civis*, et *auctor*,
Custos, *nemo*, *comes*, *testis*, *fur*, *bosque*, *canisque*,
Interpresque, *clieus*, *princeps*, *præ*, *martyr*, et *obses*.

āquila, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene* or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *femina*; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *femina passer*, a female sparrow.

Obs. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine; because, *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, hic *Aprilis*, April; hic *āquilo*, the north wind; hic *Africus*, the south-west wind; hic *Tiberis*, the river Tiber; hic *Osbrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, hęc *Matrōna*, the river Marne in France; hęc *Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; hoc *Soraete*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *rēgio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nāvis* are feminine; as, hęc *Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Sāmos*, an island of that name; *Cōrintbus*, the city Corinth; *pōmus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship—Thus also the names of poems, hęc *Ilias*, *-ādos*, and *Odyssēa*, the two poems of Homer; hęc *Ænēis*, *-idos*, a poem of Virgil's; hęc *Eunūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, hic *Pontus*, a country of that name; hic *Sulmo*, *-ōnis*; *Pessinus*, *-untis*; *Hydrus*, *-untis*, names of towns; hęc *Perfis*, *-idis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo*, *-inis*, the city Carthage; hoc *Albion*, Britain; hoc *Cære*, *Reāte*, *Prænestē*, *Tibur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *gelida Prænestē*, Juvenal. iii. 190. *alta Ilion*, Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, *-tra*, a wild olive tree; *ramnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cypissus*, a kind of shrub; *rūbus*, the bramble bush; *lārix*, the larch-tree; *lōtus*, the lote-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sūber*, *-ēris*, the

cork-tree; *siler*, -*ëris*, the osier; *röbur*, -*ëris*, oak of the hardest kind; *äcer*, -*ëris*, the mapple tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *Arbustum*, *quercëtum*, *escülëtum*, *sälüctum*, *früticëtum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow: Also the names of fruits and timber, as, *pomum*, or *mälum*, an apple; *pïrum*, a pear; *ëbënum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

Obs. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender*; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another; as, *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*. Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender.

The terminations of the different cases are; Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a*; Gen. and Dat. *ae*, or *æ* diphthong; Acc. *am*; Abl. *ä*: Nom. and Voc. Plur. *ae*, or *æ*; Gen. *ärum*; Dat. and Abl. *is*; Acc. *as*: thus,

Penna, <i>a pen</i> , fem.		Terminations.
Singular.	Plural.	
N. penna, <i>a pen</i> ;	N. pennæ,	<i>ae</i> , <i>æ</i> ,
G. pennæ, <i>of a pen</i> ;	G. pennarum,	<i>æ</i> , <i>arum</i> ,
D. pennæ, <i>to a pen</i> ;	D. pennis,	<i>æ</i> , <i>is</i> ,
A. pennam, <i>a pen</i> ;	A. pennas,	<i>am</i> , <i>as</i> ,
V. penna, <i>O pen</i> ;	V. pennæ,	<i>a</i> , <i>æ</i> ,
A. pennâ, <i>with a pen</i> :	A. pennis,	<i>ä</i> , <i>is</i> .
	<i>with pens.</i>	

In like manner decline,

<i>äcerra</i> , <i>a censer</i> .	<i>älüta</i> , <i>tanned leather</i> .	<i>Ancilla</i> , <i>an handmaid</i> .
<i>Acta</i> , <i>the shore</i> .	<i>Ambröfia</i> , <i>the food of the gods</i> .	<i>Anchöra</i> , <i>an anchor</i> .
<i>Æra</i> , <i>a period of time</i> .	<i>Ämita</i> , <i>an aunt, the father's sister</i> .	<i>Anguilla</i> , <i>an eel</i> .
<i>Ærumna</i> , <i>toil</i> .	<i>Amphöra</i> , <i>a cast</i> .	<i>Äntia</i> , <i>a handle</i> .
<i>Agricöla</i> , <i>a busbandman</i> .	<i>Ampulla</i> , <i>a jug</i> . plur. <i>bombast</i> .	<i>Antenna</i> , <i>a sail-yard</i> .
<i>Äla</i> , <i>a wing</i> .		<i>Antlia</i> , <i>a pump</i> .
<i>Äläpa</i> , <i>a blow</i> .		<i>Äqua</i> , <i>water</i> .
<i>Älauda</i> , <i>a lark</i> .		<i>Äquila</i> , <i>an eagle</i> .
<i>Älga</i> , <i>sea-weed</i> .	<i>Ämurca</i> , <i>the lees of oil</i> .	<i>Ära</i> , <i>an altar</i> .

Ărănea, a spider.	Cătăpulta, an engine to cast darts.	Crăpida, a slipper.
Arca, a chest.	Cătēna, a chain.	Crēta, chalk.
Ardea, & -cōla, a heron.	Cătērvă, a body of men.	Crista, a crest.
Ărea, an open place.	Căthedra, a chair, a pulpit.	Crēmēna, a purse.
Ărēna, sand.	Cauda, the tail.	Cruſta, & -um, a morſch.
Argilla, potter's earth.	Caula, a sheep cote.	Culcita, a cushion.
Ăriſta, an ear of corn.	Cauſa, a cauſe.	Cŭlina, a kitchen.
Arrha, an earnest penny.	Căverna, a cavern.	Culpa, a fault.
Arvina, fat.	Căvilla, a banter.	Cŭmēra, a corn basket.
Aſcia, an ax.	Cella, a cell.	Cŭpa, a large caſk.
Athlēta, m. a wreſtler.	Cēra, wax.	Cŭra, care.
Aula, a hall.	Cērēmonia, a ceremony.	Cŭria, a ſenate-houſe.
Aura, a breeze.	Cerviſia, ale, beer.	Currŭca, a hedge-ſparrow.
Auriga, m. a charioteer.	Cēruffa, white lead, paint.	Cymba, a boat.
Ăvia, a grandmother.	Cetra, a ſquare target.	Dēcempēda, a pole of ten feet.
Axilla, the arm-pit.	Charta, paper.	Dizeta, diet, food.
Bălena, a whale.	Chorda, a ſtring.	Dolabra, an ox.
Barba, a beard.	Cicăda, a kind of inſect.	Drachma, a drachm, a weight or coin.
Bellua, any large beaſt.	Cicōnia, a ſtork.	Ēpiſtola, a letter.
Beſtia, a beaſt.	Cicŭta, hemlock.	Ēſca, a bait.
Bēta, beet, an herb.	Cinăra, an artichoke.	Făba, a bean.
Bibliopōla, a bookſeller.	Ciſta, a cheſt.	Făbŭla, a fable.
Bibliothēca, a library.	Ciſterna, a ciſtern.	Făma, fame.
Blatta, a motb.	Cithăra, a harp.	Fărina, meal.
Bractea, a ſkin leaf of gold.	Clăva, a club.	Făſcia, a bandage.
Brăſăica, collyflower.	Clepsydra, an hour-glaſs.	Făvilla, embers.
Brŭma, winter.	Cloăca, a ſink.	Fēneſtra, a window.
Bucca, the hollow of the cheek.	Cochlea, a ſnail.	Fēra, a wild beaſt.
Bulla, a bubble, a ball or boſs.	Cœna, a ſupper.	Fērŭla, a rod.
Byrſa, an ox-hide.	Cōlumba, a pigeon.	Fēſtŭca, the ſtoot of a tree.
Caliga, a kind of ſhoe ſet with nails.	Cōma, the hair.	Fibra, a fibre.
Caltha, marygold.	Cōmœdia, a comedy.	Fibŭla, a clasp.
Calva & calvaria, a ſkull.	Concha, a ſhell.	Fidēlia, an earthen veſſel.
Călumnia, ſlander.	Cōpia, plenty.	Fimbria, a fringe.
Cămēna, a muſic, a ſong.	Cōpŭla, a bond.	Fiſcina, a bag, or baſket.
Cămiera, a vault.	Corrigia, a ſhoe latebet.	Fiſtŭca, a rammer.
Cămpăna, a bell.	Cōrōna, a crown, a circle.	Fiſtŭla, a pipe.
Canna, a cane or reed.	Cortina, a cauldron.	Flamma, a flame.
Candēla, a candle.	Coſta, a rib.	Fœmīna, a woman.
Capra, a ſe-goat.	Coxa, the haunch.	Forma, a form.
Capſa, a coffer.	Crăpŭla, a ſurfeit.	Formica, an ant;
Căriſna, the keel of a ſhip.	Crătēra, a cup.	Foſſa, a ditch.
Căſa, a cottage.	Crăticiŭla, a gridiron.	Fōvea, a pit.
Caſtănea, a cheſnut.	Crēm, a notch.	Frămea, a ſhort ſpear.
		Fălica, a ſea-ſcorpion.

Funda, a sling.	Lăcerna, a riding coat.	Mătēria, matter, stuff & timber.
Furca, a fork.	Lăcerta, a lizard.	Mătertēra, the mother's sister. [trēs.]
Fuscina, a trident.	Lăcinia, a fringe.	Matta, a mat or mat.
Gălăa, an helmet.	Lacrōma, a tear.	Mătūla, a chamber-pot.
Gallina, a hen. [ulcer.]	Lactūca, lettuce.	Mēdulla, marrow.
Gangræna, an eating	Lăcūna, a ditch.	Membrăna, a thin skin, a film; parchment.
Gaza, a treasure.	Lăgēna, a flagon.	Mēmōria, memory.
Gemma, a gem.	Lăma, a ditch.	Menſa, a table.
Gēna, the cheek.	Lămia, a forcerefs.	Mensūra, a measure.
Gēniſta, broom.	Lămina, a plate.	Merda, dung.
Gingiva, the gum.	Lăna, wool.	Merga, a pitch-fork.
Glărea, gravel.	Lancea, a lance or spear.	Mērūla, a black-bird.
Glēba, a clod.	Lăniſta, m. a fencing-master.	Mēta, a goal.
Gūla, the gullet.	Larva, a maggot.	Mētāphōra, a trope.
Gutta, a drop.	Lăterna, a lantern.	Mica, a crumb.
Hăbēna, a rein.	Latrīna, a house of office.	Miuru, a mitre.
Hăra, a hog-sty.	Lectica, a sedan or chair.	Mōla, a mill.
Hărūga, a sacrifice.	Lēna, a barnd.	Mōnēdūla, a jack-daw.
Haſta, a spear.	Lepra, the leprosy.	Mōnēta, money.
Hădēra, ivy.	Libra, a pound.	Mōra, a delay.
Herba, an herb.	Līgūla, a latchet.	Multa, a fine.
Herma, v. -es, m. a statue of Mercury.	Līma, a file.	Mūræna, a lamprey.
Hernia, a rupture.	Linea, a line.	Mūrīa, pickle, brine.
Hilla, a sausage.	Lingua, the tongue.	Mūſa, a muse.
Hōra, an hour.	Lira, a ridge or furrow.	Muſca, a fly.
Hoſtia, a victim.	Litēra, a letter.	Muſtēla, a waſk.
Hydria, a water-pot.	Lōcuſta, a locust.	Myrrha, myrrh.
Jactūra, loss.	Lūcerna, a light.	Myrica, a tamarisk.
Jānuā, a gate.	Lūna, the moon.	Mýſta, v. -es, m. a priest.
Idea, a form, an idea.	Lufcīna, a nightingale.	Nāſſa, a net.
Idiōta, m. an illiterate person.	Lympha, water.	Nauſea, ſea-ſickness.
Ignōminia, an affront.	Lýra, a lyre.	Nauta, m. a mariner.
Illēcebra, an allurement.	Măchīna, a machine.	Nitēdūla, a field-mouſe.
Impenſa, expence.	Mactra, a kneading trough.	Noenia, a funeral ſong.
Indigēna, m. a native.	Măcūla, a ſtain.	Norma, a rule.
Inedia, hunger.	Măla, the cheek-bone.	Nōvăcūla, a razor.
Inſūla, a mitre.	Mălăcia, a calm.	Nōverca, a ſtep-mother.
Injūria, a wrong.	Malva, a mallow.	Nympha, a nymph.
Inopia, want.	Mamma, a pap.	Occa, an barrow.
Inſita, a fringe.	Mănīca, a ſicve.	Ocrea, a boot.
Inſūla, an iſland.	Mantica, a wallet.	oda, v. -e, an ode or ſong.
Inūla, cicampauc, an herb.	Mappa, a napkin.	Offa, a morſel.
Invidia, envy.	Margărīta, a pearl.	ōlea, an olive.
Ira, anger.	Marra, a mattock.	Olla, a pot.
Jūba, the mane.	Maſſa, a lump.	

- Ōra, a coast.
 Orbīta, a path.
 Orca, a jar.
 Orchestra, the stage, or
 the place next it, where
 the nobles sat.
 Ostrea, an oyster.
 Pænūla, a riding coat.
 Pāgina, a page.
 Pāis, a shovel.
 Pālāstra, a wrestling,
 or place for it.
 Pālea, chaff.
 Palinōdia, a resanta-
 tion.
 Palla, a large gown.
 Palma, the palm.
 Palpebra, the eye-lid.
 Pāpilla, the nipple.
 Pāpūla, a pimple.
 Pārābōla, comparing
 things together.
 Parma, a shield.
 Parra, a jay.
 Pātēra, a goblet.
 Pausa, a stop or pause.
 Pēdīca, a fetter.
 Pēnūla, a mantle.
 Pēnūria, want.
 Pēra, a purse.
 Percā, a perch.
 Perfūga, m. a deserter.
 Pergāmēna sc. char-
 ta, parchment.
 Perna, a gammon of
 bacon.
 Persōna, a mask.
 Pertīca, a pole.
 Petra, a rock.
 Phālārīca, a long spear.
 Phāretra, a quiver.
 Phāsiāna sc. -avis, a
 pheasant.
 Phīāla, a vial.
 Phīlōmēla, a nightin-
 gale.
 Phīlyra, the linden tree,
 a leaf of paper.
 Phōca, a sea-calf.
- Pīca, a magpy.
 Pīla, a ball.
 Pīla, a pillar.
 Pincerna, m. a butler.
 Pinna, a fin, a wing.
 Pīrāta, m. a pirate.
 Pīscīna, a fish-pond.
 Pītuūta, pblegm.
 Plācenta, a cake.
 Plāga, a climate.
 Plāga, a blow.
 Planta, a plant.
 Plātēa, or Platēa, a
 broad street.
 Plūma, a feather.
 Plūvia, rain.
 Pōdagra, the gout.
 Pœna, a punishment.
 Poēta, m. a poet.
 Poetria, a poetess.
 Pōlenta, malt.
 Pōlitia, policy.
 Pompa, a procession.
 Pōpa, m. a priest who
 slew the sacrifice.
 Pōpīna, a tavern.
 Porta, a gate.
 Præda, plunder.
 Prærogātīva, sc. tribus,
 v. centuria, that vot-
 ed first.
 Prōcella, a storm.
 Prōra, the prow.
 Prōsa, prose.
 Prōsapia, a race.
 Pruīna, hoar-frost.
 Prūna, a burning coal.
 Pfalltria, a music girl.
 Puella, a girl.
 Pugna, a battle.
 Pulpa, the pulp.
 Pūpūla, the apple of
 the eye.
 Purpūra, purple.
 Puštūla, a blister.
 Pūra, a funeral pile.
 Quadra, & -um, a
 square.
 Rābūla, m. a wrangler.
- Rāna, a frog.
 Rēpulsā, a refusal.
 Resīna, rosin.
 Rhēda, a chariot.
 Rīma, a ebink.
 Rīpa, a bank.
 Rīxa, a scold.
 Rōsa, a rose.
 Rōta, a wheel.
 Rūga, a wrinkle.
 Ruīna, a downfall.
 Runcīna, a saw or plant.
 Rūta, rue.
 Sāburra, balloft.
 Sāga, a sorceress.
 Sāgina, cramming.
 Sāgitta, an arrow.
 Sālebra, a rugged way.
 Sāliunca, lavender.
 Sāliua, spittle.
 Salpa, stock fish.
 Sambūca, an harp, or
 engine of war.
 Sanctīmōnia, devotion.
 Sandāpīla, a beer.
 Sanna, a scoff.
 Sarcīna, a burden.
 Sārīssa, a long spear.
 Satrāpa, v. -es, m. a
 Persian governor.
 Sātūra, a satyr.
 Scāla, a ladder.
 Scandūla, a latb to co-
 ver houses.
 Scāpha, a boat.
 Scāpūla, the shoulder.
 Scēna, a stage.
 Schēda, a sheet or scroll.
 Schōla, a school.
 Scintilla, a spark.
 Scriblīta, a tart or
 wafer.
 Scrolūla, the king's evil.
 Scurra, m. a buffoon.
 Scūtīca, a scourge.
 Scytāla, a kind of ser-
 pent, or round staff.
 Sēlibra, half a pound.
 Sēmihōra, half an hour.
 Sēmīta,

ĕmĭta, a patb.	Subĭca, a pile.	Tŭba, a trumpet.
ĕntentĭa, an opinion.	Sŭbŭcŭla, a sbirt.	Tŭnica, a waistcoat.
ĕntĭna, a ſink.	Sŭbŭla, an arol. [con.	Turba, a crowd.
ĕra, a lock.	Succĭdia, a ſlitcb of ba-	Turma, a troop.
ĕrra, a ſaw.	Summa, a ſum, the	Ulna, an ell.
ĕlquihŕa, an hour and	wbole.	ŭlŭla, an owl.
a balſ.	Sŭperbia, pride.	Ulva, ſedge.
ĕta, a briffle.	Sŭra, the calf of the leg.	Umbra, a ſhade.
ĕbylla, a propeteſt.	Sutrĭna, ſc. taberna,	Unda, a wave.
ĕca, a dagger.	a ſhoemaker's ſhop.	Ungŭla, a nail, the-
ĕliqua, an buſh.	Sŭtura, a ſeam.	boof.
ĕlva, a wood.	Sŭcŕophanta, m. a	ŭpŭpa, the bouſeo, a
ĕmia, an ape.	ſharper.	bird
ĕmĭla, flour.	Syllŭba, a ſyllable.	ŭrina, urine.
ĕtŭla, a bucket.	Symbŕola, a club, a ſbare	Urna, an urn.
ĕcordia, ſlotb.	of a reckoning.	Urtĭca, a nettle.
ĕlea, a ſhoc.	Symphŕonia, harmony.	ŭva, a grape.
Sŕophiſta, ŕ -es, m.	Syngŕapha, a bill or	Vacca, a cow.
a ſoppbiſt.	bowl.	Vŕgĭna, a ſcabbard.
Spĕcŭla, a watch tower.	Tŕberna, a ſhop.	Vappa, palled wine, a
Spĕlunca, a cave.	Tŕbŭla, a table.	ſpendtbrift.
Sphŕera, a ſphere.	Tŕda, a torcb.	Vena, a vein.
Spĭca, an ear of corn.	Tŕnia, a ribbon.	Vĕnia, leave.
Spĭna, the back bone.	Techna, a trick or	Verna, m. an home-
Spŭra, a worcatb.	wile.	born ſlave.
Sponda, a bedſtead.	Tĕgŭla, a tile.	Verrŭca, a wart.
Spongia, a ſponge.	Tĕla, a web.	Vĕſica, the bladder.
Sponſa, a bride.	Tĕrebra, a winnle.	Vĕſpa, a waſp.
Sporta, a baſket.	Terra, the earth.	Via, a way.
Spŭma, foam.	Tĕſſera, a dye.	Vicia, a vetch or tare.
Squŕma, a ſcale.	Teſta, an earthen pot.	Victĭma, a victim.
Squilla, a prawn or	Textrĭna, a weaver's	Victŕia, a conquer.
ſcrimp.	ſhop.	Villa, a country-seat.
Stŕtĕra, a balance.	Thĕca, a caſe.	Vindĕmia, vintage.
Stŕtua, a ſtatue.	Tĭbia, a pipe, the leg.	Vindicta, vengeance;
Stella, a ſtar.	Tĭlia, the linden tree.	a rod laid on the head
Stĭpŭla, ſtubble.	Tĭnea, a moth.	of ſlaves when freed.
Stŕia, an icicle.	Touſtrĭna, a barber's	Viŕla, a violet.
Stŭva, the plow-tail.	ſhop.	Vipĕra, a viper.
Stŕla, a gown.	Trŕgŕedia, a tragedy.	Virga, a rod.
Strangŭria, the making	Trŕgŭla, a jewel in with	Vita, life.
water with great	a barbed head.	Vitta, a fillet.
pain, ſtrangury.	Trahea, a ſledge or dray.	Viverra, a ferret.
Strĕna, a new year's	Trŕma, the woof.	Vŕla, the palm of the
gift.	Trochlea, a pulley.	hand.
Strŭma, a botcb.	Trulla, a trowel.	Zŕna, a girdle, a zone-
Stŭpa, tow.	Trŭcina, a balance.	

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *cōmēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi*; and sometimes likewise in *as*; which form the compounds of *fāmilia* usually retain; as, *māter-fāmīlias*, the mistress of a family; genit. *matris-famīlias*; plur. *matres-famīlias*, or *matres-famīliarum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *abus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension:

Ānīma, the soul, the life.

Dea, a goddess.

Ēqua, a mare.

Fāmūla, a female servant.

Fīlia, & *Nāta*, a daughter.

Līberta, a freed woman.

Mūla, a she-mule.

Thus *deabus*, *filiabus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine; nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative; as, *Ænēas*, *Æneas*, the name of a man; gen. *Ænēæ*; dat. *-æ*; acc. *-am* or *-an*; voc. *-a*; abl. *-æ*. So *Bōreas*, *-æ*, the north wind; *Tiāras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as, *Ossa*, *-am* or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined,

Anchīses, *Anchises*, the name of a man.

Singular.

Nom. *Anchīses*,

Acc. *Anchisen*,

Gen. *Anchisæ*,

Voc. *Anchise*,

Dat. *Anchisæ*,

Abl. *Anchise*.

Pēnēlope, *Penelope*, the name of a woman.

Singular.

Nom. *Pēnēlope*,

Acc. *Penelopen*,

Gen. *Penelopes*,

Voc. *Penelope*,

Dat. *Penelope*,

Abl. *Penelope*.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrīda*, for *Atrīdes*, m. the son of Atreus; *Perfa*, for *Perfes*, m. a Persian; *Geometra*, for *-tres*, m. a Geometrician: *Circa*, for *Circe*; *Epitōma*, for *-me*, an abridgement; *Grammātica*, for *-ce*, grammar; *Rhētōrica*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, a man's name, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*.

Note. We sometimes find the genit. plur. contracted; as, *Calicōlām*, for *Calicolarum*, Virg. A. 3, 21; *Æneādūm*, for *-arum*, ib. 1, 565.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*.

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns of the second declension have the gen. sing. in *i*; the dat. and abl. in *o*; the acc. in *um*; the voc. like the nom. (But nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e*.) The nom. and voc. plur. in *i*, or *a*; the gen. in *ōrum*; the dat. and abl. in *is*; and the acc. in *os*, or *a*; as,

Gēner, a son-in-law, masc.

	Sing.	Plur.	Terminations.
Nom.	gēner,	Nom. gēneri,	<i>er, ir, us, i,</i> <i>i, orum,</i> <i>o, is,</i> <i>um, os,</i> <i>er, ir, e, i,</i> <i>o, is,</i>
Gen.	gēneri,	Gen. generōrum,	
Dat.	genero,	Dat. generis,	
Acc.	generum,	Acc. generos,	
Voc.	gener,	Voc. generi,	
Abl.	genero;	Abl. generis.	

After the same manner decline *sōcer*, *-ēri*, a father-in-law; *puer*, *-ēri*, a boy: So *furcifer*, a villain; *Lūcifer*, the morning star; *ādulter*, an adulterer; *armiger*, an armour bearer; *presbȳter*, an elder; *Mulciber*, a name of the god vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *iber*, *-ēri*, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the genit. long, and its compound *Celiber*, *-ēri*: Also, *vir*, *virī*, a man, the only noun in *ir*; and its compounds, *Lēvir*, a brother-in-law; *senīvir*, *dūmīvir*, *trīumīvir*, &c. And likewise *Sātar*, *-ūri*, full, (of old *satūrus*,) an adjective.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive; as,
Ager, a field, masc.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom. āger,</i>	<i>Nom. agri,</i>
<i>Gen. agri,</i>	<i>Gen. agrōrum,</i>
<i>Dat. agro,</i>	<i>Dat. agris,</i>
<i>Acc. agrum,</i>	<i>Acc. agros,</i>
<i>Voc. ager,</i>	<i>Voc. agri,</i>
<i>Abl. agro;</i>	<i>Abl. agris.</i>

In like manner decline,

<i>Āper, a wild boar.</i>	<i>Cāper, an he-goat.</i>	<i>Fāber, a workman.</i>
<i>Arbiter, (Ū -tra), a judge.</i>	<i>Cōlūber, Ū -bra, a serpent.</i>	<i>Māgister, a master.</i>
<i>Auster, the south-wind.</i>	<i>Culter, the coulter of a plough, a knife.</i>	<i>Mīnister, a servant.</i>
<i>Cancer, a crab-fish.</i>		<i>Ōnāger, a wild ass.</i>
		<i>Scalper, a lancet.</i>

Also *liber*, the bark of a tree; or a book, which has *libri*; but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the God of wine; have *libēri*. So likewise proper names, *Alexander*, *Evander*, *Periander*, *Mēnander*, *Teucer*, *Mēleāger*, &c. gen. *Alexandri*, *Evandri*, &c.

Dōminus, a lord, masc.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom. dōminus,</i>	<i>Nom. dōmīni,</i>
<i>Gen. domini,</i>	<i>Gen. dominōrum,</i>
<i>Dat. domino,</i>	<i>Dat. dominis,</i>
<i>Acc. dominum,</i>	<i>Acc. dominos,</i>
<i>Voc. domine,</i>	<i>Voc. domini,</i>
<i>Abl. domino.</i>	<i>Abl. dominis.</i>

In like manner decline,

<i>Ābācus, a table or desk.</i>	<i>Armus, the shoulder of a beast; also of a man.</i>	<i>Cāchinnus, a loud laugh.</i>
<i>Ācervus, a heap.</i>		<i>Cādūceus, a wand.</i>
<i>Ācūleus, a sting.</i>		<i>Cādus, a cast.</i>
<i>Agnus, a lamb.</i>	<i>Āsilus, a gad'bee,</i>	<i>Cālāmus, a reed.</i>
<i>Alnus, f. an alder tree.</i>	<i>Āsinus, Ū -a, an ass.</i>	<i>Cālāthus, a basket.</i>
<i>Alveus, the channel of a river.</i>	<i>Autumnus, the autumn.</i>	<i>Calceus, a shoe.</i>
<i>Angūlus, a corner.</i>	<i>Āvus, a grandfather.</i>	<i>Callus, Ū -um, a hard flesh.</i>
<i>Ānimus, the mind.</i>	<i>Āvuncūlus, an uncle, the mother's brother.</i>	<i>Cāminus, a chimney.</i>
<i>Annus, a year.</i>	<i>Bajūlus, a porter.</i>	<i>Campus, a plain.</i>
<i>Annūlus, a ring.</i>	<i>Barrus, an elephant.</i>	<i>Canthārus, a cup or jug.</i>
<i>Ānus, a circle.</i>	<i>Bōlus, a morsel.</i>	<i>Carduus, a thistle.</i>
<i>Architectus, a master-builder.</i>	<i>Bombus, a buzz.</i>	<i>Carpus, the wrist.</i>
<i>Argentārius, a banker.</i>	<i>Cāballus, a pack-horse.</i>	<i>Carrus, Ū -um, a cart.</i>
	<i>Cācūbus, a kettle.</i>	

- Cāseus, *cheese*.
 Cātālōgus, *a roll*.
 Cātīnus, *a platter*.
 Caurus, *a west wind*.
 Cedrus, *f. a cedar tree*.
 Cervus, *a stag*.
 Cētus, *a whale, pl. cete, n. indecl.*
 Chīrurgus, *a surgeon*.
 Chōrus, *a choir*.
 Cibus, *meat*.
 Cincinnus, *a curl*.
 Cinnus, *a medley*.
 Cippus, *a grave-stone*.
 Circīnus, *a pair of compasses. (circle)*.
 Circus & circūlus, *a*
 Cirrus, *a tuft, or curl*.
 Citrus, *f. a citron tree*.
 Clathrus, *a grate*.
 Ciāvus, *a nail*.
 Clībānus, *a portable oven*.
 Clīvus, *a bill*.
 Clēpeus, *a round shield*.
 Coccus, *v. -um, scarlet*.
 Cōlāphus, *a box on the ear*.
 Condus, *a butler*.
 Condylus, *the knuckle*.
 Congius, *a gallon*.
 Consōbrīnus, *a cousin-german by the mother's side*.
 Contus, *a long pole*.
 Cōnus, *a tone*.
 Cōphīnus, *a basket*.
 Cōquus, *a cook*.
 Cornus, *f. the cornel tree*.
 Corvus, *a raven*.
 Cōrylus, *f. a hazle tree*.
 Cōrymbus, *a bunch of ivy berries*.
 Cōryphāus, *a ring-leader*.
 Cōrytus, *or -os, a bow-case*.
 Cōthurnus, *a buskin*.
 Cūbītus, *a cubit*.
 Cūcullus, *a hood*.
 Cūcūlus *vel cūcūlus, a cuckoo*.
 Cūlens, *a leathern bag*.
 Culmus, *a stalk*.
 Cūlullus, *a pot or jug*.
 Cūmūlus, *an heap*.
 Cūneus, *a wedge*.
 Cūnicūlus, *a rabbit*.
 Cyāthus, *a cup or glass*.
 Cygnus, *a swan*.
 Cylīndrus, *a roller*.
 Diālōgus, *a discourse between one or more*.
 Dīgītus, *a finger*.
 Dīscus, *a quoit*.
 Dīvus, *a god*.
 Dōlus, *deceit*.
 Dēmus, *a bush*.
 Ēchīnus, *an urchin*.
 Ēlēgus, *an elegy*.
 Ēphēbus, *a youth*.
 Ēpīlōgus, *a conclusion*.
 Ēpīscōpus, *an overseer, a bishop*.
 Ēquūleus, *an instrument of torture*.
 Ēquus, *an horse*.
 Ērēbus, *bell*.
 Eurus, *the east wind*.
 Fāgus, *f. a beech-tree*.
 Fāmūlus, *a man servant*.
 Fāvōnius, *the west wind*.
 Fāvus, *an honeycomb*.
 Fīgūlus, *a potter*.
 Fīcus, *the exchequer*.
 Floccus, *a lock of wool*.
 Flūvius, *a river*.
 Fōcus, *a hearth*.
 Fraxīnus, *f. an ash tree*.
 Frītīllus, *a dice box*.
 Fūcus, *a drone bee, paint*.
 Fūmus, *smoke. [dancer]*.
 Fūnambūlus, *a rope-dancer*.
 Fundus, *a farm*.
 Fungus, *a mushroom*.
 Furnus, *an oven*.
 Fūsus, *a spindle*.
 Gallus, *a cock*.
 Gērūlus, *a porter*.
 Gibbus, *a swelling*.
 Glādius, *a sword*.
 Glōbus, *a globe*.
 Grābātus, *a couch*.
 Grācūlus, *a jackdaw*.
 Grūmus, *a billock*.
 Guttus, *a cruet or vial*.
 Gyrus, *a circle*.
 Hædus, *a kid*.
 Hāmus, *a hook*.
 Hārīōlus, *a diverger*.
 Hērūs, *a master*.
 Hespērus, *the evening*.
 Hinnūleus, *a young hind or fawn*.
 Hīnās, *a mule*.
 Hircus, *a goat*.
 Hortus, *a garden*.
 Hūmērus, *a shoulder*.
 Hydrus, *a water-serpent*.
 Internunciū, *a go between*.
 Isthmū, *a neck of land between two seas*.
 Juncus, *a bulrush*.
 Jūvencus, *a bullock*.
 Lābyrinthus, *a maze*.
 Lācertus, *the arm*.
 Lānius, *a butcher*.
 Lāqueus, *a noose*.
 Lecūsus, *a couch*.
 Lēgātus, *an ambassador*.
 Lēgūleius, *an ignorant lawyer, a pettifogger*.
 Lēthargus, *the lethargy*.
 Limbus, *a selvedge*.
 Limus, *slime*.
 Lītūsus, *a crooked staff*.
 Lūcus, *a sacred grove*.
 Lumbrīcus, *an earth worm*.
 Lumbus, *the loin*.
 Lūpus, *a wolf*.
 Lychnus, *a lamp*.
 Māgus,

- Māgus, a magician.
 Malleus, a mallet.
 Mālus, the mast of a ship.
 Mālus, f. an apple-tree.
 Mannus, a little horse.
 Māchēmāticus, a mathematician.
 Mēdiastinus, a slave, a drug.
 Mēdicus, a physician.
 Mendicus, a beggar.
 Mergus, a cormorant.
 Milvus, a kite.
 Mīmus, a mimic.
 Mōdius; a bushel.
 Mōdus, a manner.
 Mōchus, an adulterer.
 Mōrus, f. a mulberry-tree.
 Mūcus, the filth of the nose, snout.
 Mulus, a mullet fish.
 Mūlus, & -a, a mule.
 Mūrus, a wall.
 Muscus, moss.
 Myrtus, f. a myrtle-tree.
 Nævus, a spot.
 Nānus, a dwarf.
 Nāsus, the nose.
 Nervus, a string.
 Nīdus, a nest.
 Nimbus, a cloud.
 Nōdus, a knot.
 Nōthus, a bastard.
 Nōtus, the south wind.
 Nucleus, a kernel.
 Nūmērus, a number.
 Nummus, a piece of money.
 Nuntius, a messenger.
 Ōbōlus, a farthing.
 Ōcēanus, the ocean.
 Ōcūlus, the eye.
 Orcus, hell.
 Ornus, f. a wild ass.
 Ostrācismus, a voting with shells.
 Pædagōgus, a servant who attended boys.
 Pāgus, a canton or village.
 Pālus, a stake.
 Pannus, cloth.
 Pārāsitus, a flatterer.
 Pardus, a panther.
 Pārōchus, an entertainer.
 Patruus, an uncle, the father's brother.
 Patrōnus, a patron.
 Pēdicūlus, a louse.
 Pēsūlus, a bolt.
 Pētāsus, a broad brimmed hat.
 Phārus, or -os, a watchtower.
 Philōsōphus, a lover of wisdom.
 Phœbus, poet. the sun.
 Phīsicus, an enquirer into nature.
 Pīcus, a wood-pecker.
 Pīleus, a hat.
 Pīlus, a hair.
 Pīrus, f. a pear-tree.
 Plāgiarius, a plagiarist, a man-stealer; or, one who steals from others, books.
 Plānus, a vagrant, a beggar.
 Plūteus, a pent-house, a press for books.
 Pōlus, the pole, heaven.
 Pontus, the sea.
 Pōpūlus, a people.
 Pōpūlus, f. a poplar.
 Porcus, a hog. (tree.)
 Porrus, a leak.
 Primīpīlus, the chief centurion.
 Prīvignus, a stepson.
 Prōcus, a suitor.
 Prōmus, a butler.
 Prūnus, f. a plum-tree.
 Pstītacus, a parrot.
 Pugnus, the fist.
 Pullus, a chicken.
 Pulvīnus, a pillow.
 Pūillus, an orphan.
 Pūpus, a young child, a babe.
 Pūteus, a well.
 Quālus & quāsilus, a basket. (grapes.)
 Rācēmus, a cluster of grapes.
 Rādius, a ray.
 Rāmus, a branch.
 Rēmus, an oar.
 Rhombus, a turbot.
 Rhonchus, a snorting.
 Riscus, a trunk.
 Rīvus, a rivulet.
 Rōgus, a funeral pile.
 Rythmus, metre, rhyme.
 Saccus, a sack.
 Sarcōphāgus, a stone, in which dead bodies were inclosed.
 Sātīrus, a satyr, a kind of demigod.
 Scalmus, a boat; a piece of wood where the oars hung.
 Scāpus, a stalk, a shaft or shank.
 Scārus, the scar, a fish.
 Scirpus, a rush.
 Sciūrus, a squirrel.
 Scōpūlus, a rock.
 Scōpus, a mark.
 Scrūpūlus, a doubt or scruple.
 Scrūpus, a little stone.
 Scyphus, a bowl.
 Servus, a slave.
 Sestertius, two pounds and a half; a sesterce, a Roman coin.
 Sicarius, an assassin.
 Simius, & -a, an ape.
 Sirius, the dog-star.
 Soccus, a kind of shoe.
 Somnus, sleep.
 Sōnus, a sound.
 Spārus, a spear.
 Sponsus, a bridegroom.
 Stimūlus,

Stimulus, a sting, a spur.	Thronus, a royal seat.	Typus, a figure or pipe.
Stomachus, the stomach.	Thyasus, a chorus in honour of Bacchus.	Ulmus, f. an elm tree.
Strapus, a thong, a strap.	Thyrus, a spear wrapped with ivy.	Umbilicus, the navel.
Stylus, a style, or iron pen to write with on waxen tables.	Titulus, a title.	Uncus, a book.
Sulculus, a swine herd.	Tonus, a volume.	Urceus, a pitcher.
Succus, juice.	Tonus, a note in music.	Ursus, a bear.
Sulcus, a furrow.	Tophus, a gravel stone.	Urus, a buffalo.
Sarculus, a young twig.	Tornus, a turner's wheel.	Uterus, the womb.
Sufurrus, a whiffper.	Torus, a comb.	Vallus, a stake.
Talus, the ankle, a die.	Tribulus, a thistle.	Veneficus, a forcerer.
Taurus, a bull.	Triumphus, a triumph.	Ventus, the wind.
Taxus, f. the yew tree.	Trachus, a top.	Vicus, a village, a street.
Terminus, a bound.	Tubus, a tube or pipe.	Villicus, & -a, an overseer of a farm.
Thalamus, a marriage bed-chamber.	Truncus, the trunk.	Villus, shaggy hair.
Theologus, a divine.	Tumulus, a hillock.	Vitellus, the yolk of an egg.
Thesaurus, a treasure.	Turdus, a thrush.	Vitricus, a stepfather.
Tholus, the roof of a temple.	Tyrannus, a tyrant.	Vitulus, a calf. [wind.
		Zephyrus, the west-

Regnum, a kingdom, neut.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. regnum,	Nom. regna,
Gen. regni,	Gen. regnorum,
Dat. regno,	Dat. regnis,
Acc. regnum,	Acc. regna,
Voc. regnum,	Voc. regna,
Abl. regno :	Abl. regnis.

In like manner decline,

Acetum, vinegar.	Armentum, an herd.	Butyrum, butter.
Acōnitum, wolfsbane, a poisonous plant.	Arvum, & -us, a field.	Caelum, a graving tool.
Adagium, a proverb.	Astrum, a star.	Cementum, materials for building.
Admīniculum, a prop.	Asylum, a sanctuary.	Canistrum, a basket.
Adytum, the most secret part of a temple.	Atrium, a court or hall.	Capistrum, a halter or muzzle.
Album, a register.	Aulæum, tapstry.	Castrum, a castle.
Allium, garlick.	Aurum, gold.	Centrum, the centre.
Amentum, a thong.	Auxilium, assistance.	Cerebrum, the brain.
Amuletum, a charm.	Aviarium, a cage.	Chirographum, a hand-writing.
Anethum, anise.	Balsamum, balm.	Cilium, the eye-lashes.
Anicum, a fore-door.	Bathrum, an abyss.	Citrum, citron wood.
Antrum, a cave.	Basium, a kiss.	Clasicum, a trumpet.
Apium, parsley.	Bellum, war.	Caelum, pl, -i, heaven.
Argentum, silver.	Biduum, two days.	Cennum,
	Biennium, two years.	
	Brachium, an arm.	

Cœnum, <i>mire, dirt.</i>	Ervum, <i>vetches.</i>	Inĭtium, <i>a beginning.</i>
Collōquium, <i>a conference.</i>	Eſſĕdum, <i>a chariot.</i>	Intervallum, <i>distance between.</i>
Collum, <i>the neck.</i>	Ēverricŭlum, <i>a drag-net.</i>	Jūdicium, <i>judgement.</i>
Commōdum, <i>advantage.</i>	Exemplum, <i>an example.</i>	Jūgŭlum, <i>the throat.</i>
Confĭnium, <i>a bound or limit.</i>	Exĭtium, <i>destruction.</i>	Jūgum, <i>a yoke, the ridge of a bill.</i>
Congĭarium, <i>a largess.</i>	Exordium, <i>a beginning.</i>	Jurgium, <i>a quarrel.</i>
Convĭcium, <i>a reproach.</i>	Fānum, <i>a temple.</i>	Juſtum, <i>an order.</i>
Cōrium, <i>a hide.</i>	Fascĭnum, <i>witchcraft.</i>	Juſtitium, <i>a vacation.</i>
Coſtum, <i>ſpikenard.</i>	Faſtigium, <i>the top.</i>	Lābium, <i>the lip.</i>
Crēmĭum, <i>a dry ſtick.</i>	Fercŭlum, <i>a diſh of meat.</i>	Lardum, <i>bacon.</i>
Crĕpuſcŭlum, <i>the twilight.</i>	Ferrum, <i>iron.</i>	Lāsānum, <i>a chamber-pot.</i>
Cribrum, <i>a ſieve.</i>	Filum, <i>a thread.</i>	Lĭbum, <i>a ſweet-cake.</i>
Cŭbicŭlum, <i>a bed-chamber.</i>	Flābellum, <i>a fan.</i>	Lĭcium, <i>the woof.</i>
Cuminum, <i>cumin, an herb.</i>	Flagrum & flāgellum, <i>a whip.</i>	Lignum, <i>wood.</i>
Cymbālum, <i>a cymbal.</i>	Flammeum, <i>a veil.</i>	Lĭlium, <i>a lily.</i>
Damnum, <i>loſs.</i>	Fenum, <i>hay.</i>	Lintĕum, <i>a ſheet.</i>
Dĕlŭbrum, <i>a temple.</i>	Fōlium, <i>a leaf.</i>	Linum, <i>lint.</i>
Dĕmenſum, <i>an allowance of meat.</i>	Fōrum, <i>a market-place.</i>	Lōrum, <i>a thong.</i>
Detrĭmentum, <i>damage.</i>	Frāgum, <i>a ſtrawberry.</i>	Lucrum, <i>gain.</i>
Diārium, <i>a day's wages.</i>	Frĕtum, <i>a narrow ſea.</i>	Lŭdĭbrium, <i>a laughing-ſtock.</i>
Dilŭcŭlum, <i>the dawning of day.</i>	Frŭmentum, <i>corn.</i>	Luftrum, <i>a ſurvey.</i>
Dium, <i>poet. the open air.</i>	Fruſtum, <i>a bit or piece.</i>	Lŭteum, <i>the yolk of an egg.</i>
Dōlium, <i>a caſk.</i>	Fulcrum, <i>a prop.</i>	Lŭtum, <i>clay.</i>
Dōmicĭlium, <i>an abode.</i>	Furtum, <i>theft.</i>	Macellum, <i>the ſhambles.</i>
Dōnum, <i>a gift.</i>	Grānarium, <i>a granary.</i>	Mānubrium, <i>a hilt or handle.</i>
Dōrfum, <i>the back.</i>	Grānum, <i>a grain.</i>	Matrĭmōnium, <i>marriage.</i>
Ēffŭgium, <i>an eſcape.</i>	Grāphium, <i>a pencil.</i>	Mausōlæum, <i>any ſumptuous monument.</i>
Ēlectrum, <i>amber.</i>	Grēmĭum, <i>the boſom.</i>	Membrum, <i>a member.</i>
Ēlĕmentum, <i>an element, a letter.</i>	Gymnāſium, <i>a place of exerciſe.</i>	Mendācium, <i>a lie.</i>
Ēlōgium, <i>a brief ſaying, a teſtimonial in one's praiſe.</i>	Gynæcĕum, <i>the women's apartment.</i>	Mentum, <i>the chin.</i>
Ēmōlŭmentum, <i>profit.</i>	Gypſum, <i>plafter.</i>	Mĕtallum, <i>metal, a mine.</i>
Ēmplaſtrum, <i>a plafter.</i>	Hauſtrum, <i>a bucket.</i>	Mĭlium, <i>millet, a kind of grain.</i>
Ēmpōrium, <i>a mart or market town.</i>	Hellĕbōrum, & -us, <i>bellebore, a plant.</i>	Mĭnium, <i>vermilion.</i>
Ēphippium, <i>a ſaddle.</i>	Hōrōlōgium, <i>a machine that tells the hours.</i>	Mōmentum, <i>weight, importance.</i>
Ēpĭtāphium, <i>an inſcription on a tomb.</i>	Īdōlum, <i>an image.</i>	Mōnōpōlium, <i>the ſole right of ſelling any thing.</i>
Ergaſtŭlum, <i>a work-houſe.</i>	Īdyllium, <i>a paſtoral poem.</i>	Monſtrum, <i>a monſter.</i>
	Īmpĕrium, <i>command.</i>	
	Īnceptum, <i>an enterpriſe.</i>	
	Īndĭcium, <i>a diſcovery.</i>	
	Īndŭſium, <i>a ſhirt.</i>	
	Īngĕnium, <i>wit, genius.</i>	

<i>any thing against the common course of nature.</i>	Perpendicūlum, <i>a straight line upwards or downwards.</i>	Rastrum, <i>a rake.</i>
Mortārium, <i>a mortar.</i>	Pētorritum, <i>a waggon.</i>	Rēfūgium, <i>a shelter.</i>
Mūsēum, <i>a study or library.</i>	Pilentum, <i>a schariot.</i>	Rēmēdium, <i>a cure.</i>
Mustum, <i>new wine.</i>	Pilum, <i>a javelin.</i>	Rēmūlcum, <i>a rope or tow, a tow-berge.</i>
Mysterium, <i>a mystery; a thing not easily comprehended.</i>	Pistillum, <i>the pestle of a mortar.</i>	Rēpāgūlum, <i>a bar.</i>
Nasturtium, <i>creffes.</i>	Pisum, <i>pease.</i>	Rēpūdium, <i>a divorce.</i>
Naulum, <i>freight.</i>	Plaustrum, <i>a waggon.</i>	Responsum, <i>a answer.</i>
Naufragium, <i>shipwreck.</i>	Plectrum, <i>a quill or bow to play with on a musical instrument.</i>	Rētīnacūlum, <i>a cable.</i>
Nēgōtium, <i>a thing, business.</i>	Plumbum, <i>lead.</i>	Rostrum, <i>the bill of a bird, the beak of a ship.</i>
Nitrum, <i>nitre.</i>	Pōmārium, <i>an orchard.</i>	Rūdimentum, <i>pl. -a, the first principles of any art.</i>
Obsēquium, <i>compliance.</i>	Pōmōerium, <i>a void space on each side of a town-wall.</i>	Rutrum, <i>a pick-ax.</i>
ōdium, <i>hatred.</i>	Pōmum, <i>an apple.</i>	Sabbatum, <i>the sabbath.</i>
ōmāsum, <i>the paunch.</i>	Posticum, <i>a back-door.</i>	Sābūlum, <i>gravel.</i>
ōmentum, <i>the caul, or skin which covers the bowels.</i>	Postlūmīnium, <i>a return to one's country.</i>	Saccharum, <i>sugar.</i>
Oppidum, <i>a town.</i>	Prædium, <i>a farm.</i>	Sācelium, <i>a chapel.</i>
Opprobrium, <i>a reproach.</i>	Prejudicium, <i>a fore-judging.</i>	Sācerdōtium, <i>the priesthood.</i>
Opōnium, <i>fish, or any thing eaten with bread.</i>	Prælium, <i>a battle.</i>	Sacrāmentum, <i>a military oath.</i>
Orgānum, <i>any instrument. [the lips.]</i>	Præmium, <i>a reward.</i>	Sacrificium, <i>a sacrifice.</i>
Oscūlum, <i>a kiss, pl.</i>	Præsidium, <i>a defence, a garrison.</i>	Sacrilegium, <i>stealing sacred things.</i>
Ostrum, <i>purple.</i>	Prandium, <i>a dinner.</i>	Sāgum, <i>a soldier's cloak.</i>
ōtium, <i>repose.</i>	Pratum, <i>a meadow.</i>	Sālārium, <i>a salary.</i>
Ostium, <i>the door.</i>	Prælium, <i>a press.</i>	Sālinum, <i>a salt-cellar.</i>
ōvum, <i>an egg.</i>	Prætium, <i>a price.</i>	Salsāmentum, <i>salt-meat.</i>
Pābūlum, <i>fodder.</i>	Præmordium, <i>a beginning.</i>	Sālum, <i>the sea.</i>
Pactum, <i>an agreement.</i>	Principium, <i>a beginning.</i>	Sandālium, <i>a slipper.</i>
Pālātium, <i>a palace.</i>	Privilegium, <i>a private law or special right.</i>	Sarcūlum, <i>a weeding book, a spade.</i>
Pālātum, <i>the palate.</i>	Probrum, <i>a disgrace.</i>	Sarmentum, <i>a twig.</i>
Pallium, <i>a cloak.</i>	Prōdīgium, <i>a prodigy, any thing preternatural.</i>	Sātisdātum, <i>a bond of security.</i>
Pālādāmentum, <i>a general's robe.</i>	Prōmissum, <i>a promise.</i>	Saxum, <i>a large stone.</i>
Pānārium, <i>a bread basket.</i>	Prōpōsitum, <i>a purpose.</i>	Scalprum, <i>dim. Scalpellum, a knife.</i>
Pātībūlum, <i>a gibbet.</i>	Prōpugnācūlum, <i>a bulwark. [saying.]</i>	Scamnum, <i>dim. Scabellum, a bench or form.</i>
Pensum, <i>a task. [robe.]</i>	Prōverbium, <i>an old saying.</i>	Sceptrum, <i>a sceptre, a mace.</i>
Peplum, <i>a woman's dress.</i>	Pulpitum, <i>a pulpit.</i>	Scitum, <i>a decree.</i>
Perjūrium, <i>perjury, taking a false oath.</i>	Rāmentum, <i>a chip or shaving.</i>	Scortum, <i>an harlot.</i>
		Scrīnium, <i>a coffer.</i>

Scriptum, a writing.	Sterquilium, a dung-bill.	Tinnābūlum, a little bell.
Scrūpūlum, a scruple, a certain weight.	Stipendium, pay.	Tirōcīnium, an apprentice-ship.
Scūtum, a shield.	Strāgūlum, a blanket.	Tormentum, an engine, a torment.
Sēcūlum, an age.	Strātum, a couch.	Toxicum, poison.
Sēmīnārium, a nursery.	Strigmentum, a scraping.	Tribūtum, tax or custom.
Sēnācūlum, a senate-house.	Stūdium, desire, study.	Triclinium, a dining-room.
Sēnātūs-consultum, a decree of the senate.	Stuprum, debauchery.	Triduūm, three days.
Sēricum, silk.	Suāvium, a kiss.	Triennium, three years.
Servitium, slavery.	Subsellium, a bench.	Tripūdium, a dancing.
Serpyllum, wild thyme.	Subsidium, help.	Trivium, a place where three ways meet.
Sertum, a garland.	Sūburbanum, a house near the town.	Tropæum, a trophy, a token of victory.
Serum, whey.	Sūrbium, the suburbs, the part of a town without the walls.	Tūgūrium, a cottage.
Sestertium, a thousand sesterii.	Sūdārium, a handkerchief.	Tympānum, a drum.
Sēvum, tallow.	Suffrāgium, a vote.	Vaccīnium, a berry.
Signum, a sign, a standard.	Suggestum, ὄ-us, ūs, a place raised above others.	Vādīmōnium, bail; a promise to appear in court.
Sigillum, a seal.	Summārium, an abridgement.	Vādum, a ford, the sea.
Silicernium, a funeral supper, an old man.	Supercīlium, the brow, pride.	Vallum, a rampart.
Sinum, a milk pail.	Sūspīrium, a sign.	Vēlum, a veil, a sail.
Sistrum, a timbrel.	Symbōlum, a sign or token.	Vēnābūlum, a bunting pole.
Sūdālitiūm, a company, a corporation.	Sympōsium, ὄ-on, a banquet.	Vēnēnum, poison.
Sōlārium, a sun-dial.	Tabernācūlum, a tent.	Ventilabrum, a fan.
Sōlātiūm, comfort.	Tābūlātum, a story.	Verbum, a word.
Sōlium, a throne.	Tābum, black gore.	Vestibūlum, a porch.
Sōlum, the ground.	Tædiūm, weariness.	Vestigium, the print of the foot.
Somniūm, a dream.	Tālentum, a talent.	Vexillum, a banner.
Spātium, a space.	Tectum, the roof, a house.	Viāticum, money, or provisions for a journey.
Spectācūlum, a show.	Tēlum, a weapon.	Vincūlum, a chain.
Spectrum, a phantom, or apparition.	Templum, a church.	Vinum, wine.
Spēcūlum, a looking-glass.	Tergum, the back.	Vitium, vice, a fault.
Spēlaxum, a den.	Testimōnium, an evidence.	Vitrum, glass.
Spīcīlēgium, a gleanings.	Theatrum, a theatre.	Vivārium, a place to keep beasts in, a warren or fish-pond.
Spīcūlum, a dart.	Thūribūlum, a censer, a vessel to burn incense in.	Vōcābūlum, a name of word.
Spīrācūlum, a breathing hole.		Vōtum, a vow.
Spōlium, spoil.		
Spūtum, spittle.		
Stābūlum, a stable.		
Stādium, a furlong.		
Stagnum, a pond.		
Stannum, tin.		

EXCEPTIONS in Gender.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine, *hūmus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os* :

Ābyſſus, a bottomless pit.	Carbāſus, a ſail.	Ērēmus, a deſert.
Antidōtus, a preſervative againſt poiſon.	Diālectus, a dialect, or manner of ſpeech.	Mēthōdus, a method.
Arctos, the Bear, a conſtellation near the north pole.	Diāmetros, the diameter of a circle.	Pēriōdus, a period.
	Diphthongus, a diphthong.	Pērīmetros, the circumference.
		Phārus, a watch tower.
		Synōdus, an aſſembly.

To theſe add ſome names of jewels and plants, becauſe *gemma* and *planta* are feminine; as,

Āmēthyſtus, an amethyst.	Sapphirus, a ſapphīre.	Byſſus, fine flax or linen.
Chryſolithus, a chryſolite. [ſolite.]	Tōpazius, a topaz.	Coſtus, coſmary.
Chryſōphrāſus, a kind of topaz.	Biblus, { an Egyptian reed of which paper was made.	Crōcus, ſaffron.
Chryſtallus, crystal.		Hysōpus, hyſop.
Leucōchryſus, a jacinth.	Pāpȳrus	Nardus, ſpikenard.

Other names of jewels are generally maſculine; as, *Bēryllus*, the beryl; *carbunculus*, a carbuncle; *Pȳrōpus*, a ruby; *Smāragdus*, an emerald: And alſo names of plants; as, *Aſpārāgus*, aſparagus, or ſparrowgrafs; *ellebōrus*, ellebore; *raphānus*, radish or colewort: *intȳbus*, endive or fuccory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow, are either maſculine or feminine:

Ātōmus, an atom.	Barbītus, a barb.	Groſſus, a green fig.
Balānus, the fruit of the palm-tree, ointment.	Cāmēlus, a camel.	Pēnus, a ſtore-houſe.
	Cōlus, a diſtaff.	Phāsēlus, a little ſhip.

Exc. 3. *Vīrus*, poiſon; *pēlāgus*, the ſea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either maſculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

EXCEPTIONS in Declension.

Proper names in *ius* loſe *us* in the vocative; as, *Hōrātius*, *Hōrāti*; *Virgīlius*, *Virgīli*: *Georgius*, *Georgi*, names of men; *Lārius*, *Lāri*; *Mincius*, *Minci*, names of lakes. *Fīlius*, a ſon, alſo hath *fili*; *gēnius*, one's guardian angel, *geni*; and *deus*, a god, hath *deus*, in the voc.

and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *dūs*, than *deī* and *deīs*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus* in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e*: as, *tabellārius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier; *pīus*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Dēlius*, *Dēlie*; *Tīryntbius*, *Tīryntbie*; and these possessives, *Laertius*, *Laertie*; *Saturnius*, *Saturnie*, &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the voc. of nouns in *us* like the nom. as, *fluvius*, *Latinus*, for *fluvie*, *Latine*, Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely. Thus, *Audi tu pōpūlus*, for *pōpūle*. Liv. i, 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* into *us*; as, *Evander*, or *Evandrus*, voc. *Evander*, or *Evandre*: So *Meander*, *Leander*, *Tymber*, *Teucer*, &c. and so anciently *puer* in the voc. had *puere* from *puerus*.

Note. When the gen. sing. ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets, for the sake of quantity; as, *tugūrī*, for *tugurii*; *ingōnī*, for *ingenii*, &c. And in the gen. plur. we find *deūm*, *liberūm*, *fabrūm*, *duūmvirūm*, &c. for *dorum*, *liberorum*, &c. and in poetry, *Teucrūm*, *Graivūm*, *Argivūm*, *Dānāvūm*, *Pēlāsgūm*, &c. for *Teucrorum*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Os and *on* are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *Ilion*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus*, *Ilium*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eos* or *ēus* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as, *Orphēus*, gen. *Orphēi*, *Orphēi* or *Orphēi*. So *Tbesēus*, *Promethēus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when the *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *es* have the gen. sing. in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, gen. *Androgeos*, or *ēi*, the name of a man; *Atbos*, *Atbo*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both which are also found in the third decl. thus, nom. *Androgeos*, gen. *Androgeōnis*: So *Atbo*, or *Athon*, *-onis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *es*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the gen. in *u*; as, *Mēnandra*, *Apollodōru*, for *Mēnandri*, *Apollodori*, Ter.

Nouns in *es* have the acc. in *um* or *on*; as, *Delus* or *Delos*, acc. *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the gen. plur. in *ōn*; as, *Georgica*, gen. pl. *Georgicōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as, Virgil's *Georgicks*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters, are thirteen, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *t*, *x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with

with the second ; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A*, *i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these : nom. sing. *a*, *e*, &c. ; gen. *is* ; dat. *i* ; acc. *em* ; voc. *the same with the nominative* ; abl. *e*, or *i* ; nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es*, *a*, or, *ia* ; gen. *um*, or *ium* ; dat. and abl. *ibus* ; thus,

Sermo, <i>speech, masc.</i>		Caput, <i>the head, neut.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. sermo,	N. sermōnes,	N. cāput,	N. capita,
G. sermōnis,	G. sermōnum,	G. capītis,	G. capitum,
D. sermoni,	D. sermonibus,	D. capiti,	D. capitibus,
A. sermonein,	A. sermones,	A. caput,	A. capita,
V. sermo,	V. sermones.	V. caput,	V. capita,
A. sermone.	A. sermonibus.	A. capite.	A. capitibus.
Rupes, <i>a rock, fem.</i>		Sedile, <i>a seat, neut.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. rūpes,	N. rupes.	N. sēdile,	N. sedilia.
G. rupis,	G. rupium,	G. sedilis,	G. sedilium,
D. rupi,	D. rupibus,	D. sedili,	D. sedilibus,
A. rupem,	A. rupes,	A. sedile,	A. sedilia,
V. rupes,	V. rupes,	V. sedile,	V. sedilia.
A. rupe.	A. rupibus.	A. sedili.	A. sedilibus.
Lapis, <i>a stone, masc.</i>		Iter, <i>a journey, neut.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. lāpis,	N. lāpides,	N. iter,	N. itinera,
G. lapidis,	G. lapidum,	G. itinēris,	G. itinerum,
D. lapidi,	D. lapidibus,	D. itineri,	D. itinēribus,
A. lapidem,	A. lapides,	A. iter,	A. itinera,
V. lapis,	V. lapides,	V. iter,	V. itinera,
A. lapide.	A. lapidibus.	A. itinere.	A. itineribus.

Of the GENDER and GENITIVE of Nouns of the Third Declension.

A, E, I, and Y.

I. Nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, and *y*, are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ātis* ; as, *diadēma*, *diadēmātis*, a crown ; *dogma*, *ātis*, an opinion. So,

Ænigma, <i>a riddle.</i>	Diplōma, <i>a charter.</i>	Poēma, <i>a poem.</i>
Āpōthegma, <i>a short pithy saying.</i>	Ēpigramma, <i>an inscription.</i>	Schēma, <i>a scheme or figure.</i>
Āroma, <i>sweet spices.</i>	Nūmisma, <i>a coin.</i>	Sōphisma, <i>a deceitful argument.</i>
Axiōma, <i>a plain truth.</i>	Phasma, <i>an apparition.</i>	

Stemma, a pedigree.	Strätägēma, an artful	subject to write or
Stigma, a mark or	contrivance.	speak on. [vessil.
brand, a disgrace.	Thēma, a theme, a	Tōreuma, a carved

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rēte*, *retis*, a net. So,

Ancile, a shield.	Crināle, a pin for the	Nāvāle, a dock or place
Aplustre, the flag of a	hair.	for shipping.
ship.	Cūbile, a couch.	Ōvile, a sheep-fold.
Campestre, a pair of	Ēquile, a stable for	Præsēpe, a stall; a
drawers.	horses.	bee-hive.
Cochleāre, a spoon.	Lāqueāre, a ceiled roof.	Sēcāle, ryc.
Conclāve, a room.	Mantile, a towel.	Suile, a sow-cote.
	Mōnile, a necklace.	Tibiāle, a stocking.

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as, *gummi*, gum; *zingibēri*, ginger; but some Greek nouns add *itis*; as, *hydrōmēli*, *hydromelitis*, water and honey sodden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as, *moly*, *molyos*, an herb; *misy*, *-yos*, vitriol.

O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis*; as,

Sermo, *sermōnis*, speech; *draco*, *dracōnis*, a dragon.—So,

Āgāso, a horse-keeper.	Cūrio, the chief of a	Pāvo, a peacock.
Āquilo, the north wind.	ward or curia.	Pēro, a kind of shoe.
Arrhābo, an earnest-	Ēquīso, a groom or	Prāco, a common crier.
penny, a pledge.	ostler.	Prādo, a robber.
Bālatro, a pitiful fel-	Erro, a wanderer.	Pulmo, the lungs.
low.	Fullo, a fuller of cloth.	Salmo, a salmon.
Bambālio, a stutterer.	Helluo, a glutton.	Sannio, a buffoon.
Bāro, a blockhead.	Histrīo, a player.	Sāpo, soap.
Būbo, an owl.	Latro, a robber.	Sīpho, a pipe or tube.
Būfo, a toad.	Lēno, a pimp.	Spādo, an eunuch.
Cālo, a soldier's slave.	Lūdīo, & -ius, a player.	Stōlo, a shoot or scion.
Cāpo, a capon.	Lurco, a glutton.	Strābo, a goggle-eyed
Carbo, a coal.	Mango, a slave-mer-	person.
Caupo, an innkeeper.	chant.	Tēmo, the pole or
Cerdo, a colt, or one	Mirmillo, a fencer.	draught-tree.
who follows a mean	Mōrio, a fool.	Tīro, a raw soldier.
trade.	Mucro, the point of a	Umbo, the boss of a
Cīnīso, a frizler of	weapon.	shield.
hair.	Mūlio, a muleteer.	Ūpīlio, a shepherd.
Crabro, a wasp, or	Nēbūlo, a knave.	Vōlo, a volunteer.
hornet.		

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *rätio, rationis*, reason.—So,

Captio, a quirk.	Perduellio, treason.	Sectio, the confiscation
Cautio, caution, care.	Portio, a part.	or forfeiture of one's
Concio, an assembly,	Pötio, drink.	goods.
a speech.	Pröditio, treachery.	Sēditio, a mutiny.
Cessio, a yielding.	Proscriptio, a proscrip-	Sessio, a sitting.
Diätio, a word.	tion, ordering citizens	Stätio, a station.
Dēditio, a surrender.	to be slain, and con-	Suspicio, mistrust.
Lectio, a lesson.	fiscating their effects.	Titillätio, a tickling.
Lēgio, a legion, a body	Quästio, an enquiry.	Translätio, a transfer-
of men.	Rēbellio, rebellion.	ring.
Mentio, mention.	Rēgio, a country.	üsücapio, the enjoyment
Nötio, a notion or idea.	Rēlätio, a telling.	of a thing by prescrip-
öpinio, an opinion.	Rēligio, religion.	tion.
Optio, a choice.	Rēmüßio, a slacken-	Väcätio, freedom from
öratio, a speech.	ing.	labour, &c.
Penfio, a payment.	Sanctio, a confirmation.	Vifio, an apparition.

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

Curcülio, the throat-	Scipio, a staff.	Unio, a pearl.
pipe, the weasand.	Scorpio, a scorpion.	Vespertilio, a bat.
Päpilio, a butterfly.	Septentrio, the north.	Ternio, the number three.
Pügio, a dagger.	Stellio, a lizard.	Quäternio, — four
Püßio, a little child.	Titio, a firebrand.	Sēnio, — six

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go* are feminine, and have the genitive in *inis*; as, *ärundo, arundinis*, a reed; *imägo, imaginis*, an image.—So,

Ærugo, rust (of brass.)	Intercäpēdo, a space	Sartägo, a frying-pan.
Cäligo, darkness.	between.	Scätürigo, a spring.
Cartilägo, a gristle.	Länügo, down.	Testüdo, a tortoise.
Crēpido, a creek, a bank.	Lentigo, a pimple.	Torpēdo, a numbness.
Farrägo, a mixture.	örigo, an origin.	üligo, the natural moi-
Ferrügo, rust, (of iron.)	Porrigo; scurf, or	sture of the earth.
Formido, fear.	scales in the head;	Välētüdo, health.
Füligo, foot.	dandruff.	Vertigo, a dizziness.
Grando, hail.	Pröpägo, a lineage.	Virgo, a virgin.
Hirüdo, a horse-leech.	Rübigo, rust, mildew.	Vörägo, a gulf.
Hirundo, a swallow.		

But the following are masculine :

Cardo, -inis, a binge.	Margo, -inis, the brink of a river;
Cüdo, -önis, a leather cap.	also fem.
Harpägo, -önis, a drag.	Ordo, -inis, order.
Ligo, -önis, a spade.	Tendo, -inis, a tendon.
	üdo, önis, a kind of shoe.

Cüpido, desire, is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always fem.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *īnis*,

Āpollo, -īnis, *the god Apollo.* Nēmo, -īnis, m. or f. *no body.*
 Hōmo, -īnis, *a man or woman.* Turbo, -īnis, m. *a whirlwind.*

Cāro, flesh, fem. has *carnis*: Ānio, masc. the name of a river, *Aniēnis*: Nerio, *Nerīēnis*, the wife of the god Mars; from the obsolete nominatives *Anien*, *Nerien*. Turbo, the name of a man, has *ōnis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *us* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular: as, *Dīdo*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didūs*; dat. *Didō*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis*: so *ēcho*, -ūs, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, -ūs, the name of a ship; *bālo*, -onis, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

ānimal, *animālis*, a living creature; *tōral*, -ālis, a bed-cover; *bālec*, *balēcis*, a kind of pickle.—So,

Cervical, <i>a bolster.</i>	Mīnerval, <i>entry-money.</i>	Pūteal, <i>a well cover.</i>
Cūbital, <i>a cushion.</i>	Mīnūtal, <i>minced meat.</i>	Vectīgal, <i>a tax.</i>
Except. Consul, -ūlis, m. <i>a consul.</i>	Mūgil, -īlis, m. <i>a mullet fish.</i>	
Fel, fellis, n. <i>gall.</i>	Sal, sālis, m. or n. <i>salt.</i>	
Lac, lactis, n. <i>milk.</i>	Sāles, -ium, pl. m. <i>witty sayings.</i>	
Mel, mellis, n. <i>honey.</i>	Sol, sōlis, m. <i>the sun.</i>	

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Dāvid*, *Davidis*.

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

Cānon, -ōnis, <i>a rule.</i>	Phyſiognōmon, -ōnis, <i>one who guesses at the dispositions of men from the face.</i>
Dæmon, -ōnis, <i>a spirit.</i>	Ren, rēnis, <i>the reins.</i>
Delphin, -īnis, <i>a dolphin.</i>	Splen, splēnis, <i>the spleen.</i>
Gnōmon, -ōnis, <i>the cock of a dial.</i>	Syren, -ēnis, <i>f. a Syren.</i>
Hymen, -ēnis, <i>the god of marriage.</i>	Titan, -ānis, <i>the sun.</i>
Lien, -ēnis, <i>the milt.</i>	
Pæan, -ānis, <i>a song.</i>	

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *īnis*; as, *flūmen*, *flumīnis*, a river.—So,

Abdōmen, <i>the paunch.</i>	Agmen, <i>an army on march,</i>	Alūmen, <i>alum.</i>
Ācūmen, <i>sharpness,</i>		Bitūmen, <i>a kind of clay.</i>
		Cācūmen,

Cācūmen, <i>the top.</i>	Germen, <i>a sprout.</i>	Sagmen, <i>vervain, an herb.</i>
Carmen, <i>a song, a poem.</i>	Grāmen, <i>grafs.</i>	
Cognōmen, <i>a surname.</i>	Lĕgūmen, <i>all kind of pulse.</i>	Sēmen, <i>a seed.</i>
Cōlūmen, <i>a support.</i>	Lāmen, <i>light.</i>	Spĕcimen, <i>a proof.</i>
Crīmen, <i>a crime.</i>	Nōmen, <i>a name.</i>	Stāmen, <i>the warp.</i>
Discrīmen, <i>a difference.</i>	Nūmen, <i>the deity.</i>	Subtēmen, <i>the woof.</i>
Exāmen, <i>a swarm of bees.</i>	Ōmen, <i>a presage.</i>	Tegmen, <i>a covering.</i>
Fōrāmen, <i>a hole.</i>	Pūtāmen, <i>a nut-shell.</i>	Vīmen, <i>a twig.</i>
		Vōlūmen, <i>a folding.</i>

The following nouns are likewise neuter :

Glūten, -īnis, <i>glue.</i>	Inguen, -īnis, <i>the groin.</i>
Unguen, -ūnis, <i>ointment.</i>	Pollen, -īnis, <i>fine flour.</i>

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *īnis* ; *peſten*, a comb ; *tūbīcen* a trumpeter ; *tībīcen*, a piper ; and *oſcen*, n. *oſcīnis*, ſc. *āvis*, f. a bird, which foreboded by ſinging.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine : *Sīndon*, -ōnis, fine linen ; *āēdon*, -ōnis, a nightingale ; *Halcyon*, -ōnis, a bird called the King's fiſher ; *īcon*. *ōnis*, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis* ; as, *Laōmēdon*, -ontis, a king of Troy. So *Achēron*, *Chamaeleon*, *Pbaſthon*, *Chāron*, &c.

AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive ; as,

Calcar, *calcāris*, a ſpur ; *murmur*, *murmūris*, a noiſe.—So,

Guttur, -ūris, <i>the throat.</i>	Nectar, -āris, <i>drink of the gods.</i>
Jūbar, -āris, <i>a ſun beam.</i>	Pulvīnar, -āris, <i>a pillow.</i>
Lācūnar, -āris, <i>a ceiling.</i>	Sulphur, -ūris, <i>ſulphur.</i>
Except. Ēbur, -ōris, n. <i>ivory.</i>	Jēcur, -ōris, or jecīnōris, n. <i>the liver.</i>
Far, farris, n. <i>corn.</i>	Rōbur, -ōris, n. <i>ſtrength.</i>
Fēmur, -ōris, n. <i>the thigh.</i>	Sālar, -aris, m. <i>a trout.</i>
Furfur, -ūris, m. <i>bran.</i>	Turtur, -ūris, m. <i>a turtle-dove.</i>
Fur, fūris, m. <i>a thief.</i>	Vultur, -ūris, m. <i>a vulture.</i>
Hēpar, -ātis, or -ātos, n. <i>the liver.</i>	

ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is* ; as,

Anſer, *anſēris*, a gooſe or gander ; *agger*, -ēris, a rampart ; *āer*, -ēris, the air ; *carcer*, -ēris, a priſon ; *aſſer*, -ēris, & *aſſis*, -is, a plank ; *dōlor*, -ōris, pain ; *cōlor*, -ōris, a colour.—So,

Actor, a doer, a pleader.	Ōdor, ʊ -os, a smell.	Sopor, sleep.
Crēditor, he that trusts or lends.	Ōlor, a swan.	Splendor, brightness.
Cruor, gore.	Pædor, filth.	Sponsor, a surety.
Dēbitor, a debtor.	Pastor, a shepherd.	Squālor, filthiness.
Fætor, an ill smell.	Prætor, a commander.	Stūpor, dullest.
Hōnor, honour.	Pūdor, shame.	Sūtor, a sewer.
Lector, a reader.	Rūbor, blushing.	Tēpor, warmth.
LiCTOR, an officer among the Romans who attended the magistrates.	Rūmor, a report.	Terror, dread.
Livor, paleness, malice.	Sāpor, a taste.	Timor, fear.
Nidor, a strong smell.	Sartor, a cobbler or tailor.	Tonsor, a barber.
	Sātor, a sower, a farmer.	Tūtor, a guardian.
		Vāpor, a vapour.
		Vēnātor, a hunter.

Rhetor, a rhetorician; has rhetōris; castor, a beaver, castōris.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter:

Ācer, -ēris, a maple tree.	Marmor, -ōris, marble.
Ādor, -ōris, fine wheat.	Pāpāver, -ēris, poppy.
Æquor, -ōris, a plain, the sea.	Pīper, -ēris, pepper.
Cādāver, -ēris, a dead carcase.	Spinther, -ēris, a clasp.
Cīcer, -ēris, vetches.	Tūber, -ēris, a swelling.
Cor, cordis, the heart.	Ūber, -ēris, a pap, or fatness.
Iter, itinēris, a journey.	Ver, vēris, the spring.
Arbor, -ōris, a tree, fem.	Tuber, -ēris, the fruit of the tuber tree, is masc. but when put for the tree, fem.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris* for the genitive; as, *hic imber, imbris*, a shower. So *Insūber, Octōber*, &c.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris*; as, *venter, ventris*, the belly; *pāter, patris*, a father; *frāter, -tris*, a brother; *accipiter, -tris*, a hawk; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crātēris*; *sōter, ēris*, a faviour; *lāter*, a tile, *latēris*; *Jūpiter*, the chief of the Heathen gods, has *Jōvis*; *linter, -tris*, a little boat, is masc. or fem.

AS.

7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis*; as, *ætas, ætātis*, an age.—So,

Æstas, the summer.	Sīmultas, a feud, a grudge.	Vērītas, truth.
Pīctas, piety.	Tempestatas, a time, a tempest.	Vōluntas, will.
Pōtestas, power.	Ūbertas, fertility.	Vōluptas, pleasure.
Prōbītas, probity.		Ānas, a duck, bass.
Sātiētas, a glut or disgust.		ānātis.

Except. 1. *As, assis*, m. a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts.

Mas, māris, m. a male.
Vas, vādis, m. a surety.
Vas, vāsis, n. a vessel.

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, fem.; *as*, *sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semissis*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dodrans*, 9; *dextans*, or *dēcunx*, 10; *uncunx*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine; some feminine; some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. as, *gigas*, *gigantis*, a giant; *ādāmas*, *antis*, an adamant; *ēlēphas*, *antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *adis*, or *ados*; as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampados*, a lamp; *drōmas*, *-adis*, f. a dromedary; likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Aradis*, or *-ados*. Those that are neuter have *atis*; as, *būēras*, *-atis*, an herb; *artocreas*, *-atis*, a pie.

E S.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is*; as,

rūpes, *rupis*, a rock; *nūbes*, *nubis*, a cloud.—So,

<i>Ædes</i> , or <i>-is</i> , a temple;	<i>Lues</i> , a plague.	<i>Sēpes</i> , a hedge.
plur. a house.	<i>Mōles</i> , a heap.	<i>Sōbōles</i> , an offspring.
<i>Cautes</i> , a rugged rock.	<i>Nātes</i> , the buttock.	<i>Strāges</i> , a slaughter.
<i>Clādes</i> , an overthrow,	<i>Pālumbes</i> , m. or f. a	<i>Struces</i> , a heap.
destruction.	pigeon.	<i>Sūdes</i> , a flake.
<i>Crātes</i> , a bundle.	<i>Prōles</i> , an offspring.	<i>Tābes</i> , a consumption.
<i>Fāmes</i> , hunger.	<i>Pūbes</i> , youth.	<i>Vulpes</i> , a fox.
<i>Fides</i> , a fiddle.		

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive.

<i>Āles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a bird.	<i>Palmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a vine branch.
<i>Āmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a fowler's staff.	<i>Pāries</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a wall.
<i>Āries</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a ram.	<i>Pes</i> , <i>pēdis</i> , the foot.
<i>Bes</i> , <i>beſſis</i> , two thirds of a pound.	<i>Pēdes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a footman, or a foot-soldier.
<i>Cēspes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a turf.	<i>Poples</i> , <i>-itis</i> , the ham of the leg.
<i>Ēques</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a horseman.	<i>Præfes</i> , <i>-idis</i> , a president.
<i>Fomes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , fuel.	<i>Sātelles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a life-guard.
<i>Gurges</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a whirlpool.	<i>Sūpes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , the flock of a tree.
<i>Hēres</i> , <i>-ēdis</i> , an heir.	<i>Termes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , an olive bough.
<i>Indīges</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a man deified.	<i>Trāmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a path.
<i>Interpres</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , an interpreter.	<i>Vēles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a light-armed soldier.
<i>Līmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a limit or bound.	<i>Vātes</i> , <i>vatis</i> , a prophet.
<i>Miles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a soldier.	<i>Verres</i> , <i>verris</i> , a boar-pig.
<i>Obſes</i> , <i>-idis</i> , a hostage.	

But *ales*, *miles*, *heres*, *interpres*, *obſes*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine,

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive :

Ābies, -ētis, a fir-tree.

Cēres, -ēris, the goddess of corn.

Mercēs, -ēdis, a reward, hire.

Mergēs, -ītis, a handful of corn.

Quies, -ētis, rest.

Rēquies, -ētis; or requiēi, (of the fifth declension), rest.

Sēges, -ētis, growing corn.

Tēges, -ētis, a mat or coverlet.

Tūdes, -is, or -ītis, a hammer.

To these add the following adjectives.

Āles, -ītis, swift.

Bīpes, -ēdis, two-footed.

Quadrūpes, -ēdis, four-footed.

Dēses, -īdis, slothful.

Dives, -ītis, rich.

Hēbes, -ētis, dull.

Perpes, -ētis, perpetual.

Præpes, -ētis, swift-winged.

Rēses, -īdis, idle.

Sopes, -ītis, safe.

Sūperstes, -ītis, surviving.

Tēres, -ētis, round and long, smooth.

Lōcuples, -ētis, rich.

Manſues, -ētis, gentle.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as, hic *acīnāces*, -is, a Persian sword, a scimitar; but some are neuter; as, hoc *cācoēthes*, an evil custom, *bippōmānes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pānāces*, the herb all-heal; *nēpenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllable *Cres*, a Cretan, have *ētis* in the genitive, as, hic *magnes*, *magnētis*, a loadstone; *tāpes*, -ētis, tapestry; *lēbes*, -ētis, a cauldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *ētis* or *is*; as, *Dāres*, *Darētis*, or *Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension; *āchilles*, has *āchillis*; or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillēi* or *Achillei*, of the second decl. from *Achillēus*: So *ūlysses*, *Pēricles*, *Verres*, *Aristōteles*, &c.

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as,

auris, *auris*, the ear; *avis*, *avis*, a bird.—So,

Āpis, a bee.

Bilis, the gall, anger.

Classis, a fleet.

Fēlis, a cat.

Fōris, a door, ostener

plur. fores, -ium.

Messis, a harvest or crop.

Nāris, the nostril.

Neptis, a niece.

Ōvis, a sheep.

Pellis, a skin.

Pestis, a plague.

Rātis, a raft.

Rūdis, a rod.

Vallis, a valley.

Vestis, a garment.

Vitis, a vine.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule :

Axis,

Axis, axis, an axle-tree.	Ensis, a sword.	Patruelis, a cousin-german.
Aqualis, a water-pot, an ewer.	Fascis, a bundle.	Piscis, a fish.
Callis, a beaten road.	Faciatis, a herald.	Postis, a post.
Caulis, the stalk of an herb.	Follis, a pair of bellows.	Sodalis, a companion.
Collis, a bill.	Fustis, a staff.	Torris, a fire-brand.
Cenchris, a kind of serpent,	Menfis, a month.	Unguis, the nail.
	Mugilis, or -il, a mullet fish. [world.	Vectis, a lever.
	Orbis, a circle, the	Vermis, a worm.

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *pānis*, bread; *crīnis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *idis*; as, *týrannis*, *týrannidis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

Cinis, -ēris, ashes.	Pūbis or pūbea, -is, or oftener, -ēris, marriageable.
Cūcūmis, -is, or -ēris, a cucumber.	Pulvis, -ēris, dust.
Dis, dītis, the god of riches, or rich, an adj.	Quiris, -ītis, a Roman.
Glis, glūris, a dormouse, a rat.	Samnis, -ītis, a Samnite.
Impūbis, or impūbea, -is or -ēris, not marriageable.	Sanguis, -īnis, blood.
Lāpis, -īdis, a stone.	Sēmīs, -īllis, the half of any thing.
	Vōmis, or -er, -ēris, a ploughshare.

Pulvis and *cinis* are sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pubis* and *impubis* are properly adjectives; thus, *Puberibus caulem foliis*, a stalk with downy leaves, *Virg. Æn.* xii. 413. *Impube corpus*, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pubes*, -is, f.) of youth, *Horat. epod.* 5. 13. *Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adj. has *exsanguis* in the gen.

Exc. 3. The following are either masc. or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule.

Amnis, a river.	Fīnis, the end: fines, the boundaries of a field, or territories of a state, is always masculine
Anguis, a snake.	Scrōbis, or scrobs, a ditch.
Cānalis, a conduit-pipe.	Torquis, a chain.
Clūnis, the buttock.	
Corbis, a basket.	

Exc. 4. These feminines have *idis*: *Cassis*, -īdis, a helmet; *cuspis*, -īdis, the point of a spear; *capis*, -īdis, a kind of cup; *prōmulfis*, -īdis, a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis*, strife, f. has *litis*.

Exc. 5, Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: Some have *eos* or *ios*; as, *hērēsīs*, -eos, or -ios, or -is, a heresy; so, *bāsīs*, f. the foot of a pillar; *pbrāsīs*, a phrase; *phthīsīs*, a consumption: *poēsīs*, poetry: *metrōpōlis*, a chief city, &c. Some have *idis*, or

īdos; as, *Pāris*, *-īdis*, or *-īdos*, the name of a man; *aspis*, *-īdis*, f. an asp; *ēpbēmēris*, *-īdis*, f. a day-book; *īris*, *-īdis*, f. the rainbow; *pyxis*, *-īdis*, f. a box. So, *Ægis*, the shield of Pallas; *cantbāris*, a sort of fly; *pērisčēlis*, a garter; *prōboscis*, an elephant's trunk; *pūrāmis*, a pyramid; and *tigris*, a tiger, *-īdis*, seldom *tigris*: all fem. Part have *-īdis*; as, *Pfophis*, *-īdis*, the name of a city: others have *-inis*; as, *Ēleufis*, *-inis*, the name of a city: and some have *-entis*; as: *Sīmois*, *Sīmoentis*, the name of a river. *Chāris*, one of the Graces, has *Chāritis*.

O S.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis*; as,

nēpos, *-ōtis*, a grandchild; *sācerdos*, *-ōtis*, a priest, also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

Arbos, or *-or*, *-ōris*, a tree.

Cos, *cōtis*, a cobblestone.

Dos, *dōtis*, a dowry.

Eos, *eōis*, the morning.

Glos, *glōris*, the husband's sister, or brother's wife.

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

Flos, *flōris*, a flower.

Hōnos, or *-or*, *-ōris*, honour.

Lābos, or *-or*, *-ōris*, labour.

Lēpos, or *-or*, *-ōris*, wit.

Mos, *mōris*, a custom.

Ros, *rōris*, dew.

Custos, *-ōdis*, a keeper; also fem.

Hēros, *herōis*, a hero.

Minos, *-ōis*, a king of Crete.

Tros, *Trōis*, a Trojan.

Bos, *bōvis*, m. or f. an ox or cow.

Exc. 3. *Os*, *offis*, a bone; and *ōs*, *oris*, the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *-ōis*; as, *bēros*, *-ōis*, a hero, or great man: So *Mēnos*, a king of Crete; *Tros*, a Trojan; *thos*, a kind of wolf.

U S.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris*; as,

peclūs, *peclōris*, the breast; *tempus*, *tempōris*, time. So,

Corpus, a body.

Dēcus, honour.

Dēdēcus, disgrace.

Fācīnus, a great action, a wicked action, a crime.

Foenus, usury.

Frīgus, cold.

Littus, a shore.

Nēmus, a grove.

Pēcus, cattle.

Pēnus, provisions.

Pignus, a pledge.

Stercus, dung.

Tergus, a hide.

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ĕris*.

<i>Ācus, chaff.</i>	<i>Mūnus, a gift, or office.</i>	<i>Scēlus, a crime.</i>
<i>Fūnus, a funeral.</i>	<i>Ōlus, pot-berbs.</i>	<i>Sīdus, a star.</i>
<i>Fœdus, a covenant.</i>	<i>Ōnus, a burden.</i>	<i>Vellus, a fleece of wool.</i>
<i>Gēnus, a kind, or kindred.</i>	<i>Ōpus, a work.</i>	<i>Viscus, an entrail.</i>
<i>Glōmus, a clew.</i>	<i>Pondus, a weight.</i>	<i>Ulcus, a bile.</i>
<i>Lātus, the side.</i>	<i>Rūdus, rubbish.</i>	<i>Vulnus, a wound.</i>

Thus, *acĕris, funĕris, &c.* *Glōmus*, a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has *glōmi*, of the second declension. *Vĕnus*, the goddess of love, and *vĕtus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ĕris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously :

<i>Incus, -ūdis, an anvil.</i>	<i>Jūventus, -ūtis, youth.</i>
<i>Pīlus, -ūdis, a pool or morass.</i>	<i>Sālus, -ūtis, safety.</i>
<i>Pĕcus (not used), -ūdis, a sheep.</i>	<i>Sēnĕctus, -ūtis, old age.</i>
<i>Subscus, -ūdie, a dove-tail.</i>	<i>Servītus, -ūtis, slavery.</i>
<i>Tĕllus, -ūris, the earth, or goddess of the earth.</i>	<i>Virtus, -ūtis, virtue.</i>
	<i>Intercus, -ūtis, an hydrophy.</i>

Intercus is properly an adjective, having *agua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris* in the genitive ; as,

<i>Crus, crūris, the leg.</i>	<i>Rus, rūris, the country.</i>
<i>Jus, jūris, law or right ; also broth.</i>	<i>Thus, thūris, frankincense.</i>
<i>Pus pūris, the corrupt matter of any sort.</i>	<i>So Mus, mūris, masc. a mouse.</i>

Ligus, or *-ur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris* ; *Īpus*, masc. a hare, *Īpūris* ; *fus*, masc. or fem. a swine, *fuis* ; *grus*, masc. or fem. a crane, *gruis*.

ŌEdīpus, the name of a man, has *ŌEdīpūdis* ; sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *ŌEdīpi*. The compounds of *pus* have *ūdis* ; as, *tripūs*, masc. a tripod, *tripūdis* ; but *līgūpus*, -ūdis, a kind of bird, or the herb hares-foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis* ; as, *Trāpezus, Trapezuntis* ; *Ōpus, Opuntis* ; *Hierlĕbus, -untis*, Jericho.

Ŷ S.

12. Nouns in *vs* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive, they have sometimes *ysis* or *ysis* ; as, *hæc cĕlyis, cĕlyis*, or *-ysis*, a harp ; *Căpyis, Căpyis*, or *-ysis*, the name of a man ; sometimes they have *ŷdis*, or *ŷdos* ; as, *hæc cĕlamŷis, cĕlamŷdis* or *cĕlamŷdos*, a soldier's cloak ; and sometimes *ŷnis*, or *ŷnos* ; as, *Trăchŷis, Trăchŷnis*, or *Trăchŷnos*, the name of a town.

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus* are,

<i>Æs, æris, n. brass, or money.</i>	<i>Laus, laudis, f. praise.</i>
<i>Fraus, fraudis, f. fraud.</i>	<i>Præs, prædis, m. or f. a surety.</i>

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and

have the genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus, Orpheos; Tereus, Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables: thus, *Orphæus, genit. Orphæi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphei*, and that into *Orphæi*.

S with a consonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as,

trabs, trabis, a beam; *scobs, scöbis*, saw-dust; *hiems, hiemis*, winter; *gens, gentis*, a nation; *stips, stîpis*, alms; *pars, partis*, a part; *fors, sortis*, a lot; *mors, -tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

Chalybs, -ybis, steel.

Dens, -tis, a tooth.

Fons, -tis, a well.

Gryps, gryphis, a griffin.

Hydrops, -öpis, the dropsy.

Mërops, -öpis, a wood-pecker.

Mons, -tis, a mountain.

Pons, -tis, a bridge.

Seps, sêpis, a kind of serpent; but,

Sepa, sêpis, a hedge, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masc. or feminine.

Ädeps, adîpis, fatness.

Rüdens, -tis, a cable.

Scrobs, scöbis, a ditch.

Serpens, -tis, a serpent.

Stirps, stirpis, the root of a tree.

Stirps, an offspring, always fem.

Animans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Poly-syllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps, forcîpis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps, -îpis*, a prince or princess; *particeps, -cîpis*, a partaker; so likewise *cælebs, cælibis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *cäput* have *cipîtis*; as, *præceps, præcipîtis*, headlong; *anceps, ancipîtis*, doubtful; *biceps, -cipîtis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucîpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

Frons, frondis, the leaf of a tree.

Glans, glandis, an acorn.

Juglans, -dis, a walnut.

Lens, lendis, a nit.

So, *libripens, libripendis*, m. a weigher; *nefrens, -dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as, *concors, concordis*, agreeing; *discors, disagreeing*; *vîcors*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going; and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eö* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *cuntis*: thus, *iens, euntis*; *quiens, queuntis*; *rëdiens, redeuntis*; *nëquiens, nequeuntis*: but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc.

Exc. 6. *Tiryus*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tiryntis*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely *căput*, *capitis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *sinciput*, *sincipitis*, the forehead; and *occiput*, *itis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as,

vox, *vocis*, the voice: *lux*, *lucis*, light.—So,

Appendix, -icis, an addition; dim. -icula.	Cruz, crucis, a cross.	Merx, -cis, merchandise.
Arx, arcis, a castle.	Fax, -cis, dregs.	Nutrix, -icis, a nurse.
Călox, -ocis, a pinnacle.	Falx, -cis, a scythe.	Nux, nucis, a nut.
Cervix, -icis, the neck.	Fax, -ăcis, a torch.	Pax, -ăcis, peace.
Cicatrix, -icis, a scar.	Filix, -icis, a fern.	Pix, picis, pitch.
Cornix, -icis, a crow.	Lanx, -cis, a plate.	Rădix, -icis, a root.
Coturnix, -icis, a quail.	Lodix, -icis, a fleet.	Sălix, -icis, a willow.
Coxendix, -icis, the hip.	Măretrix, -icis, a courtesan.	Vibix, or -ex, -icis, the mark of a wound.

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thorax*, -ăcis, a breast-plate; *corax*, -ăcis, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *icis*; as, *pollex*, -icis, the thumb.—So the following nouns, also masculine,

Ăpex, the tuft or tassel on the top of a priest's cap, the cap itself, or the top of any thing.	Cămex, a bug.	Podex, the breech.
Artifex, an artist.	Codex, a book.	Pontifex, a chief priest.
Carnifex, an executioner.	Culex, a gnat, a midge.	Pulex, a flea.
Caudex, the trunk of a tree.	Frutex, a shrub.	Rămex, a rupture.
	Index, an informer.	Sorex, a rat.
	Lătex, any liquor.	Vertex, the crown of the head.
	Murex, a shell-fish; purple.	Vortex, a whirlpool.

Vervex, a wedder sheep, has *vervēcis*; *fanifex*, a mower of hay, *fanisicis*: *Rifex*, m. *icis*, a vine-branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

Călix, -icis, a cup.	Oryx, -ycis, a wild goat.
Călyx, -ycis, the bud of a flower.	Phoenix, -icis, a bird so called.
Coccyx, -ygis, vel -ycis, a cuckoo.	Trădux, -ucis, a graft, or off-set of a vine; also fem.
Fornix, -icis, a vault.	

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine.

Fornax, -ācis, a furnace.	Smūlax, -ācis, the herb rope-weed.
Pānax, -ācis, the herb all-beal.	Cārex, -īcis, a sedge.
Clīmax, -ācis, a ladder.	Sūpellex, supellectilis, household-furniture.
Forfex, -īcis, a pair of scissors.	
Hālex, -ēcis, a herring.	

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine ; as,

Calx, -cis, the beel, or the end of any thing, the goal ; but calx, lime, is always fem.	Līmax, -ācis, a snail.
Cortex, -īcis, the bark of a tree.	Ōbex, -īcis, a bolt or bar.
Hystrix, -īcis, a porcupine.	Perdix, -īcis, a partridge.
Imbrex, -īcis, a gutter or roof-tile.	Pūmex, -īcis, a pumice stone.
Lynx, -cis, an ounce, a beast of a very quick sight.	Rūmex, -īcis, sorrel, an herb.
	Sandix, -īcis, a purple colour.
	Sīlex, -īcis, a flint.
	Vārix, -īcis, a swollen vein.

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive :

Āquīlex, -ēgis, a well-maker.	Phālanx, -angis, f. a phalanx.
Conjūnx, or -ux, -ūgis, a husband or wife	Rēmex, -īgis, a rower.
Frux, (not used,) frūgis, f. corn.	Rex, rēgis, a king.
Grexx, grēgis, m. or f. a flock.	Nix, nivis, f. snow.
Lex, lēgis, f. a law.	Nox, noctis, f. night.
	Sēnex, sēnis, (an adj.) old.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and declension, are as various as Latin nouns : thus, *bombyx*, *bombŷcis*, a silk-worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine ; *ōnyx*, masc. or fem. *onŷchis*, a precious stone ; and so *sardōnyx* : *lārynx*, *laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe ; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*, a Phrygian ; *sphinx*, -ngis, a fabulous hag ; *strix*, -īgis, f. a screechowl ; *Styx*, -ŷgis, f. a river in hell ; *Hylax*, -ētis, the name of a dog ; *Bibrax*, *Bibraētis*, the name of a town, &c.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The Dative singular anciently ended also in *e* ; as, *Esuriēte leonī ex ore exculpere prædam*, to pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion, Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, foot sticks to foot. *Virg. Æn. x. 361.* for *esurienti* and *pedi*.

Ex-

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1 The following nouns have the accusative in *im* :

Āmullis, f. a mason's rule.	Cannābis, f. hemp.
Būris, f. the beam of a plough.	Cūcūmis, m. a cucumber.
Gummi, f. gum.	Sītis, f. thirst.
Mēphitis, f. a damp or strong smell.	Tuffis, f. the cough.
Rāvis, f. boarfenest.	Vis, f. strength.
Sināpis, f. mustard.	

To these add proper names, 1. of cities, and other places; as, *Hispālis*, Seville, a city in Spain; *Syr̄tis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Libya;—2. of rivers; as, *Tib̄eris*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome; *Batis*, the Guadalquiver in Spain: So *At̄b̄sis*, *A-r̄aris*, *Albis*, *Liris*, &c.—3. Of gods; as *Anūbis*, *Ap̄is*, *Os̄iris*, *Se-r̄āpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in*; thus, *Syr̄tim*, or *Syr̄tin*, *Tiberim* or *-in*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; as,

Clāvis, f. a key.	Pelvis, f. a basin.	Sēcūris, f. an ax.
Cūtis, f. the skin.	Puppis, f. the stern of a ship.	Sēmentis, f. a sowing.
Febris, f. a fever.	Restis, f. a rope.	Strīgilis, f. a horse-comb.
Nāvis, f. a ship.		Turris, f. a tower.

Thus *navem* or *navim*; *puppem*, or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. GREEK NOUNS form their accusative variously :

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*, as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampados*, *lampadem*, or *lampada*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros*, *Trōis*, *Troem*, and *Troa*, a Trojan; *hēros*, a hero; *Mīnos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a*: *Pan*, the god of shepherds; *ather*, the sky; *delphin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pāna*, *at̄b̄era*, *delphīna*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*, never *ida*, as *Pāris*, *Paridis*, or *Paridos*; *Parim*, or *Parin*, sometimes *Parīdem*, never *Parīda*.—So *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *īda*, but rarely *iem* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elidis* or *Elidos*, *Elīdem* or *Elīda*; seldom *Elim* or *Elin*, a city in Greece. In like manner, feminines in *ys*, *ȳdos*, have *ȳdem*, or *ȳda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative; as *cblāmys*, *ȳdem*, or *ȳda*, not *cblāmyyn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *τ* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as *metāmorphōsis*, *-eos*, or *ios*, *metāmorphōsim* or *-in*, a change: *Tēt̄h̄ys*, *-yos*, or *-yis*; *Tēt̄h̄ym*, or *-yn̄* the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *ea*: as, *Tb̄sc̄eus*, *Tb̄sc̄ea*; *Tȳdeus*, *Tȳdea*.

EXCEPTIONS in the ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as *sēdile*, *sedīli*; *ānimal*, *animāli*; *calcar*, *calcāri*. Except proper names; as *Prænestē*, abl. *Prænestē*, the name of a town; and the following neuters in *or*:

Far, farre, corn.

Nectar, āre, drink of the gods.

Hēpar, -āte, the liver.

Par, pāre, a match, a pair.

Jūbar, āre, a sun-beam.

Sal, sāle, salt.

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*: but *cannābis*, *Bætis*, and *tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre*, or *turri*; but *restis*, a rope; and *cūtis* the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *finis*, *supellex*, *vellis*, *pūgil*, a champion; *mūgil* or *muḡilis*; *fo*, *rus*, *ocēput*: Also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagini*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis*, *classis*, *fers*, *imber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *postis*, *fussis*, *amnis*, and *ignis*; but these have oftener *e*. *Canalis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *astati*, *cani*, *lapidi*, *ovi*, &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives; as, *bipennis*, -*i*, an halbert: *mōlāris*, -*i*, a millstone; *quadrirēmis*, -*i*, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprīlis*, -*i*; *Dēcember*, -*bri*. &c. But *rūdis*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *jūvōnis*, a young man, have only *e*; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *ns*; as,

Adōlescens, a young man.

Princeps, a prince.

Torrens, a brook.

Infans, an infant.

Sēnex, an old man.

Vigil, a watchman.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *ātys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermones*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*, as, *puppēs*, *puppeis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capūta, itinēra*: but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *sedilia, calcāria*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile, sedili, sedilium*; *turris, turre* or *turri, turrium*; *caput, capite, capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas, a male, māre, marium*; *vas, a surety, vādium*; but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas, a state or city, civitatum*, and sometimes *civitatium*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as, *hostis, an enemy, hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens, a nation, gentium*; *urbs, a city, urbium*.

But the following have *um*: *parens, vātes, pānis, jūvenis*, and *cānis*; *parentum, &c.* Horace however, has *parentium*, Od. 3, 4, 21.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the genitive plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Cāro, carnis, f. <i> flesh.</i>	Lis, litis, f. <i>strife.</i>
Cohors, -tis, f. <i>a company.</i>	Mus, mūris, m. <i>a mouse.</i>
Cor, cordis, n. <i>the heart.</i>	Nix, nivis, f. <i>snow.</i>
Cos, cōtis, f. <i>a bone or wheelstone.</i>	Nox, noctis, f. <i>the night.</i>
Doa, dōtis, f. <i>a dowry.</i>	Os, ossis, n. <i>a bone.</i>
Faus, faucis, f. <i>the jaws,</i>	Quiris, -itis, a <i>Roman.</i>
Glis, gliris, m. <i>a rat.</i>	Samnīs, -itis, m. or f. <i>a Samnite.</i>
Iar, Iāris, m. <i>a housebold god.</i>	Ūter, utris, m. <i>a bottle.</i>
Linter, -tris, m. or f. <i>a little boat.</i>	

Thus *Samnitium, Iintrium, litium, &c.* Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*; as, *septunx, seven ounces, septuncium*; *bes, eight ounces, besium*. *Bos, an ox or cow, has bovm,* and in the dative, *bōbus* or *būbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Mācēdo, a Macedonian*; *Ārabs, an Arabian*; *Āthiops, an Ethiopian*; *Mōnōcēros, an unicorn*; *Lynx, a beast so called*: *Tbrax, a Thracian*: *Macedōnum, Arābum, Āthiōpūm, Monocērōtum, Lyncum, Tbrācum*. But those which have *a* or *sis* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *ōn*; as *Epigramma, epigrammātum*, or *epigrammatōn*, an epigram; *metamōrphosis, -ium, or -ōn*.

Obf. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus *māncis, m. souls departed, manium*; *callēs, m.*

m. inhabitants of heaven, *calitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* or *manes*, and *cales*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnalia*, the feasts of Saturn, *Saturnalium* and *Saturnaliorum*. So, *Bacchanalia*, *Compitalia*, *Terminalia*, &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *um*; as *nōcentūm* for *nocentium*: and sometimes, to encrease the number of syllables, a letter is inserted: as, *calituum* for *calitum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncöpe*; and the latter by *Epenthösis*.

EXCEPTIONS in the DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibus*; as *poëma*, a poem, *poëmätis*, rather than *poëmatibus*, from the old nominative *poëmätum* of the second decl.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troäsi* or *Troäsin*, for *Troädibus*, from *Troas*, *Troädidis*, or *Troädos*, a Trojan woman.

EXCEPTIONS in the ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampädem*, or *lampäda*, *lampädes* or *lampädas*. So *Tros*, *Troas*; *beros*, *beros*; *Ætbiops*, *Ætbiopas*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS through all the Cases.

Lampas, a lamp, f. *lampädidis*, or *-ädos*; *-ädi*, *-ädem*, or *-äda*; *-as*; *-äde*: Plur. *-ädes*; *-ädum*; *-ädibus*; *-ädes*, or *-ädas*; *-ädes*; *-adibus*.

Troas, f. *Troädidis*, or *-ädos*; *-i*; *em* or *a*; *as*; *e*:

Pl. *Troades*; *-um*; *ibus*, *si* or *sin*; *es* or *as*; *es*; *ibus*.

Tros, m. *Trois*; *Troi*; *Troem* or *-a*; *Tros*; *Troe*, &c.

Phyllis f. *Phyllidis* or *-dos*, *di*, *dem*, or *da*; *i* or *is*; *de*.

Päris, m. *Paridis* or *-dos*; *di*; *dem*, *Parim* or *in*; *i*; *de*.

Cblämys, f. *Cblamjdis* or *-jdos*, *jdi*, *jdem* or *jda*, *ys*, *jde*, &c.

Cäpys, m. *Capyis*, or *-yas*; *yi*; *ym* or *yn*; *y*; *ye* or *y*.

Mëtämorphösis, f. *-is* or *-eos*, *i*, *im*, or *in*, *i*, *i*. &c.

Orpheus, m. *-eos*, *ei* or *ei*, *ea*, *eu*, abl. *eo* of the second decl.

Dido, f. *Didüs* or *Didönis*, *Dido* or *Didoni*, *Didö*, &c.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

The terminations of the cases are; nom. sing. *us*; gen. *us*; dat. *ui*; acc. *um*; voc. like the nom.; abl. *u*; nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ua*; gen. *uum*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; as,

Fructus, fruit, masc.

Cornu, a horn, neut.

Sing.

Plur.

Sing.

Plur.

N. fructus,

N. fructus.

N. cornu,

N. cornua.

G. fructus,

G. fructuum,

G. cornu,

G. cornuum,

D. fructui,

D. fructibus,

D. cornu,

D. cornibus,

A. fructum,

A. fructus,

A. cornu,

A. cornua,

V. fructus,

V. fructus,

V. cornu,

V. cornua,

A. fructu:

A. fructibus.

A. cornu:

A. cornibus.

In like manner decline,

Aditus, an access.

Haustrus, a draught.

Rictus, a grinning.

Anfractus, a winding.

Ictus, a stroke.

Ritus, a rite, a ceremony.

Auditus, the sense of bearing.

Impetus, an attack.

Risus, laughter. [ny.

[song.

Incessus, a stately gait.

Ructus, a [stching.

Cantus, a singing or

Luctus, grief.

Saltus, a leap, a forest.

Casus, a fall, an accident.

Luxus, luxury, riot.

Senatus, the senate, the

or chance.

Mensus, fear.

supreme council among the Romans.

Caestus, a gauntlet.

Missus, a throw; a turn or beat in races.

Sensus, a sense, feeling, meaning.

Cestus, a marriage-girdle.

Motus, a motion.

Sexus, a sex.

Cætus, an assembly.

Nexus, servitude for debt.

Sinus, a bosom.

Cultus, worship, dress.

Nurus, f. a daughter in-

Singultus, a sob, the

Currus, a chariot.

Nutius, a nod. [law.

Situs, a situation.

Cursus, a race.

Obutius, a look.

Status, a posture.

Decessus, a departure.

Odoratus, the sense of smelling.

Socrus, f. a mother-in-law.

Eventus, an event.

Passus, a pace.

Spiritus, a breathing, spirit.

Exercitus, an army

Principatus, pre-eminence.

Successus, success.

Exitus, an issue.

Processus, a progress.

Sumptus, expence.

Fastus, pride.

Progressus, an advancement.

Tactus, the touch.

Flatus, a blast.

Prospectus, a view.

Tonitru, thunder.

Flētus, weeping.

Proventus, an increase, revenue.

Transitus, a passage.

Fluctus, a wave.

Quæstus, gain.

Tumultus, an uproar.

Fætus, an offspring.

Questus, a complaint.

Venatus, hunting.

Gelu, ice.

Reditus, a return, an

Visus, the sight.

Gemitus, a groan.

income.

Victus, food.

Grædus, a step, a degree.

Vultus, the countenance.

Exc.

Gustus, the taste.

Hæbitus, a habit, the state of mind or body.

Hælitus, breath.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine :

Ācus, a needle.	Ficus, a fig.	Porticus, a gallery.
Ānus, an old woman,	Mānus, the hand.	Spēcus, a den.
Dōmus, a house.	Pērus, a storehouse.	Tribus, a tribe.

Penus and *specus* are sometimes masc. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus*; *unimānus*, having one hand; *centimānus*, &c. adj. *Domus* is but partly of the fourth declension; thus,

Dōmus, a house, fem.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. domus,	Nom. domus,
Gen. domūs, or -mi,	Gen. domorum, or -uum,
Dat. domui, or -mo,	Dat. domibus,
Acc. domum,	Acc. domos, or -us,
Voc. domus,	Voc. domus,
Abl. domo.	Abl. domibus.

Note. *Domūs*, in the genit. signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, or of home; as, *memineris domi*. Terent. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ibus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

Ācus, a needle.	Lācus, a lake.	Spēcus, a den.
Arcus, a bow.	Partus, a birth.	Tribus, a tribe.
Artus, a joint.	Portus, a harbour.	Vēru, a spit.
Gēnu, the knee.		

Portus, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ibus*; as, *portibus* or *portūbus*.

Exc. 3. IESUS, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in the all other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus *fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuam*, *fructus*, *fructue*; *fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructuibus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*; as, *Ejus anuis causā*, for *anūs*. Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u*; as, *Resistere impetu*, for *impetui*, Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usu sibi*, for *usui*, lb. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currūm* for *curruum*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender: as,

		<i>Res, a thing, fem.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Terminations.</i>
<i>Nom. res,</i>		<i>Nom. res,</i>	<i>es, es,</i>
<i>Gen. reï,</i>		<i>Gen. rërum,</i>	<i>ëi, ërum,</i>
<i>Dat. reï,</i>		<i>Dat. rëbus,</i>	<i>ëi, ëbus,</i>
<i>Acc. rem,</i>		<i>Acc. res,</i>	<i>em, es,</i>
<i>Voc. res,</i>		<i>Voc. res,</i>	<i>es, es,</i>
<i>Abl. re ;</i>		<i>Abl. rëbus.</i>	<i>e. ebus.</i>

In like manner decline,

<i>Äcies, the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.</i>	<i>Inglüvies, gluttony.</i>	<i>Scäbies, the scab, or iteb.</i>
<i>Cärics, rottenness.</i>	<i>Mäcies, leanness.</i>	<i>Sëries, an order.</i>
<i>Cæsäries, the hair.</i>	<i>Mätëries, matter.</i>	<i>Spëcies, an appearance.</i>
<i>Fäcies, the face.</i>	<i>Pernïcies, destruction.</i>	<i>Süperficiës, the surface.</i>
<i>Gläcies, ice.</i>	<i>Pröhlüvies, a looseness.</i>	<i>Tempëries, temperateness.</i>
	<i>Räbies, madness.</i>	
	<i>Sänies, gore.</i>	

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *mëridies*, the mid day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*; as *fide*, for *fidëi*, Ov. M. 8, 341, & 207. 6, 506. *die*, for *diëi*, Virg. G. 1.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three, *fides*, faith; *speres*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four, *äbies*, a fir-tree; *äries*, a ram; *päries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable, either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes:

E

1. *Masculine*

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural:*

<i>Ævernus</i> , a lake in Campania, bell.	<i>Mænäulus</i> , a bill in Arcadia.
<i>Dindýmus</i> , a lill in Pbrýgia.	<i>Pangæus</i> , a promontory in Thrace.
<i>Isnârus</i> , a bill in Thrace.	<i>Tænârus</i> , a promontory in Laconia.
<i>Massicus</i> , a bill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.	<i>Tartârus</i> , bell.
	<i>Tâygêtus</i> , a bill in Laconia.

Thus, *Averna*, *Avernorum*; *Dindyma*, -orum, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *jûga* or *cacumina*, or the like, in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter:*

Jocus, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural:*

Carbâsus, a sail, pl. *carbûsa*; *Pergâmus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural:*

Cælum, pl. *cæli*, heaven; *Ëlyfium*, pl. *Elyfi*, the Elysiac fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter:*

Rastrum, a rake, pl. *rastri* and *rastra*; *frënum*, a bridle, pl. *freni* and *frena*.

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural:*

Dëlicium, a delight, pl. *deliciæ*; *ëpulum*, a banquet, pl. *ëpulae*; *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ* and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*; as, *vas*, *vâsis*, a vessel, plur. *vâsa*, *vasorum*; *jûgerum*, *jugëri*, an acre; plur. *jûgera*, *jûgerum*, *jugeribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jugëris* and *jugëre* in the singular, from the obsolete *jûgus*, or *juger*.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable; as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nëfas*, wrong; *sinâpi*, mustard; *mâne*, the morning; as *clârum mâne*, Perf. 3. 1. *A mane ad vesperam*, Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c.; *cëpe*, an onion; *gau-säpe*,

sāpe, a rough coat, &c.; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun: as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination, *Perf.* 5, 53. *Istud cras*, for *iste crastinus dies*, that to-morrow, *Mart.* 5, 59. *O magnum Græcorum*, the *Omēga*, or the large O of the Greeks; *Infidus est compositum ex in et fidus*; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin, as *Job Elisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *mōnoptōta*: as, *inquier*, want of rest, in the nominative singular; *diciis*, and *nauci*, in the genit. sing.; thus, *diciis gratiā*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *inficias*, and *incita* or *incitas*, in the acc. plur.; thus *ire inficias*, to deny; *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to a strait or non-plus; *ingrātis*, in the abl. plur. in spite of one; and these ablatives singular, *noctu*, in the night-time; *diu*, *interdiu*, in the day time; *promptu*, in readiness; *nātu*, by birth; *injussu*, without command or leave: *ergō*, for the sake, as, *ergo ihus*, *Virg. A.* 6, 670. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story; *Compēde*, m. with a fetter; *Casse*, m. with a net; Plur. *Ambāges*, -ibus; *compedes*, -ibus; *casses*, -ium.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and are therefore called *diptōta*; as, *nēcesse*, or -um, necessity; *vōlūpe* or *volup*, pleasure; *instar*, likeness, bigness; *astu*, a town; *bir*, the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. sing.; *vesper*, m. abl. *vespēre* or *vespēri*, the evening; *siremps*, the same, all alike, abl. *sirempse*; *spontis*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte* in the ablative, of its own accord: so *impētis*, m. and *impēte*, force; *vepre*, m. a briar, a thorn, and *vepre*; *verbēris*, n. genit. and *verbēre*, abl. a stripe; in the plural entire; *vepres*, -um, &c. *verbēra*, *verberum*, *verberibus*, &c. *rēpētundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *suppētis*, nom. pl. *suppētias*, in the acc. help; *infēriā*, *inferias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta*; as, *prēci*, *precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used: in the plural it is entire, *preces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c. *Fēmīnis*, gen. from the obsolete *femen*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing.; in the

nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*. *Dica*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas*; *tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantidem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative; as, *biems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mētus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neuter, *mēlos*, a song; *mēle*, songs; *ēpos*, a heroic poem; *cācoēibes*, an evil custom; *cēte* whales; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Theffaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.: also *grātes*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetrap-tōta*; *vīcis*, f. of the place or stead of another; *pēcūdis*, f. of a beast; *sordis*, f. of filth: *ditiōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *ōpis*, f. of help. Of these *pēcūdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire: *ditiōnis* wants it altogether: *vīcis* is not used in the genitive plural; *ōpis* in the plural, generally signifies wealth, or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentaptōta*: thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genitive plural. *Cbaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genit. sing. and the plural entirely; dat. sing. *cbao*. So *sātiās*, i. e. *satietas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Situs*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth decl. wants the gen. and perhaps the dat. sing. also. the gen. dat. and abl. plur.

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c. as, *justitia*, justice; *ambītus*, ambition; *astus*, cunning; *mūsica*, music; *āpium*, parsley; *argentum*, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *trī-ticum*, wheat; *bordeum*, barley; *āvēna*, oats; *jūventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural :

Aër, aëris, *the air.*
 Æther, -ëris, *the sky.*
 Fumus, -i, *dung.*
 Hespërus, -i, *the evening star.*
 Lîmus, -i, *slime.*
 Mëridies, -iëi, *mid-day.*
 Mundus, *a woman's ornaments.*
 Muscus, -i, *moss.*

Nëmo, -ïnis, *no body.*
 Pënus, -i, or ùs, *all manner of provisions.*
 Pontus, -i, *the sea.*
 Pulvis, -ëris, *dust.*
 Sanguis, -ïnis, *blood.*
 Sëpor, öris, *sleep.*
 Viçus, -i, *bird-lime.*

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural :

Argilla, -æ, *pottery.*
 Fâma, -æ, *fame.*
 Hümus, -i, *the ground.*
 Lues, -is, *a plague.*
 Plebs, plëbis, *the common people.*
 Pübes, -is, *the youth.*
 Quies, -ëtis, *rest.*

Sälus, -ütis, *safety.*
 Sitis, -is, *thirst.*
 Sëpëlix, -ëtis, *household-furniture.*
 Tâbes, -is, *a consumption.*
 Tellus, -üris, *the earth.*
 Vespëra, -æ, *the evening.*

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural :

Album, -i, *a list of names.*
 Dilüculum, -i, *the dawning of day.*
 Èbur, -öris, *ivory.*
 Gëlu, ind. *frost.*
 Hilum, -i, *the black speck of a bean, a trifle.*
 Justitium, -i, *a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.*
 Lëthum, *death.*

Lütum, -i, *clay.*
 Nihil, nihilum, or nil, *nothing.*
 Pëlagus, -i; *the sea.*
 Pënum, -i, and pënus, -öris; *all kind of provisions.*
 Sal, sälis, *salt.*
 Sënium, -ii, *old age.*
 Ver, vëris, *the spring.*
 Virus, -i, *poison.*

5. Many nouns want the singular ; as the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities ; thus,

Äpollinäres, -ium, *games in honour of Apollo.*
 Bacchänälia, -ium, & -iorum, *the feasts of Bacchus.* [torals.
 Bücölica, -orum, *a book of pas-*

ölympia, -orum, *the Olympic games.*
 Syracüsa, -arum, *Syracuse.*
 Hierosölöyma, -orum, *Jerusalem ;*
 or Hierosölöyma, -æ, *of the first declension.*

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

Cancelli, *lattices, or windows, made with cross bars like a net ; a rail or balustrade round any place ; bounds or limits.*
 Cäni, *gray hairs.*
 Cälles, -ium, *a hunter's net.*

Cëlëres, -um, *the light horse.*
 Cödïcilli, *writings.*
 Druïdes, -um, *the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls.*
 Fasces, -ium, *a bundle of rods, carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.*

- Fasti, -orum, or fastus, -uum, *calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.*
- Fines, -ium, *the borders of a country, or a country.*
- Fōri, *the gang-ways of a ship, seats in the Circus, or the cells of a beehive.*
- Furfures, -um, *scales in the head.*
- Iafēri, *the gods below.*
- Lēmūres, -um, *bobgoblins, or spirits in the dark.*
- Lībēri, *children.*
- Majōres, -um, *ancestors.*
- Minōres, -um, *successors.*
- Nātāles, -ium, *parentage.*
- Postēri, *posterity.*
- Prōcēres, -um, *the nobles.*
- Pūgillāres, -ium, *writing-tables.*
- Sentes, -ium, *thorns.*
- Sūpēri, *the gods above.*
- Vepres, -ium, *briars.*

7. The following feminines want the singular number :

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| Alpes, -ium, <i>the Alps.</i> | Fēriæ, <i>holidays.</i> | Offūciæ, <i>cheats.</i> |
| Angustię, <i>difficulties.</i> | Gādes, -ium, <i>Cádiz.</i> | Ōpēræ, <i>workmen.</i> |
| Āpinæ, <i>gewgaws.</i> | Gerræ, <i>trifles.</i> | Pāriētina, <i>ruinous walls.</i> |
| Argūtia, <i>quirks, wit-ticisms.</i> | Hyādes, -um, <i>the seven stars.</i> | Partes, -ium, <i>a party.</i> |
| Bīgæ, <i>a chariot drawn by two horses.</i> | Indūciæ, <i>a truce.</i> | Phālēræ, <i>trappings.</i> |
| Trīgæ, — <i>by three.</i> | Indūviæ, <i>cloaths to put on.</i> | Plāgæ, <i>nets.</i> |
| Quadrīgæ, — <i>by four.</i> | Ineptiæ, <i>illy stories.</i> | Pleiādes, -um, <i>the seven stars. (ments.)</i> |
| Braccæ, <i>breeches.</i> | Insidiæ, <i>snares.</i> | Præstigiæ, <i>enchant-</i> |
| Branchiæ, <i>the gills of a fish.</i> | Kālendæ, Nōnæ, I-dus, -uum, <i>names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.</i> | Primitiæ, <i>first fruits.</i> |
| Charites, um, <i>the three graces.</i> | Lāpicidinæ, <i>stone-quarries.</i> | Quisquiliæ, <i>swEEPINGS.</i> |
| Cūnæ, <i>a cradle.</i> | Litēræ, <i>an epistle.</i> | Rēliquiæ, <i>a remainder.</i> |
| Dēcimæ, <i>tibbes.</i> | Lactes, -ium, <i>the small guts.</i> | Sālebræ, <i>rugged places.</i> |
| Dīræ, <i>imprecations, the Furies.</i> | Mānūbiæ, <i>spoils taken in war.</i> | Sālinæ, <i>salt-pits.</i> |
| Dryādes, um, <i>the nymphs of the woods.</i> | Minæ, <i>threats.</i> | Scālæ, <i>a ladder.</i> |
| Excūbiæ, <i>watches.</i> | Minūtiæ, <i>little niceties.</i> | Scātebræ, <i>a spring.</i> |
| Exēquię, <i>funerals.</i> | Nūgæ, <i>trifles.</i> | Scōpæ, <i>a besom.</i> |
| Exūviæ, <i>spoils. [ings.]</i> | Nundinæ, <i>a market.</i> | Tēnebræ, <i>darkness.</i> |
| Fācētia, <i>pleasant say-</i> | Nuptiæ, <i>a marriage.</i> | Thermæ, <i>hot-baths.</i> |
| Fācultates, -ium, <i>one's goods and chattels.</i> | | Thermōpŷlæ, <i>straits of mount Oeta.</i> |

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular :

- | | |
|---|---|
| Acta, <i>public acts or records.</i> | Castra, <i>a camp.</i> |
| Æstiva, sc. castra, <i>summer quarters.</i> | Chāristia, -orum, <i>a peace-feast.</i> |
| Arma, <i>arms.</i> | Cibāria, <i>viſtuals.</i> |
| Bellāria, -orum, <i>sweet meats.</i> | Cōmītia, <i>an assembly of the people, to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials.</i> |
| Bona, <i>goods.</i> | |
| Brēvia, -ium, <i>skilvers.</i> | |

<i>Cœpundiâ, childrens' baubles.</i>	<i>Päräphœrna, all things which the wife brings to her husband except her dowry.</i>
<i>Cünäbüla, a cradle, an origin.</i>	<i>Pärentälia, -ium, solemnities at the funeral of parents.</i>
<i>Dictëria, scoffs, witticisms.</i>	<i>Phältra, love-potions.</i>
<i>Extä, the entrails.</i>	<i>Præcordia, the bowels.</i>
<i>Februa, orum, purifying sacrifices.</i>	<i>Principia, the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.</i>
<i>Flabra, blasts of wind.</i>	<i>Pÿthia, games in honour of Apollo.</i>
<i>Fræga, strawberries.</i>	<i>Rosträ, a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.</i>
<i>Hÿberna, sc. castra, winter quarters.</i>	<i>Scrÿta, old cloths.</i>
<i>Ilia, -ium, the entrails.</i>	<i>Sponsälia, -ium, espousals.</i>
<i>Incünäbüla, a cradle.</i>	<i>Stätiva, sc. castra, a standing camp.</i>
<i>Insectä, insects.</i>	<i>Sudvëtaurilia, -ium, a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.</i>
<i>Iusta, funeral rites.</i>	<i>Täläria, -ium, winged shoes.</i>
<i>Lämenta, lamentations.</i>	<i>Tesqua, rough places.</i>
<i>Lautia, provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.</i>	<i>Transtra, the seats where the rowers sit in ships.</i>
<i>Luftra, dens of wild beasts.</i>	<i>Ütensilia, -ium, utensils:</i>
<i>Mägälia, -ium, cottages.</i>	
<i>Mœnia, -ium, the walls of a city.</i>	
<i>Münia, -iorum, offices.</i>	
<i>Orgia, the sacred rites of Bacchus.</i>	
<i>Övilia, -ium, an inclosure, into which the people went to give their votes.</i>	
<i>Pälëäria, -ium, the dew-lap of a beast.</i>	

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum*, a castle; *litera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbor* and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri*, and *laurûs*, a laurel tree, *sæquester -tri*, or *-tris*, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic or-hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *mätëria, æ*, or *materies, -iæ*, matter; *plebs, -is*, the common people, or *plebes, -is, -ei*, or contracted *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tönitrus, -ûs* masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender, as, *pënus, -i*, and *-ûs*, m. or f. or *penus, -ëris*, neut. all kind of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *æther, æris*, masc. and *ætra, -æ*, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris, -is*, or *idîs*, a tyger: to which may be added, nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidëna, -æ*; or *Fidëna, -arum*, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda, -æ*; and *mendum, -i*, a fault; *casûs, -idîs*; and *casûda, -dæ*, a helmet.—So,

- Ācīnus, & -um, a *grape-stone*.
 Alvear, & -e, & -ium, a *bee-bive*.
 Āmārācus, & -um, *sweet marjoram*.
 Ancile, & -ium, an *oval shield*.
 Angūportus, -ūs, & -i; & -um, a *narrow lane*.
 Aphractus, & -um, an *open ship*.
 Aplustre, & -um, the *flag, colours*.
 Bācūlus, & -um, a *staff*.
 Balteus, & -um, a *belt*.
 Bātillus, & -um, a *fire-shovel*.
 Cāpūlus, & -um, a *bilt*.
 Cāpus, & -o, a *capon*.
 Cēpa, & -e, *indéc. an onion*.
 Elýpeus, & -um, a *shield*.
 Collūvies, & -io, *silt, dirt*.
 Compāges, & -go, a *joining*.
 Conger, & -grus, a *large eel*.
 Crōcus, & -um, *saffron*.
 Cūbitus, & -um, a *cubit*.
 Dilūvium, & -es, a *deluge*.
 Ēlēphantus, & Ēlephas, -antis, an *elephant*.
 Ēlēgus, & -ēia, an *elegy*.
 Ēlsēda, & -um, a *chariot*.
 Ēventus, & -um, an *event*.
 Fulgetra, & -um, *lightning*.
 Gālērus, & -um, a *bat*.
 Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ēris, or ĉri, a *bunch, a swelling*.
 Glūtinum, & -en, *glue*.
 Hebdōmas, & -āda, a *week*.
 Intrita & -um, *fine mortar, minced meat*.
 Librārium, & -a, a *book-case*.
 Mācēria, & -ies, iēi, a *wall*.
 Milliāre, & -ium, a *mile*.
 Mōnītum, & -us, -ūs, an *admonition*.
 Muria, & -es, -iēi, *brine or pickle*.
 Nāsus, & -um, the *nose*.
 Obsidio, & -um, a *siege*.
 Oestrus, & -um, a *gad bee*.
 Ostrea, & -um, an *oyster*.
 Peplus, & -um, a *veil, a robe*.
 Pistrina, & -um, a *bake-house*.
 Prætextus, -ūs, & -um, -i, a *pretent*.
 Rāpa, & -um, a *turnip*.
 Rūma, & -men, the *udder*.
 Rufus, & -um, a *brush*.
 Seps, & sēpes, f. an *hedge*.
 Segmen, & -mentum, a *piece or paring*.
 Sibilus, & -um, a *hissing*.
 Sinus, & -um, a *milk pail*.
 Spurcitia, & -ies, -iei, *nausea*.
 Strāmen, & -tum, *straw*.
 Suffimen, & -tum, a *perfume*.
 Tignus, & -um, a *plank*.
 Tōral, & -āle, a *bed-covering*.
 Torcūlar, & -are, a *wine press*.
 Viscus, & -um, *bird-lime*.
 Vēternus, & -um, a *lethargy*.

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant: thus *vāsa, -orum*, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas*: but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective noun*; as, *pōpūlus*, a people; *exercitus* an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic noun*; as, *Priāmidēs*, the son of Priāmus; *Æēias*, the daughter

daughter of *Æetes*; *Nērīne*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are generally used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æacides*, the son, grandson, great grandson, or one of the posterity of *Æacus*; *Rōmūlīdæ*, the Romans, from their first king *Romulus*.

Patronymic names of men end in *des*; of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as *Priamides*, *-dæ*, &c. pl. *-dæ*, *darum*, &c.; *Nērīne*, *-es*: *Tyndāris*, *-īdis* or *-īdos*; *Æētiās*, *-ādīs*, &c.

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun; as, *Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troās*, *-ādīs*, a woman born at Troy. *Sicūlus*, *i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicēlis*, *-īdis*, a Sicilian woman: so, *Mācēdo*, *-ōnis*; *Arpīnas*, *-ātīs*, a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood, as, *Romānus*, *Albēniēnsis*, &c.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract*; as, *justitia*, justice; *bōnitas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness: from *justus*, just; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concrete*; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive*; as, *libellus*, a little book; *chartūla*, a little paper; *opusculum*, a little work; *corculum*, a little heart; *rēticulum*, a small net; *scābellum*, a small form; *lāpillus*, a little stone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *pāgella*, a little

little page: from *liber, charta, opus, cor, rete, scamnum, lapis, culter, pagina*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive; as, from *puer, puerulus, puellus, puellulus*; from *cista, cistula, cistella, cistellula*; from *homo, homuncio, homunculus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus, la, lum*; and are generally of the same gender with their primitives. When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *Amplificative*, and ends in *o*: as, *capito, -anis*, having a large head: So, *naso, labeo, bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal* noun; as, *amor*, love; *doctrina*, learning: from *amo*, and *doceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io, or, us*, and *ura*; as, *lectio*, a lesson: *amator*, a lover; *luctus*, grief, *creatura*, a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality; as, *hard, soft*.

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

An adjective may be thus distinguished from a substantive: If the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make sense; but if it be joined to a substantive, it will make nonsense: thus we can say, "a good thing;" but we cannot say, "a book thing."

Adjectives in English admit of no variation, except that of the degrees of comparison.

LATIN ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor cases; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension.

acer, <i>sharp.</i>	Cēlēber, <i>famous.</i>	Pēdeſter, <i>on foot.</i>
ālācer, <i>cheerful.</i>	Cēler, <i>swift.</i> [<i>horſe.</i>	Sālūber, <i>wholesome.</i>
Campeſter, <i>belonging to a plain.</i>	Ēqueſter, <i>belonging to a</i>	Sylveſter, <i>woody.</i>
	Pālūſter, <i>marshy.</i>	Völūcer, <i>swift.</i>

ADJECTIVES of the FIRST and SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um*; as, *bōnus*, for the masc. *bona*, for the fem. *bonum*, for the neut. good; thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. bōn-us,	-a,	-um,	N. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
G. bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	G. bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
D. bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	D. bon-is,	-is,	-is,
A. bon-um,	-am,	-um,	A. bon-os,	-as,	-a,
V. bon-e,	-ā,	-um,	V. boni,	-æ,	-a,
A. bon-o,	-ā,	-o;	A. bon-is,	-is,	-is.

In like manner decline,

ācerbus, <i>unripe, bitter.</i>	Arctus, <i>frail.</i>	Cæcus, <i>blind.</i>
ācidus, <i>sour, tart.</i>	Arduus, <i>lofty.</i>	Callidus, <i>sunning.</i>
ācūtus, <i>sharp.</i>	Argūtus, <i>quick, sprill.</i>	Calvus, <i>bald.</i>
ādulkērīnus, <i>counterfeit.</i>	Aſſus, <i>roasted, bot,</i>	Cāmūrus, <i>crooked.</i>
āgrōtus, <i>sick.</i>	<i>pure,</i>	Candīdus, <i>fair, sincere.</i>
āemūlus, <i>vying with.</i>	Aſtūtus, <i>cunning.</i>	Cānus, <i>hoary.</i>
āequus, <i>equal, juſt.</i>	āvārus, <i>covetous.</i>	Cārus, <i>dear.</i>
āhēnus, <i>of braſs.</i>	āvidus, <i>greedy.</i>	Cāſſus, <i>void.</i>
albus, <i>white.</i>	Auguſtus, <i>venerable,</i>	Caſtus, <i>chaſte.</i>
altus, <i>high.</i>	Auſtērus, <i>barſh, rough.</i>	Cautus, <i>wary.</i>
āmārus, <i>bitter.</i>	Balbus, <i>ſtammering.</i>	Cāvus, <i>hollow.</i>
āmēnus, <i>pleaſant.</i>	Barbārus, <i>savage.</i>	Celſus, <i>high, lofty.</i>
āmbīguus, <i>doubtful.</i>	Bardus, <i>dull, ſlow.</i>	Cernuus, <i>flooping.</i>
āmīcus, <i>friendly.</i>	Beātus, <i>bleſſed.</i>	Certus, <i>certain, ſure.</i>
āmplus, <i>large.</i>	Bellus, <i>pretty.</i>	Clārus, <i>famous.</i>
ānnuus, <i>yearly.</i>	Bēnīgnus, <i>kind.</i>	Claudus, <i>lame.</i>
ānguſtus, <i>narrow.</i>	Bīmus, <i>two years old.</i>	Cœrūlus, or -ēus, a- <i>zure, ſky-coloured.</i>
āntīquus, <i>ancient.</i>	Blāſus, <i>liſping.</i>	Commōdus, <i>convenient.</i>
āprīcus, <i>ſunny.</i>	Blandus, <i>flattering.</i>	Concīnūus, <i>fine, neat.</i>
āptus, <i>fit.</i>	Brūtus, <i>brutiſh, ſenſe- leſs.</i>	Cōruſcus, <i>glittering.</i>
ārcānus, <i>ſecret.</i>	Cādācus, <i>fading.</i>	Crāſſus, <i>thick.</i>

Crēpērus,

80 ADJECTIVES of the first and second Declension.

Crēpērus, *doubtful.*
 Crīpus, *curled.*
 Crūdus, *raw.*
 Cunctus, *all.*
 Curtus, *short.*
 Curvus, *crooked.*
 Cynicus, *churlish.*
 Dædālus, *poet. curious-ly made.*
 Dēcorus, *graceful.*
 Densus, *thick.*
 Dignus, *worthy.*
 Dirus, *direful.*
 Disertus, *eloquent.*
 Diūturnus, *lasting.*
 Doctus, *learned.*
 Dūbius, *doubtful.*
 Dūrus, *hard.*
 Ebrius, *drunk.*
 Effætus, *past having young.*
 Ēgēnus, *poor.*
 Egrēgius, *remarkable.*
 Ēlixus, *boiled.*
 Exiguus, *small.*
 Eximius, *excellent.*
 Exōticus, *from a foreign country.*
 Externus, *outward.*
 Fācētus, *witty.*
 Fācundus, *eloquent.*
 Falsus, *false, lying.*
 Fāmēlicus, *famished.*
 Fātuus, *foolish.*
 Fautus, *lucky.*
 Fērus, *wild, savage.*
 Fessus, *weary.*
 Festinus, *hastening.*
 Festus, *festival.*
 Fidus, *faithful.*
 Finītimus, *neighbouring.*
 Firmus, *firm, steady.*
 Flaccus, *slap eared.*
 Flāvus, *yellow.*
 Fædus, *ugly.*
 Fætus, *big with young.*
 Foruōsus, *fair.*

Frētus, *trusting.*
 Frivōlus, *trifling.*
 Fulvus, *yellow.*
 Furvus, *swartthy.*
 Fuscus, *brown.*
 Garrūlus, *prattling.*
 Gēlidus, *cold as ice.*
 Gēmīnus, *double.*
 Germānus, *of the same stock, real.*
 Gibbus, *convex.*
 Gilvus, *flax-coloured.*
 Glancus, *grey.*
 Gnārus, *skilful.*
 Gnāvus, *active.*
 Grātus, *thankful.*
 Hirsūtus, *hirtus, rough.*
 Hispidus, *rugged.*
 Hōnestus, *honourable, honest.*
 Hornus, *of this year.*
 Hūmānus, *human, be- longing to a man: humane, polite.*
 Hūmidus, *moist.*
 Idōneus, *fit.*
 Jejūnus, *fasting.*
 Ignārus, *ignorant.*
 Ignāvus, *slothful.*
 Imprōbus, *wicked.*
 Incestus, *uncaste.*
 Inclītus, *renowned.*
 Indigus, *needy.*
 Industrius, *diligent.*
 Ineptus, *unfit.*
 Infidus, *unfaithful.*
 Ingēnus, *free-born.*
 Inimicus, *unfriendly.*
 Inīquus, *uneven, unjust.*
 Intentus, *intense, strait.*
 Invidus, *envious.*
 Invītus, *unwilling.*
 Irācundus, *passionate.*
 Irātus, *angry.*
 Irrītus, *fruitless, vain.*
 Jūcundus, *pleasant.*
 Lætus, *joyful.*
 Lævus, *on the left hand.*

Largus, *large.*
 Lascivus, *wanton.*
 Lassus, *weary.*
 Lātus, *broad.*
 Laxus, *loose, slack.*
 Lentus, *slow, pliant.*
 Lēpidus, *pretty, witty.*
 Limpidus, *clear, pure.*
 Limus, *squinting.*
 Lippus, *blear-eyed.*
 Longinquus, *far off.*
 Longus, *long.*
 Lubricus, *slippery.*
 Lūcidus, *bright.*
 Lūridus, *pale, ghastly.*
 Luscus, *blind of one eye.*
 Mācilentus, *lean.*
 Mālignus, *spiteful.*
 Mancus, *maimed, lame.*
 Mānifestus, *evident.*
 Marcidus, *rotten.*
 Mēdius, *mid or middle.*
 Mendicus, *beggar-like.*
 Menstruus, *monthly.*
 Mērācus, *without mixture,*
 Mērus, *pure.*
 Mīrus, *wonderful.*
 Mōdestus, *modest.*
 Mōestus, *sad.*
 Mōlestus, *troublesome.*
 Mōrōsus, *furly.*
 Mōrus, *foolish.*
 Mūcidus, *musty.*
 Mundus, *neat.*
 Mūtilus, *maimed, with- out horns.*
 Mūtus, *dumb.*
 Mūtuum, *mutual, lent or borrowed.*
 Nīmius, *too much.*
 Noxius, *hurtful.*
 Nūdus, *naked.*
 Nuntius, *bringing news.*
 ōbēsus, *fat, dull.*
 Obliquus, *crooked.*
 Obscēnus, *obscene, omi- nous.*

Obscūrus,

Obscūrus, <i>dark, mean.</i>	Prōfundus, <i>deep.</i>	Sentus, <i>rough.</i>
Obsolētus, <i>old, out of use</i>	Prōmiscuus, <i>confused.</i>	Sērēnus, <i>clear.</i>
Obstīpus, <i>stiff, wry.</i>	Promptus, <i>ready.</i>	Sērius, <i>earnest.</i>
Obtūsus, <i>blunt.</i>	Prōnus, <i>with the face downward.</i>	Sērus, <i>late.</i>
ōdiōsus, <i>bateful.</i>	Prōpērus, <i>hasty.</i>	Sēvērus, <i>severe, harsh.</i>
ōpācus, <i>dark, shady.</i>	Prōpinquus, <i>near.</i>	Siccus, <i>dry.</i>
ōpīmus, <i>rich, fat.</i>	Proprius, <i>proper.</i>	Sinus, <i>flat-nosed.</i>
ōpipārus, <i>costly, dainty.</i>	Prōtervus, <i>saucy.</i>	Sincērus, <i>sincere, pure.</i>
Opportūnus, <i>seasonable.</i>	Publicus, <i>public.</i>	Sītus, <i>situate, placed.</i>
ōpūlentus, <i>ens, rich.</i>	Pūdicus, <i>chaste.</i>	Sobrius, <i>sober, temperate.</i>
Orbus, <i>deserted.</i>	Pullus, <i>blackish.</i>	Sōcius, <i>in alliance, a companion.</i>
ōtiōsus, <i>at leisure.</i>	Pūrus, <i>pure, clean.</i>	Sōlidus, <i>solid.</i>
Pætus, <i>pink-eyed.</i>	Pūtus, <i>without mixture.</i>	Sordīdus, <i>dirty.</i>
Pallīdus, <i>pale.</i>	Quantus, <i>how great.</i>	Spīnosus, <i>prickly.</i>
Parcus, <i>sparing.</i>	Quadrīmus, <i>four year old.</i>	Spīssus, <i>thick.</i>
Patrimus, <i>having father and</i>	Quōtidīānus, <i>daily.</i>	Splendīdus, <i>bright.</i>
Matrimus, <i>mother alive.</i>	Rābīdus, <i>mad.</i>	Spūrius, <i>base-born, not genuine.</i>
Pātūlus, <i>wide, spreading.</i>	Rācidus, <i>rank, stale.</i>	Squālidus, <i>naughty.</i>
Paulus, <i>little.</i>	Rārus, <i>rare, thin.</i>	Stōlidus, <i>foolish.</i>
Pauci, <i>-cæ, cæ, few.</i>	Raucus, <i>hoarse.</i>	Strēnuus, <i>active, stout.</i>
Pērītus, <i>skillful.</i>	Rectus, <i>right, straight.</i>	Strīgōsus, <i>lean, lank.</i>
Perfidus, <i>treacherous.</i>	Reus, <i>impeached.</i>	Stultus, <i>foolish.</i>
Perpētus, <i>continual.</i>	Rīgīdus, <i>cold, stiff, severe.</i>	Stūpidus, <i>stupid, dull.</i>
Perīpicuus, <i>evident.</i>	Rīgūus, <i>moist, well watered.</i>	Sūbitus, <i>sudden.</i>
Pius, <i>pious.</i>	Rōbustus, <i>strong.</i>	Subscēivus, <i>cut off, or taken from other business.</i>
Plānus, <i>plain.</i>	Roscīdus, <i>dewy.</i>	Sūdus, <i>fair, without clouds.</i>
Plēnus, <i>full.</i>	Rōtundus, <i>round.</i>	Sūperbus, <i>proud.</i>
Plērīque, <i>-æque, -aque, the most part: sing. fem. plerāque.</i>	Rūbīcundus, <i>blushing.</i>	Sūpīnus, <i>lying on the back.</i>
Posticus, <i>on the back part of a house.</i>	Rūfus, <i>reddish.</i>	Surdus, <i>deaf.</i>
Præditus, <i>endued with.</i>	Ruffus, <i>of a carnation colour.</i>	Tācītus, <i>silent.</i>
Prāvus, <i>wicked.</i>	Rūtilus, <i>fiery, red.</i>	Tantus, <i>so great.</i>
Præcārius, <i>at another's pleasure.</i>	Sævus, <i>cruel.</i>	Tardus, <i>slow.</i>
Priscus, <i>old, out of use.</i>	Sævus, <i>knowing.</i>	Tēmērārius, <i>rash.</i>
Pristīnus, <i>ancient.</i>	Sāllus, <i>salted, smart.</i>	Tempēstivus, <i>seasonable.</i>
Prīvātus, <i>private, retired.</i>	Salvus, <i>safe.</i>	Tēmulentus, <i>drunken.</i>
Prīvus, <i>single, peculiar.</i>	Sanctus, <i>holy.</i>	Tēpidus, <i>lukewarm.</i>
Prōbus, <i>good, honest.</i>	Sānus, <i>sound.</i>	Tīmīdus, <i>fearful.</i>
Prōcērus, <i>high, tall.</i>	Saucius, <i>wounded.</i>	Torvus, <i>stern.</i>
Prōfanus, <i>profane, unboly.</i>	Scævus, <i>left.</i>	Tranquīllus, <i>calm.</i>
	Scambus, <i>bow-legged.</i>	Trēpidus, <i>trembling for fear.</i>
	Scaurus, <i>club-footed.</i>	Trūcūlentus,
	Sēcūrus, <i>secure, out of danger.</i>	
	Sēdūlus, <i>careful.</i>	

62 ADJECTIVES of the First and Second Declension.

Truculentus, <i>cruel.</i>	Vacuus, <i>empty, void.</i>	Verbosus, <i>talkative.</i>
Truncus, <i>maimed, wanting.</i>	Vagus, <i>wandering.</i>	Verecundus, <i>bashful.</i>
Tumidus, <i>swollen.</i>	Valgus, <i>bow-legged.</i>	Vernaculus, <i>born in one's house.</i>
Turbidus, <i>muddy.</i>	Validus, <i>strong.</i>	Verus, <i>true.</i>
Tutus, <i>safe.</i>	Vanus, <i>vain, empty.</i>	Vescus, <i>fit for eating.</i>
Udus, <i>wet.</i>	Varius, <i>various, different.</i>	Vicinus, <i>neighbouring.</i>
Uncus, <i>crooked.</i>	Varus, <i>bandy-legged.</i>	Viduus, <i>deprived.</i>
Unicus, <i>only.</i>	Vastus, <i>huge.</i>	Viētus, <i>withered.</i>
Urbanus, <i>courteous.</i>	Vegētus, <i>vigorous.</i>	Vividus, <i>lively.</i>
Vacivus, <i>at leisure.</i>	Venustus, <i>comely.</i>	Vivus, <i>alive.</i>

Tēner, tenēra, tenērūm, *tender.*

N. tē-er, -ēra, -ērūm,	N. ten-ēri, -ēræ, -ēra,
G. ten-ēri, -ēræ, -ēri,	G. ten-erorum, -erorum, -erorum,
D. ten-ero, -eræ, -ero,	D. ten-eris, -eris, -eris,
A. ten-erum, -eram, -erum,	A. ten-eros, -eras, -era,
V. ten-er, -era, -erum,	V. ten-eri, -eræ, -era,
A. ten-ero, -erā, -ero.	A. ten-eris, -eris, -eris.

In like manner decline,

Asper, <i>rough.</i>	Lacer, <i>torn.</i>	Miser, <i>wretched.</i>
Ceter, (<i>hardly used</i>) the rest.	Liber, <i>free.</i>	Prosper, <i>prosperous.</i>
Gibber, <i>crook-backed.</i>		

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *laniger*, bearing wool: *opifer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise, *satur*, *satura*, *saturum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as *ater*, *atra*, *atrum*, black: gen. *atri*, *atræ*, *atri*; dat. *atro*, *atræ*, *atro*, &c.—So,

Æger, <i>sick.</i>	Mæcer, <i>lean.</i>	Sacer, <i>sacred.</i>
Crēber, <i>frequent.</i>	Niger, <i>black.</i>	Scāber, <i>rough.</i>
Glāber, <i>smooth.</i>	Piger, <i>slow.</i>	Tēter, <i>ugly.</i>
Intēger, <i>entire.</i>	Pulcher, <i>fair.</i>	Vāfer, <i>crafty.</i>
Lūdicer, <i>ludicrous.</i>	Rūber, <i>red.</i>	

Dexter, *right*, has -tra, trum, or, -tēra, -tērūm.

Obf. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders: in the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

Unus, -a, -um; gen. unius, dat. uni, one.	Neuter, -tra, -trum; -trius, <i>neither.</i>
Alius, -ia, -iud, -ius, one of many, another.	Ūter, -tra, -trum; utrius, <i>whichever of the two.</i>
Nullus, -a, -um; nullius, none.	Ūterque, utraq̄ue, -umque; utriusque, <i>both.</i>
Sōlus, -a, -um; so -lius, alone.	Ūterlibet, -triuslibet, <i>whichever of the two you please.</i>
Tōtus, -a, -um; to-tius, whole.	Ūtervis, -triusvis,
Ullus, ulla, -um; ullius, any.	
Alter, -ēra, -um; altērius, one of two, the other.	

Alterūter,

Alterüter, -tra, -trum, *the one or the other*, alterutrius, alterutri, and sometimes alterius utrius, alteri utri, &c.

These adjectives, except *totus*, are called *Partitives*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called *pronominal adjectives*. In ancient writers we sometimes find them declined like *bonus*; thus, *hanc ludere sinit, ut lubet, nec pili facit uni*, for *unius*, Catull. 17, 17. in the voc. *unc*, Id. 37, 17. *coloris ulli*, for *ullius*, Plaut. Truc. 1, 2, 38. *mibi sola ridiculo fuit*, Ter. Eun. 5, 6, 8. *alio pecudis jecur*, Cic. Div. 2, 13.

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum sedile*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say, *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir* or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *famina*, or *mulier*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

ADJECTIVES of the THIRD DECLENSION.

I. Adjectives of one termination; as *fēlix*, for the masc. *felix*, for the fem. *felix*, for the neut. happy; thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. fē-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	N. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-icis,	-icis,	-icis,	G. fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	D. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	A. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	V. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
A. fel-ice, or -ici,	&c.		A. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,

In like manner decline,

Amens, -ntis, mad.	Fallax, deceitful.	Prūdēns, prudent.
Atrox, -ōcis, cruel.	Fērax, fertile.	Rēcens, fresh.
Audax, -ācis, & -ens, -ntis, bold.	Fērox, fierce.	Rēpens, sudden.
Bilix, -icis, woven with a double thread.	Frēquens, frequent.	Sāgax, -icis, sagacious.
Cāpax, -ācis, capacious.	Iugens, huge.	Sālax, -acis, lustful.
Cicur, -ūris, tame.	Iners, -tis, sluggish.	Sāpiens, wise.
Clēmēns, -tis, merciful.	Infons, guiltless.	Sōlers, forward.
Contūmax, stubborn.	Mendax, lying.	Sons, guilty.
Dēmēns, mad.	Mordax, biting, satirical.	Tēnax, tenacious.
Edax, gluttonous.	Pernix, -icis, swift.	Trux, -ūcis, cruel.
Efficax, effectual.	Pervicax, wilful.	ūber, -ēris, fertile.
Elēgans, handsome.	Pētūlans, forward, saucy.	Vehemens, vehement.
	Prāgnans, with child.	Vēlox, -ōcis, swift.
		Vōrax, devouring.

2. Adjectives of two terminations; as, *mītis*, for the masc. and fem. *mite*, for the neut. meek; so, *mitior*, *mitior*, *mitius*, meeker; thus,

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>N. mītis,</i>	<i>mitis,</i>	<i>mite,</i>	<i>N. mītes,</i>	<i>mites,</i>	<i>mitia,</i>	
<i>G. mitis,</i>	<i>mitis,</i>	<i>mitis,</i>	<i>G. mitium,</i>	<i>mitium,</i>	<i>mitium,</i>	
<i>D. miti,</i>	<i>miti,</i>	<i>miti,</i>	<i>D. mitibus,</i>	<i>mitibus,</i>	<i>mitibus,</i>	
<i>A. mitem,</i>	<i>mitem,</i>	<i>mite,</i>	<i>A. mites,</i>	<i>mites,</i>	<i>mitia,</i>	
<i>V. mitis,</i>	<i>mitis,</i>	<i>mite,</i>	<i>V. mites,</i>	<i>mites,</i>	<i>mitia,</i>	
<i>A. miti,</i>	<i>miti,</i>	<i>miti.</i>	<i>A. mitibus,</i>	<i>mitibus,</i>	<i>mitibus.</i>	

In like manner decline,

<i>Āgīlis, active.</i>	<i>Hīlaris, cheerful.</i>	<i>Quālis, of what kind.</i>
<i>Āmābilis, lovely.</i>	<i>Ignōbilis, of mean parentage.</i>	<i>Rūdis, raw.</i>
<i>Biennis, of two years.</i>	<i>Inmānis, huge, cruel.</i>	<i>Segnis, slow.</i>
<i>Brēvis, short.</i>	<i>Inānis, empty.</i>	<i>Sōlemnis, annual, solemn.</i>
<i>Civilis, courteous.</i>	<i>Incōlūmis, safe.</i>	<i>Stērilis, barren.</i>
<i>Cœlestis, heavenly.</i>	<i>Infāmis, infamous.</i>	<i>Suāvis, sweet.</i>
<i>Cōmis, mild, affable.</i>	<i>Insignis, remarkable.</i>	<i>Sublīmis, lofty.</i>
<i>Crūdēlis, cruel.</i>	<i>Jūgis, perpetual.</i>	<i>Subtīlis, subtle, fine.</i>
<i>Debīlis, weak.</i>	<i>Lævis, smooth.</i>	<i>Tālis, such.</i>
<i>Dēformis, ugly.</i>	<i>Lēnis, gentle.</i>	<i>Tēnuis, small.</i>
<i>Dōcīlis, teachable.</i>	<i>Lēvis, light.</i>	<i>Terrestris, earthly.</i>
<i>Dulcis, sweet in taste.</i>	<i>Mēdiocris, middling.</i>	<i>Terrībilis, dreadful.</i>
<i>Exīlis, slender.</i>	<i>Mīrābilis, wonderful.</i>	<i>Trīstis, sad.</i>
<i>Exfanguis, bloodless.</i>	<i>Mollis, soft.</i>	<i>Turpis, base.</i>
<i>Fortis, brave.</i>	<i>Omnis, all.</i>	<i>Ūtilis, useful.</i>
<i>Frāgīlis, brittle.</i>	<i>Pīnguis, fat.</i>	<i>Vīlis, worthless.</i>
<i>Grandis, great.</i>	<i>Putris, rotten.</i>	<i>Vīridis, green.</i>
<i>Grāvis, heavy.</i>		<i>Vītīlis, pīant.</i>

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>N. mīti-or,</i>	<i>-or,</i>	<i>-us,</i>	<i>N. mīti-ōres,</i>	<i>-ōres,</i>	<i>-ōra,</i>	
<i>G. mīti-ōris,</i>	<i>-oris,</i>	<i>-ōris,</i>	<i>G. mīti-orum,</i>	<i>-orum,</i>	<i>-orum,</i>	
<i>D. mīti-ori,</i>	<i>-ori,</i>	<i>-ori,</i>	<i>D. mīti-oribus,</i>	<i>-oribus,</i>	<i>-oribus,</i>	
<i>A. mīti-orem,</i>	<i>-orem,</i>	<i>-us,</i>	<i>A. mīti-ores,</i>	<i>-ores,</i>	<i>-ora,</i>	
<i>V. mīti-or,</i>	<i>-or,</i>	<i>-us,</i>	<i>V. mīti-ores,</i>	<i>-ores,</i>	<i>-ora,</i>	
<i>A. mīti-ore, or -ori, &c.</i>			<i>A. mīti-oribus,</i>	<i>-oribus,</i>	<i>-oribus.</i>	

In this manner all comparatives are declined.

3. Adjectives of three terminations; as, *ācer*, or *acris*, for the masc. *acris*, for the fem. *acre*, for the neut. sharp; thus,

<i>N. ā-cer or ācris,</i>	<i>acris,</i>	<i>acre,</i>	<i>N. a-cres,</i>	<i>-cres,</i>	<i>-cria,</i>
<i>G. a-cris,</i>	<i>-cris,</i>	<i>-cris,</i>	<i>G. a-crium,</i>	<i>-crium,</i>	<i>-crium,</i>
<i>D. a-cri,</i>	<i>-cri,</i>	<i>-cri,</i>	<i>D. a-cribus,</i>	<i>-cribus,</i>	<i>-cribus,</i>
<i>A. a-crem,</i>	<i>-crem,</i>	<i>-cre,</i>	<i>A. a-cres,</i>	<i>-cres,</i>	<i>-cria,</i>
<i>V. a-cer, or acris,</i>	<i>-cris,</i>	<i>-cre,</i>	<i>V. a-cres,</i>	<i>-cres,</i>	<i>-cria,</i>
<i>A. a-cri,</i>	<i>-cri,</i>	<i>-cri.</i>	<i>A. a-cribus,</i>	<i>-cribus,</i>	<i>-cribus.</i>

In like manner, *älacer* or *alacris*, *celer* or *celeris*, *cēlēber* or *celebris*, *sälüber*, or *salūbris*, *volūcer* or *volucris*, &c. see P. 59.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular: but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *hospes*, *fospes*, *sūperstes*, *jūvenis*, *sēnex*, and *pauper*, have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the abl. sing. and *um*, not *ium*, in the genit. plur. *Compes*, *-ōtis*, master of, that hath obtained his desire; *impos*, *-ātis*, unable; *inops*, *-ōpis*, poor; *supplex*, *-īcis*, suppliant, humble; *uber*, *-ēris*, fertile; *consors*, *-tis*, sharing, a partner; *dēgener*, *-ēris*, degenerate, or degenerating; *vigil*, watchful; *pūber*, *-ēris*, of age, marriageable; and *celer*: Also compounds in *ceps*, *sex*, *pes*, and *corpor*; as, *particeps*, partaking of; *artifex*, *-īcis*, cunning, an artist; *bipes*, *-pēdis*, two-footed; *bi-corpor*, *-ōris*, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neut. sing. and almost never the neut. plur. in the nominative and accusative. To which add *mēmōr*, mindful, which has *mēmōri*, and *mēmōrum*: also *difēs*, *vēsēs*, *bēbes*, *perpes*, *præpes*, *tāres*, *concolor*, *versicolor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pāri*: but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as *compāre*, or *-ri*. *Vetus*, old, has, *vetēra*, and *vetērum*: *plus*, more, which is only used in the neut. sing. has *plure*: and in the plural, *plūres*, *pluria*, or *plura*; *plurium*.

Exc. 4. *Exspes*, hopeless; and *potis*, *-e*, able, are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *us*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *victor*, victorious, for the masc. *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plur. has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victrices*, *victricula*: so *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also found neut. in the singular; as, *victrici solo*, Claudian. de vi. cons. Honor. 24.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jūgum*, *limus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivis*, *-is*, *-e*; and *declivus*, *-a*, *-um*, steep; *imbēcillus*, and *imbēcillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *exanimis*, and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say *magnānimus*, *flexanimus*, *effrenus*, *levisomnus*; not *magnanimis*; &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillanimis*, *injūgis*, *illimis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pusillanimus*, &c. So *semianimis*, *inermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *proclivis*; rarely, *semianimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as *cordatus*, *mōratus*, *caelestis*, *ādāmanīnus*, *corpōreus*, *agrestis*, *astivus*, &c. from *cor*, *mos*, *calum*, *adamus*, &c. Those which diminish the signification of their primitives are called *Diminutives*; as, *missellus*, *parvulus*, *dūriuscūlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *osus* or *entus*; as, *vīnōsus*, *vīnolentus*, much given to wine; *ōpērōsus*, laborious; *plumbōsus*, full of lead; *nodōsus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpulentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *aurītus*, having long or large ears; *nāsūtus*, having a large nose; *līteratus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive adjective*; as, *Scoticus*, *paternus*, *berūlis*, *aliēnus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another; from *Scotia*, *pater*, *berus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amābilis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *docilis*, teachable; from *amo*, *capio*, *docco*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acutus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *serpens*, *advocatus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legatus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *serta*, *sc. corona*, a garland; *prætecta*, *sc. vestis*; *debitum*, *decretum*, *præceptum*, *satum*, *lectum*, *votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs, are called *Adverbials*; as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crassinus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*; &c. There are likewise adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *anticus*, from *ante*; *posticus*, from *post*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are :

Ūnus,	one.	Septem,	seven.
Duo,	two.	Octo,	eight.
Tres,	three.	Novem,	nine.
Quātuor,	four.	Decem,	ten.
Quinque,	five.	Undecim,	eleven.
Sex,	six.	Duodēcim,	twelve.

Tridécim,	thirteen.	Nōnāginta,	ninety.
Quatuordecim,	fourteen.	Centum,	a hundred.
Quindécim,	fifteen.	Dūcenti, -x, -a,	two hundred.
Sexdecim,	sixteen.	Trēcenti, -x, -a,	three hundred.
Septendécim,	seventeen.	Quadrīngenti,	four hundred.
Octōdēcim,	eighteen.	Quīngenti,	five hundred.
Nōvemdecim,	nineteen.	Sexcenti,	six hundred.
Viginti,	twenty.	Septingenti,	seven hundred.
Viginti unus, or	} twenty-one.	Octingenti,	eight hundred.
Unus & viginti,		Nongenti,	nine hundred.
Viginti duo, or	} twenty-two.	Mille,	a thousand.
Duo & viginti,		Duo millia, or	} two thousand.
Trīginta,	thirty.	bis mille,	
Quadrāginta,	forty.	Dēcem millia, or	} ten thousand.
Quīquāginta,	fifty.	dēcies mille.	
Sexāginta,	sixty.	Viginti millia or	} twenty thousand.
Septuāginta,	seventy.	vīcies mille.	
Octōginta,	eighty.		

The Cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is used in the plural, when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, in *unis aedibus*, in one house, *Terent. Eun. ii. 3. 75.* *Una nuptia*, *Id. And. iv. 1. 51.* *In una mania convenire*, *Sallust. Cat. 6.* or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of cloaths, *Cic. Flacc. 29. &c.*

Duo and *tres* are thus declined.

Plur.			Plur.		
N. duo,	duæ,	duo,	N. tres,	tres,	tria,
G. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	G. trium,	trium,	trium,
D. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	D. tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
A. duos or duo,	duas,	duo,	A. tres,	tres,	tria,
V. duo,	duæ,	duo,	V. tres,	tres,	tria,
A. duobus,	duabus,	duobus.	A. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the Cardinal numbers from *quatuor*, to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, -ta, -ta; *ducentorum*, -tarum, -torum, &c.

Mille is used either as a substantive or adjective; when taken substantively it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c.

Mille, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *mille hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, *tria millia*, *quatuor millia*, *centum* or *centena millia hominum*; *Decies centena millia*, a million; *Vicies centena millia*, two millions, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers are, *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.

3. The distributive are, *singūli*, one by one; *binī*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
1 Prīmus, a, um.	Singūli, æ, a.	Semel, once.
2 secundus.	binī.	bis, twice.
3 tertius.	terni.	ter, thrice.
4 quartus.	quaterni.	quāter, four times.
5 quintus.	quīni.	quinquies, &c.
6 sextus.	seni.	sexies.
7 septimus.	septēni.	septies.
8 octāvus.	octōni.	octies.
9 nonus.	novēni.	novies.
10 dēcimus.	dēni.	dēcies.
11 undēcimus.	undēni.	undecies.
12 duodecimus.	duodēni.	duodecies.
13 decimus tertius.	trēdēni, terni deni.	tredecies.
14 decimus quartus.	quaterni deni.	quatuordecies.
15 decimus quintus.	quīdeni.	quindecies.
16 decimus sextus.	seni deni.	sexdecies.
17 decimus septimus.	septēni deni.	decies ac septies.
18 decimus octāvus.	octōni deni.	dacies ac octies.
19 decimus nonus.	novēni deni.	decies et novies.
20 vīgesimus, vicesimus.	vīcēni.	vicies.
21 vīgesimus prīmus.	vīcēni singuli.	vicies semel.
30 trigēsimus, tricesimus.	trīceni.	tricies.
40 quadragesimus.	quadrāgēni.	quadrāgies.
50 quinquagesimus.	quīnquāgēni.	quīnquāgies.
60 sexagesimus.	sexāgēni.	sexāgies.
70 septuagesimus.	septuāgēni.	septuāgies.
80 octogēsimus.	octogēni.	octōgies.
90 nonagesimus.	nonagēni.	nonāgies.
100 centesimus.	centēni.	centies.
200 dūcentesimus.	dūcēni.	dūcenties.
300 trēcentesimus.	trēcentēni.	trēcenties.
400 quadrīngentesimus.	quāter centēni.	quadrīngenties.
500 quīngentesimus.	quīnquies centēni.	quīngenties.
600 sexcentesimus.	sexies centēni.	sexcenties.
700 septīngentesimus.	septies centēni.	septīngenties.
800 octīngentesimus.	octies centēni.	octīngenties.
900 nongentesimus.	novies centēni.	nonīngenties.
1000 millesimus.	millēni.	millies.
2000 bis millesimus.	bis millēni.	bis millies.

Note. Several of these distributives and numeral adverbs, are not found in the classics. The distributive numerals are often used for the cardinal.

4. The multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, or two-fold; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold; *centuplex*, a hundred fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, -icis, &c.

The interrogative words, to which the above numerals answer, are *quot*, *quōtus*, *quōtēni*, *quōties*, and *quōtūplex*.

Quot, how many? is indeclinable: So *Tot*, so many; *tōtidem*, just so many; *quotquot*, *quotcunque*, how many soever; *aliquot*, some.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c. as, *bipartitus*, *tripartitus*, &c. *duplus*, *triplus*, *decuplus*, &c. *bimius*, *trimius*, &c. *biennis*, *triennis*, &c. *bimestris*, *trimestris*, &c. *bilibris*, *trilibris*, &c. *binarius*, *ternarius*, &c. which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as *versus*, *senarius*, a verse of six feet; *denarius nummus* a coin of ten asses; *octogenarius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenarius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*.

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality: as, *durus*, hard: and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *stronger*, *wiser*.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *strongest*, *wisest*.

Comparison of ENGLISH Adjectives.

In English the comparative is formed from the positive, by adding to the end of the word *r* or, *er*; and the superlative, by adding *st* or *est*: as, *wise*, *wiser*, *wisest*; *cold*, *colder*, *coldest*. The adverbs *more* and *most*, put before the adjective, have the same effect; as *brave*, *more brave*, *most brave*.

Monosyllables for the most part are compared by *er* and *est*: as, *fair*, *fairer*, *fairest*; *full*, *fuller*, *fullest*: and polysyllables, by *more* and *most*; as, *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

In some few adjectives, the superlative is formed by adding *most*; as, *undermost*, *uttermost*, or *utmost*, *nethermost*, *foremost*.

Comparison of LATIN Adjectives.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter: The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *simus*; as, *Altus*, high, genit. *alti*; Comparative, *altior*, for the masc. *altior*, for the fem. *altius*, for the neut. higher: Superlative, *altissimus*, -a, -um, highest. So *mitis*, meek; dat. *miti*: *mitior*, -or, -us, meeker: *mitissimus*, -a, -um, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*; as, *pauper*, poor; *pauperrimus*, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension: The superlative of the first and second; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; *alta*, *altior*, *altissima*; *altum*, *altius*, *altissimum*; gen. *alti*, *altiōris*, *altissimi*; *altæ*, *altiōris*, *altissimæ*, &c.

Irregular and Defective Comparison.

1. <i>Bonus</i> ,	<i>miēlior</i> ,	<i>optimus</i> ,	<i>good</i> ,	<i>better</i> ,	<i>best</i> .
<i>Malus</i> ,	<i>pejor</i> ,	<i>peſsimus</i> ,	<i>bad</i> ,	<i>worſe</i> ,	<i>worſt</i> .
<i>Magnus</i> ,	<i>major</i> ,	<i>maximus</i> ,	<i>great</i> ,	<i>greater</i> ,	<i>greateſt</i> .
<i>Parvus</i> ,	<i>miſnor</i> ,	<i>miſimus</i> ,	<i>ſmall</i> ,	<i>leſs</i> ,	<i>leſt</i> .
<i>Multus</i> ,	-----	<i>plūrimus</i> ,	<i>much</i> ,	<i>more</i> ,	<i>moſt</i> .

ſem. *Multa*, plurima; *neut.* *multum*, plus, plurimum; *plur.* *multi*, plures, plurimi; *multæ*, plures, plurimæ; *multa*, plura, or *pluria*, plurima, &c.

In ſeveral of theſe, both in Engliſh and Latin, the comparative and ſuperlative ſeem to be formed from ſome other adjective, which in the poſitive has fallen into diſuſe: in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magniffimus*; *moſt*, for *moreſt*; *leſt*, for *leſſeſt*; *worſt*, for *worſeſt*.

2. Theſe five have their ſuperlative in *ſimus*;

<i>Facilis</i> , <i>facilior</i> , <i>facillimus</i> , <i>eaſy</i> .	<i>Imbecillis</i> , <i>imbecillior</i> , <i>imbecillimus</i> , <i>weak</i> .
<i>Gracilis</i> , <i>gracilior</i> , <i>gracillimus</i> , <i>lean</i> .	<i>ſimilis</i> , <i>ſimilior</i> , <i>ſimillimus</i> , <i>like</i> .
<i>Humilis</i> , <i>humilior</i> , <i>humillimus</i> , <i>low</i> .	

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the ſuperlative differently;

<i>Citer</i> , <i>citerior</i> , <i>citimus</i> , <i>near</i> .	<i>Maturus</i> , -ior, <i>maturrimus</i> , or <i>maturriffimus</i> , <i>ripe</i> .
<i>Dexter</i> , <i>dexterior</i> , <i>dextimus</i> , <i>right</i> .	<i>Posterus</i> , <i>poſterior</i> , <i>poſtrēmus</i> , <i>behind</i> .
<i>ſiniſter</i> , <i>ſiniſterior</i> , <i>ſiniſtimus</i> , <i>left</i> .	<i>Superus</i> , -ior, <i>ſuprēmus</i> , or <i>ſummus</i> , <i>high</i> .
<i>Exter</i> , -rior, <i>extimus</i> , or <i>extrēmus</i> , <i>outward</i> .	<i>Vetus</i> , <i>veterior</i> , <i>veteriffimus</i> , <i>old</i> .
<i>Inferus</i> , -ior, <i>inſimus</i> or <i>imus</i> , <i>below</i> .	
<i>Interus</i> , <i>interior</i> , <i>intimus</i> , <i>inward</i> .	

4. Compounds in *dīcus*, *lōquus*, *fīcus*, and *vōlus*, have *entior*, and *entissimus*; as, *mālēdīcus*, railing, *mālēdicentior*, *maledicentissimus*: So *magnilōquus*, one that boasteth; *bēnēfīcus*, beneficent; *mōlēvōlus*, malevolent; *mīrīfīcus*, wonderful, *-entior*, *-entissimus*, or *mīrīfīcissimus*. *Nēquam*, indecl. worthless, vicious, has *nēquior*, *nequissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased, yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

<i>Dētērior</i> , worse, deterrimus.	<i>Prōpior</i> , nearer, proximus, nearest or next.
<i>Ōcior</i> , swifter, ocissimus.	<i>Ultērior</i> , farther, ultimus.
<i>Prior</i> , former, primus.	

2. The following want the comparative:

<i>Inclūtus</i> , inclutissimus, renowned.	<i>Nūpērus</i> , nuperrimus, late.
<i>Mēritus</i> , meritissimus, deserving.	<i>Par</i> , parrissimus, equal.
<i>Nōvus</i> , novissimus, new.	<i>Sācer</i> , facerrimus, sacred.

3. The following want the superlative:

<i>Ādōlescens</i> , adolescentior, young.	<i>Prōnus</i> , pronior, inclined downwards.
<i>Diūturnus</i> , diuturnior, lasting.	<i>Sātur</i> , fatūrior, full.
<i>Ingens</i> , ingentior, huge.	<i>Sēnex</i> , senior, old.
<i>Jūvēnis</i> , junior, young.	
<i>Ōpimus</i> , opimior, rich.	

To supply the superlative of *jūvēnis* or *ādōlescens*, we say, *minimus natus*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maximus natus*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ilis*, *ālis*, and *bilis*, also want the superlative; as *civīlis*, *civillior*, civil; *rēgālis*, *regalior*, regal; *flūbīlis*, *-ior*, lamentable. So, *juvenīlis* youthful; *exīlis*, small, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: Thus, *arcānus*, *-ior*, secret; *declīvis*, *-ior*, bending downwards; *longīnquus*, *-ior*, far off; *prōpīnquus*, *-ior*, near.

Antērior, former; *sēquior*, worse; *sātior*, better; are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all; such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versīcōlor*, of diverse colours; *pestīfer*, poisonous: also adjectives in *us* pure, in *vōus*, *īnus*, *ōrus*, or *imus*, and diminutives; as, *dūbīus*, doubtful; *vācūus*, empty; *flūgīvōus*, that flieth away; *mātūtīnus*, early; *cānōrus*, shrill; *lēgītīmus*, lawful; *tēnellus*, somewhat tender; *majuscūlus*, &c.: together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *prācox*, *-ūcis*, soon or early ripe; *mīrus*, *egēnus*, *lācer*, *mēmōr*, *sof pes*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maximē* for

for the superlative; thus, *egēnus*, needy; *magis egēnus*, more needy; *valde* or *maximè egēnus*, very or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

PRONOUN.

A pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a Noun*.

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou* for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not chuse to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

In English there are five substantive pronouns, *I, thou, he, she, and it*.

The first is used, when one speaks of himself; as, *I love*: the second, when the person spoken to is the subject of the discourse; as, *thou lovest*: and the last three in speaking of any other person or thing; as, *he, she, or it falls*.

I is said to be of the first person; *thou*, of the second; and *he, she, or it*, together with all other words, of the third: and so in the plural number, *we, ye, they*. Hence these are called *Personal Pronouns*.

The person speaking, and the person spoken to, do not need the distinction of gender; because they are supposed to be present, and therefore their sex is commonly known. But the third person, or thing spoken of, being frequently absent, and often unknown, requires to be distinguished by different genders; thus, *he, she, it*.

Substantive pronouns in English have three cases, the *nominative*, the *genitive*, or *possessive*, and the *objective* or *accusative* case, which follows the verb active, or the preposition.

Substantive Pronouns, according to their Cases, Numbers, and Persons.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Persons.			Persons.		
Cases.	1.	2.	3.	1	2.	3
Nom.	I;	thou;	he, she, it;	we;	ye or you;	they.
Gen.	mine;	thine;	his, hers, its;	ours;	yours;	theirs.
Acc.	me;	thee;	him, her, it;	us;	you;	them.

All other pronouns are adjectives; as, *this, that, our, your, &c.* A pronominal adjective differs from a common adjective in this, that it does not express quality.

Several adjective pronouns do not admit the article before them, because they very much resemble it in their signification; as, *this man, that thing, &c.*

From the personal pronouns are formed these pronominal adjectives, *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their.* *Mine* and *thine* are often used as adjectives for *my* and *thy*, when the substantive following them begins with a vowel.

Some adjective pronouns are varied to mark number; as, *this, these; that, those.* To these add the adjectives *other, one*, which, when their substantive is not expressed, have in the plural *others, ones*; as, *many others, great ones*; in which case they seem to be used as substantives.

Who, which, that, are called RELATIVES, because they refer to some substantive going before, which is therefore called the ANTECEDENT. *Who* is varied by cases, thus, *who, whose, whom.* *His* and *whose* seem to be contractions for *him's* and *whom's*, the possessive case being formed from the objective; as *hers* from *her*; *mine* from *me*, &c.

Who, which, what, whether, are called INTERROGATIVES, when used in asking questions; when used otherwise, they are called INDEFINITES.

Own, and *self*, in the plural *selves*, are joined to the possessives, *my, our, thy, your, his, her, their*; as, *my or mine own hand, myself, yourselves.* *Self* is likewise joined to the substantive pronoun *it*, as *itself.* *Himself, themselves*, seem to be used by corruption for *hisself, theirselves.*

LATIN PRONOUNS.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras, and cujas.*

Three of them are substantives, *ego, tu, sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, I.

Sing.

Nom. *ego, I,*
Gen. *mei, of me,*
Dat. *mihî, to me,*
Acc. *me, me,*
Voc. _____
Abl. *me, with me;*

Plur.

Nom. *nos, we,*
Gen. *nostrum or nostri, of us,*
Dat. *nobis, to us,*
Acc. *nos, us,*
Voc. _____
Abl. *nobis, with us.*

G

Tu,

Tu, thou.

Sing.			Plur.	
N. tu, thou,	} or you.		N. vos, ye or you,	} or you.
G. tui, of thee,			G. vestrūm or vestri, of you,	
D. tibi, to thee,			D. vōbis, to you,	
A. te, thee,			A. vos, you,	
V. tu, O thou,			V. vos, O ye or you,	
A. te, with thee ;			A. vobis, with you.	

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Sing.			Plur.		
N. _____			N. _____		
G. sui, of himself, of herself, of itself,			G. sui, of themselves,		
D. sibi, to himself, to herself, &c.			D. sibi, to themselves,		
A. se, himself, herself, itself ;			A. se, themselves,		
V. _____			V. _____		
A. se, with himself, with herself, &c.			A. se, with themselves.		

Obf. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person: thus we cannot say, *O ego*, *O I*; *O nos*, *O we*.

Obf. 2. *Mibi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mi*.

Obf. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrorum* and *nostrarum*: of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrūm* and *vestrūm*.

We commonly use *nostrūm* and *vestrūm* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostrī* and *vestrī* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, or *is*; as,

Ille, for the masc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud*, for the neut. that; or, *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it, or that; thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. ille,	illa,	illud,	N. illi,	illæ,	illa,
G. illius,	illius,	illius,	G. illōrum,	illarum,	illorum,
D. illi,	illi,	illi,	D. illis,	illis,	illis,
A. illum,	illam,	illud,	A. illos,	illas,	illa,
V. ille,	illa,	illud,	V. illi,	illæ,	illa,
A. illo,	illā,	illo ;	A. illis,	illis,	illis.

Ipse,

Ipse, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, that, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.

Ipse is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as, *ego ipse*, I myself; *nos ipsi*, we ourselves.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *ibis*.

Sing.			Plur.		
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	N. hi,	hæc,	hæc,
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	G. hõrum,	harum,	horum,
D. huic,	huic,	huic,	D. his,	his,	his,
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	A. hos,	has,	hæc,
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	V. hi,	hæc,	hæc,
A. hoc,	hac,	hoc;	A. his,	his,	his.

Is, ea, id; *be, she, it*; or *that*.

Sing.			Plur.		
N. is,	ea,	id,	N. ii,	eæ,	ea,
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	G. eorum,	earum,	eorum,
D. ei,	ei,	ei,	D. iis or	cis, &c.	
A. eum,	eam,	id,	A. eos,	eas,	ea,
V. _____			V. _____		
A. eo,	câ,	eo.	A. iis or	eis, &c.	

Quis, quæ, quod, or *quid*? which, what? or *Quis*? who? or what man? *quæ*? who? or what woman? *quod* or *quid*? what? which thing? thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. quis, quæ, quod or quid,			N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus, cujus, cujus,			G. quorum, quarum, quorum,		
D. cui, cui, cui,			D. queis or quibus, &c.		
A. quem, quam, quod or quid,			A. quos, quas, quæ,		
V. _____			V. _____		
A. quo, qua, quo;			A. queis or quibus, &c.		

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that; or *vir qui*, the man *who* or *that*; *fœmina quæ*, the woman *who* or *that*; *negotium quod*, the thing *which* or *that*: genit. *vir cujus* the man *whose* or *of whom*; *mulier cujus*, the woman *whose* or *of whom*; *negotium cujus*, the thing *of which*, seldom *whose*, &c. thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui.	D. queis or	quibus,	&c.
A. quem,	quam,	quod,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. _____	_____	_____	V. _____	_____	_____
A. quo,	qua,	quo;	A. queis or	quibus,	&c.

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus*, *a*, *-um*; and *noſter*, our; *veſter*, your, like *pulcher*, *-ebra*; *-ebrium*, of the firſt and ſecond declenſion.

Noſtra, of our country; *veſtra*, of your country; *cujus*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declenſion: gen. *n ſtrâtiſ*, dat. *noſtrâti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that ſignify things, which cannot be addreſſed, or called upon, want the vocative.

Meus hath *mi*, and ſometimes *meus*, in the voc. ſing. maſc.

The relative *qui* has frequently *quî* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is ſometimes uſed for *quis*: AND inſtead of *cujus* the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun *cujus*, *-a*, *-um*.

Simple pronouns, with reſpect to their ſignification, are divided into the following claſſes:

1. *Demonſtratives*, which point out any perſon or thing preſent, or as preſent: *Ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iſte*, and ſometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipſe*.

2. *Relatives*, which refer to ſomething going before: *ille*, *ipſe*, *iſte*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*.

3. *Poſſeſſives*, which ſignify poſſeſſion: *meus*, *tuns*, *ſuus*, *noſter*, *veſter*.

4. *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, which ſignify one's country: *noſtra*, *veſtra*, *cujus*.

5. *Interrogatives*, by which we aſk a queſtion: *quis*? *cujus*? When they do not aſk a queſtion, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the ſame nature.

6. *Reciprocalſ*, which again call back or repreſent the ſame object to to the mind: *sui*, and *ſuus*.

COMPOUND LATIN PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. With other pronouns; as, *iſt hic*, *iſt hac*, *iſt hoc*, *iſt huc*, or *iſtuc*. Acc: *iſt hunc*, *iſt hanc*, *iſt hoc*, or *iſt huc*. Abl. *iſt hinc*, *iſt hac*, *iſt hoc*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *iſt hæc*, of *iſte* and *hic*. So *illuc*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With ſome other parts of ſpeech; as *hujusmodi*, *cujusmodi*, &c. *mecum*, *tæcum*, *tecum*, *nobiſcum*, *vobiſcum*, *quocum* or *quicum* and *quibuſcum*:

cum : *ecum*, *eccam* ; *eccos*, *eccas*, and sometimes *ecca*, in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added : as, *tute* of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *egömet*, *tütömet*, *füimet*, through all the cases, thus, *meimet*, *tuimet*, &c. of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet* in the nom. we say, *tütömet* : *liccine*, *hæccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *C* ; of *hic* and *cine* : *Mcöpte*, *tuapte*, *suapte*, *nostrapte*, *vestrapte*, in the ablat. fem. and sometimes *meöpte*, *tuöpte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte* : *bicce*, *hæcce*, *bocce* ; *bujuſce*, *bice*, *bifce*, *boſce* : of *hic* and *ce* : whence *bujuſcömödi*, *ejufcemödi*, *cujufcemödi*. So *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined ;

Sing.		Plur.		
N. idem,	eädem, idem,	N. iidem,	eädem,	eädem
G. ejufdem,	ejufdem, ejufdem,	G. eorundem,	eorundem,	eorundem,
D. cidem,	eidem, eidem,	D. eifdem, or	iifdem, &c.	
A. eundem,	eandem, idem,	A. eofdem,	eafdem,	eädem
V. idem,	eadem, idem,	V. iidem,	eädem,	cädem,
A. cödem,	eädem, eödem ;	A. cifdem or	iifdem, &c.	

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

Quis in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded : but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quisnam*, who ? *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one ; *quisque*, every one ; *quisquis*, whosoever ; which are thus declined :

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Quisnam, quænam, quödnam or quidnam ;	cujusnam, cuinam, &c	
Quispiam, quæpiam, quödpiam or quidpiam ;	cujuspiam, cuipiam :	
Quisquam, quæquam, quödquam or quidquam ;	cujusquam, cuiquam,	
Quisque, quæque, quödque or quidque ;	cujusque, cuique,	
Quisquis, ——— quidquid or quicquid ;	cujuscujus, cuicui ;	

And so in the other cases, according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam*, has also *quicquam* for *quidquam* ; accusative, *quengquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nominative sing. fem. and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut. *æ*, *aliquis*, some, *ecquis*, who ? cf *et* and *quis* ; also *nequis*, *ſiquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately, thus, *ne quis*, *ſi quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined :

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Aliquis, aliqua,	aliquod or aliquid,	alicujus, alicui,
Ecquis, ecqua or ecquæ,	ecquod or ecquid,	eccujus, eccui,
Si quis, ſi qua,	ſi quod or ſi quid,	ſi cujus, ſi cui,
Ne quis, ne qua,	ne quod or ne quid,	ne cujus, ne cui,
Num quis, num qua,	num quod or num quid,	num cujus, num cui.

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *ecquisnam*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *unusquisque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicumque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quisvis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined.

	Nom.		Gen.	Dat.
Quicumque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque,	cujuscunque,	cuicumque,
Quidam,	quædam,	quoddam or quiddam,	cujusdam,	cuidam,
Quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet, or quidlibet,	cujuslibet,	cuilibet,
Quisvis,	quævis,	quodvis, or quidvis,	cujusvis,	cuivis, &c.

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the gen. plur. *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are used, when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason they are by some reckoned substantives.

VERB.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all: thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech:—Whatever word expresses an affirmation or assertion is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, *-oris*, love, a substantive; and *a mor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing in a certain state or condition; as in a state of motion or rest, &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon, as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passes over* to the object, or has an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo liēras*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passes not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambūlo*, I walk; *curro*, I run, which are likewise called *Neuter Verbs*. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *stāre*, to stop; *incipere* to begin; *durāre*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse* or *existere*, to be or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*: as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Moods*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.
The

The moods are four; *Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.*

The tenses are five; the *Present, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect, and the Future.*

The numbers are two; *Singular and Plural.*

The persons are three; *First, Second, Third.*

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active voice* signifies action; as, *amo*, I love; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes or Moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall love; or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *non, si me obsecrat, redibo*, if *she* intreat me, I will not return. *Ter. Eun. I, 1, 4.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or intreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

3. *Tenses or Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsēram*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or, I shall [*tben*] be writing; *scripsēro*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks how many we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shews to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns in these respects: for a verb properly has neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

ENGLISH VERBS.

English verbs change their termination to express only the present and the past time of the Active voice; and in regular verbs, the Perfect participle is always the same with the perfect or past time, both of them ending in *ed* or *'d*. The present participle always ends in *ing*. The English language has no future participle, which defect is supplied by a circumlocution; as, *about to love*.

An English Verb is thus varied :

To LOVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Time.

Past Time.

Person.	<i>Present Time.</i>		<i>Past Time.</i>	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	I love,	We love,	1. I loved,	We loved,
2.	Thou lovest,	Ye or you love,	2. Thou lovedst,	Ye or you loved.
3.	He loveth or loves;	They love.	3. He loved;	They loved.

Subjunctive Mood.

Imperative Mood.

Present Time.

Person.	<i>Present Time.</i>		<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	I love,	We love,	2. Love thou;	Love ye, or love you.
2.	Thou love,	Ye or you love,	<i>Infinitive Mode.</i>	
3.	He love;	They love.	<i>Present, To love.</i>	

Participle Present, Loving; Perfect, Loved.

The several remaining parts of the English verb are formed by the assistance of other verbs, called therefore *Auxiliaries* or *Helpers*. The chief of these are *have*, *be*, *shall*, and *will*, which are thus varied;

To HAVE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Time.

Past Time.

Person.	<i>Present Time.</i>		<i>Past Time.</i>	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	I have,	We have,	1. I had.	We had,
2.	Thou hast,	Ye have,	2. Thou hadst,	Ye had,
3.	He has, or hath;	They have.	3. He had;	They had.

Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mood.

Imperative Mood.

Present.

Present.			
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I have,	We have	2. Have thou;	Have ye.
2. Thou have,	Ye have,	Infinitive Mode.	
3. He have;	They have;	Present, To have.	
Participle Present, Having; Perfect, Had.			

To BE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Time.

Past Time.

Present Time.		Past Time.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I am,	We are,	1. I was,	We were,
2. Thou art,	Ye are,	2. Thou wast,	Ye were,
3. He is;	They are.	3. He was;	They were.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Past Time.

Present.		Past Time.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I be,	We be,	1. I were,	We were,
2. Thou be,	Ye be,	2. Thou wert,	Ye were,
3. He be;	They be.	3. He were;	They were.

Imperative Mood.

Infinitive Mood.

Sing.	Plur.	Present, To be.	
2. Be thou;	Be ye.		

Participle.

Present, Being.

Perfect, Been.

SHALL.

WILL.

Present, Being.		Perfect, Been.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I shall,	We shall,	1. I will,	We will,
2. Thou shalt,	Ye shall,	2. Thou wilt,	Ye will,
3. He shall;	They shall.	3. He will;	They will.

The terminations of these auxiliary verbs seem to be irregular. Most of them however are only contractions of the regular form. Thus, *hast* is contracted for *havesst*; *batst*, for *havest*; *has*, for *haves*; and *wilt*, for *willest*; which last is likewise used from the regular verb, *to will*; thus, *I will, thou willest, he willeth, or wills, &c.*

The tenses of the subjunctive Mood are expressed by *may* or *can*; *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, together with other auxiliary verbs.

Would, *wouldst*, comes from *will*; and *should*, *shouldst*, from *shall*. *Might* and *could* seem to be the past time of *may* and *can*.

To express with greater force the present and past time of the indicative Mood, we use the auxiliary verb *do*; as, *I do love*; *I did love*. And so in the Imperative, *do thou love*, *do ye love*. In the third person of the Imperative, we always use *let*, which, being an active verb, has always an accusative after it; as, *let him love*, *let them love*.

When we speak of present time indeterminately, we use the simple form;

form; as *I love, I loved*: but when we speak of it with some particular limitation, we use an auxiliary; as, *I am loving* just now; *I was* (then) *loving*. The termination *th*, in the third person of the present of the Indicative, properly belongs to solemn discourse; as, *he bath, he doth, &c.*

The whole of the passive voice in English is formed by the auxiliary verb *to be*, and the participle perfect; as, *I am loved, I was loved, &c.* In many verbs the present participle also is used in a passive sense; as, *These things are doing, were doing, &c.*; *The house is building, was building, &c.*

When an auxiliary is joined to a verb, the auxiliary is varied according to number and person, and the verb itself always continues the same. When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to the verb, the first of them only is varied according to person and number. The auxiliary *must* admits of no variation.

Shall and *will* are always employed to express future time. *Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second or third persons, only foretells: *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretells; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question: thus, "I *shall* go;" "you *will* go;" express event only; but "will you go?" imports intention; and "*shall* I go?" refers to the will of another.

The neuter verb is varied like the active; but sometimes it assumes the passive form; as, *I had fallen, or I was fallen.*

IRREGULAR ENGLISH VERBS.

The English language abounds in irregular verbs.

A verb in English is said to be irregular, which has not the Past Time and the Participle Perfect in *ed*.

Most English verbs are liable to some irregularity from contraction.

To this we are led by the nature of the language, and the manner of pronouncing it. Thus, instead of *loved, lovedest*, we say, *lov'd, lovedst*. Hence in many verbs *ed* is changed into *t*; at *snatcht, checkt, snapt, mixt, dwelt, past, meant, felt, left, bereft, &c.* for *snatched, checked, &c.* In such words, however, the entire form is also used, and in general to be preferred. They are not therefore commonly ranked among irregular verbs.

Irregular verbs in English, properly so called, are all monosyllables, unless compounded; and may be reduced to the three following classes, in which those marked thus *, are likewise used in the regular form.

1. *Irregulars by Contraction.*

These commonly end in *d* or *t*, and have the Present, the Past Time, and the Participle Perfect, all alike, without any variation: as, *beat, burst cast, cost, cut, bit, burt, knit, let, left*, light*, put, quit*, read, rent, rid, set, sbed, sbred, sbut, slit, split, spread, thrust, wet**; all of which are contracted for *beated, bursted, costed, &c.*

The

The following in the Past Time, and Participle Perfect, vary a little from the Present; as, *lead, led; sweat, sweated; meet, met; breed, bred; feed, fed; speed, sped; bend, bent; lend, lent; rend, rent; send, sent; spend, spent; build, built; geld, gelt; gild, gilt; gird, girt; lose, lost.*

*Sold, told; bad, made, fled, fiod, clad; from sell, tell, have, make, flee, shoe, clothe; are contracted for *sellod, telled, &c.* Stand has *flood; smell, smelt; dare, durst*, in the participle *dared*.*

2. Irregulars in ght.

These are few in number, and have the Past Time and Participle in *ght*; as, *bring, brought; buy, bought; catch, caught; fight, fought; teach, taught; think, thought; seek, sought; work, wrought*.

3. Irregulars in en.

This is by far the most numerous class of irregular verbs. They have commonly the participle Perfect in *en*, and form the Past Time by changing the vowel or diphthong of the Present. Some form the Past Time regularly.

Present.	Past.	Participle.	Present.	Past.	Participle.
Fall	fell,	fallen.	Croep,	crope*, or crept†.	crept*.
Awake,	awoke*,	(awaked.)	Freeze,	froze,	frozen.
Forfake,	forfook,	forsoaken.	Seethe,	sod,	sodden.
Shake,	shook,	shaken.	See,	saw,	seen.
Take,	took,	taken.	Bite,	bit,	bitten.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Chide,	chid,	chidden.
Slay,	slew,	slain.	Hide,	hid,	hidden.
Get,	got or gat,	got or gotten.	Slide,	slid,	slidden.
Help,	(helped)	holpen.	Abide,	abode,	abode.
Melt	melted,	molten*.	Climb,	clomb,†	(climbed)
Swell,	swelled.	swollen*.	Drive,	drove,	driven.
Eat,	ate,	eaten.	Ride,	rode,	rode, ridden.
Bear,	bare, or bore,	born.	Rise,	rose,	risen.
Break,	brake, or broke,	broken.	Shine,	shone*,	shined.
Clave,	clave, or clove*,	cloven*.	Strive,	strove*,	striven.
Speak,	spake, or spoke,	spoken.	Smite,	smote,	smitten.
Swear,	sware, or swore,	sworn.	Stride,	strode,	stridden.
Tear,	tare or tore,	torn,	Shrive,	shrove,	shriven.
Wear,	ware, or wore,	worn.	Thrive,	throve,	thriven.
Heave,	hove*,	hoven*.	Write,	wrote,	written.
Shear,	shore,	shorn.	Strike,	struck,	stricken or strucken.
Steal,	stole,	stolen.	Bid,	bade,	bidden.
Tread,	trod,	trodden.	Give,	gave,	given.
Weave,	wove,	woven.	Sit,	sat,	sat or sitten.
			Spit,	spit, spat,	spit, spitten.
			Dig,	dug*,	digged.
			Lie,	lay,	lain or lien.
			Chuse,	chose,	chosen.
			Hold,	held,	held or holden.

† *Crope* is now obsolete:—so *clomb*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Do,	did,	done.	Rive,	(rived,) riven.	
Blow,	blew,	blown.	Saw,	(lawed),	sawn*.
Crow,	crew,	(crowed).	Shape,	(shaped),	shapen*.
Grow,	grew,	grown.	Shave,	(shaved),	shaven*.
Know,	knew,	known.	Shew,	(shewed),	shewn*.
Throw,	threw,	thrown.	Show,	(showed),	shown.
Fly,	flew,	flown.	Sow,	(sowed),	sowen*.
Bake,	(baked),	baken*.	Strow, or	(strowed, or	strown*.
Grave,	(graved),	graven*.	strew,	strewed),	
Hew.	(hewed),	hewen, or hewn.	Wash,	(washed),	washen*.
Lade,	(laded),	laden.	Wax,	(waxed),	waxen*.
Load,	(loaded),	loaden*.	Wreath,	(wreathed),	wreathen*.
Mow,	(mowed),	mowen*.	Writhe,	(writhed),	writhen.

Several verbs seem to have dropt the termination *en* in the Participle ; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Begin,	began,	begun.	Stink,	stank or stunk,	stunk.
Cling,	clang or clung,	clung.	String,	strung,	strung.
Drink,	drank,	drunk or drunken.	Swim,	swam or swum,	swum.
Fling,	flung,	flung.	Swing,	swung,	swung.
Ring,	rang or rung,	rung.	Wring,	wrung*,	wrung*.
Shrink,	shrank or shrank,	shrank.	Bind,	bound,	bounden.
Sing,	sang or sung,	sung.	Find,	found,	found.
Sink,	sank or sunk,	sunk.	Grind,	ground,	ground.
Sling,	slung,	slung.	Wind,	wound,	wound.
Slink,	slunk,	slunk.	Hang,	hung*,	hung*.
Spin,	span or spun,	spun.	Shoot,	shot,	shot.
Spring,	sprang or sprung,	sprung.	Stick,	stuck,	stuck.
Sting,	stung,	stung.	Come,	came,	come.
			Run,	ran,	run.
			Win,	won,	won.

Frequent mistakes are committed with regard to those verbs which make the Participle Perfect different from the Past Time : thus it is said, *be begun*, for *be began* ; *be run*, for *be ran* ; the Participle being used instead of the Past Time ; and much more frequently the Past Time instead of the Participle ; as, *I had wrote*, for *I had written* ; *it was wrote*, for *it was written* ; *so bore* for *borne* ; *chose* for *chosen* ; *bid*, for *bidden* ; *drove*, for *driven* ; *broke* for *broken*, &c.

Several verbs are either defective, or made up of parts derived from different verbs of the same signification ; as, *go*, *went*, *gone* ; *weat*, *wit* or *wot*, *wot* ; *wis*, *wist* ; *ought*, *quoth*, *must*, together with most of the auxiliary verbs ; as, *can*, *could* ; *may*, *might* ; *shall*, *should*, &c.

LATIN VERBS.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus distinguished :

The First has *ā* long before *re* of the Infinitive ; the Second has *ē* long, the Third has *ĕ* short, and the Fourth has *ī* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *DĀRE* to give, which has *ă* short, and also its compounds ; thus, *Circumdāre*, to surround ; *circundāmus*, -*dātis*, -*dābam*, -*dābo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses :

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

		<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>			
		<i>Persons.</i>			<i>Persons.</i>			
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
Conjug.	{	1.	-o,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-atis,	-ant.
		2.	-eo,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
		3.	-o,	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-unt.
		4.	-io,	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat ;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4.	-iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat ;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

Future.

1.	-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit ;	-ābīmus,	-ābītis,	-ābunt.
2.	-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit ;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.
3.	-am,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4.	-iam,	-iet,	-iet ;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

1.	-em,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2.	-eam,	-eas,	-eat ;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3.	-am,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4.	-iam,	-ias,	-iat ;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

- | | | | | | |
|-----------|--------|---------|----------|----------|---------|
| 1. -ārem, | -āres, | -āret ; | -ārēmus, | -ārētis, | -ārent. |
| 2. -ērem, | -ēres, | -ēret ; | -ērēmus, | -ērētis, | -ērent. |
| 3. -ěrem, | -ěres, | -ěret ; | -ěrēmus, | -ěrētis, | -ěrent. |
| 4. -īrem, | -īres, | -īret ; | -irēmus, | -irētis, | -irent. |

Imperative Mood.

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------|-----------------|---------|
| 2. | 3. | 2. | 3. |
| 1. -a or -āto | -āto ; | -āte or atōte ; | -anto. |
| 2. -e or -ēto | -ēto ; | -ēte or ētōte ; | -ento. |
| 3. -e or -īto | -īto ; | -ite or itōte ; | -unto. |
| 4. -i or -īto | -īto ; | -ite or itōte ; | -iunto. |

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

- | | | | | | |
|----------|----------------|---------|--------|---------|----------|
| 1. -or, | -āris or -āre, | -ātur ; | -āmur, | -āmini, | -antur. |
| 2. -eor, | -ēris or -ēre, | -ētur ; | -ēmur, | -ēmini, | -entur. |
| 3. -or, | -ēris or -ēre, | -itur ; | -imur, | -imini, | -untur. |
| 4. -ior, | -īris or -ire, | -itur ; | -imur, | -imini, | -iuntur. |

Imperfect.

- | | | | | | |
|------------|---------------------|------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1. -ābar, | -ābāris or ābāre, | -ābātur ; | -ābāmur, | -ābāmini, | -ābantur. |
| 2. -ēbar, | -ēbāris or ēbāre, | -ēbātur ; | -ēbāmur, | -ēbāmini, | -ēbantur. |
| 3. -ēbar, | -ēbāris or ēbāre, | -ēbātur ; | -ēbāmur, | -ēbāmini, | -ēbantur. |
| 4. -iēbar, | -iēbāris or iēbāre, | -iēbātur ; | -iēbāmur, | -iēbāmini, | -iēbantur. |

Future.

- | | | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. -ābor, | -ābēris or -ābēre, | -ābītur ; | -ābīmur, | -ābīmini, | -ābuntur. |
| 2. -ēbor, | -ēbēris or -ēbēre, | -ēbītur ; | -ēbīmur, | -ēbīmini, | -ēbuntur. |
| 3. -ar, | -ēris or -ēre, | -ētur ; | -ēmur, | -ēmini, | -entur. |
| 4. -iar, | -iēris or -iēre, | -iētur ; | -iēmur, | -iēmini, | -ientur. |

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

- | | | | | | |
|----------|------------------|----------|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. -er, | -ēris or -ēre, | -ētur ; | -ēmur, | -ēmini, | -entur. |
| 2. -ear, | -eāris or -eāre, | -eātur ; | -eāmur, | -eāmini, | -eantur. |
| 3. -ar, | -āris or -āre, | -ātur ; | -āmur, | -āmini, | -antur. |
| 4. -iar, | -iāris or -iāre, | -iātur ; | -iāmur, | -iāmini, | -iantur. |

Imperfect.

- | | | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. -ārer, | -ārēris or -ārēre, | -ārētur ; | -ārēmur, | -ārēmīni, | -ārentur. |
| 2. -ērer, | -ērēris or -ērēre, | -ērētur ; | -ērēmur, | -ērēmīni, | -ērentur. |
| 3. -ērer, | -ērēris or -ērēre, | -ērētur ; | -ērēmur, | -ērēmīni, | -ērentur. |
| 4. -īrer, | -irēris or -irēre, | -irētur ; | -irēmur, | -irēmīni, | -irentur. |

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-āre or -ātor,	-ātor ;	-āmini,	-antor.
2.	-ēre or -ētor,	-ētor ;	-ēmini,	-entor.
3.	-ċre or -ċtor,	-ċtor ;	-ċmini,	-untor.
4.	-īre or -ītor,	-ītor ;	-īmini,	-iuntor.

Observe, Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive ; and *io* in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative, they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iċbam* and *iam* ; *iċbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>Perf.</i>	-i,	-iŋti,	-it ;	-ċimus,	-ċiŋtis,	-ċerunt or -ċere.
<i>Plu.</i>	-ċram,	-ċras,	-ċrat ;	-ċramus,	-ċratis,	-ċrant.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Perf.</i>	-ċrim,	-ċris,	-ċrit ;	-ċriċmus,	-ċriċtis,	-ċrint.
<i>Plu.</i>	-iŋŋem,	-iŋŋes,	-iŋŋet ;	-iŋŋċmus,	-iŋŋċtis,	-iŋŋent.
<i>Fut.</i>	-ċro,	-ċris,	-ċrit ;	-ċriċmus,	-ċriċtis,	-ċrint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated :

Principal Parts.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	
Sum,	fui,	esse,	to be.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense, *am.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Person.</i>		
1.	Sum, <i>I am,</i>	Sūmus, <i>We are,</i>
2.	Es, <i>Thou art,</i> or <i>you are,</i>	Estis, <i>Ye or you are,</i>
3.	Est, <i>He is ;</i>	Sunt, <i>They are.</i>

Imperfect.

Imperfect. *was.*

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1. Ēram, <i>I was,</i> | Erāmus, <i>We were,</i> |
| 2. Eras, <i>Thou wast, or you were,</i> | Erātis, <i>Ye were,</i> |
| 3. Erat, <i>He was ;</i> | Erant, <i>They were.</i> |

Perfect. *have been or was.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. Fui, <i>I have been,</i> | Fuimus, <i>We have been,</i> |
| 2. Fuisti, <i>Thou hast been,</i> | Fuistis, <i>Ye have been,</i> |
| 3. Fuit, <i>He has been ;</i> | Fuerunt, <i>or-ēre, They have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *had been.*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Fuēram, <i>I had been.</i> | Fuērāmus, <i>We had been,</i> |
| 2. Fueras, <i>Thou hadst been,</i> | Fueratis, <i>Ye had been,</i> |
| 3. Fuerat, <i>He had been ;</i> | Fuerant, <i>They had been.</i> |

Future. *shall or will.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Ēro, <i>I shall be,</i> | Erimus, <i>We shall be,</i> |
| 2. Eris, <i>Thou shalt be,</i> | Eritis, <i>Ye shall be,</i> |
| 3. Erit, <i>He shall be ;</i> | Erunt, <i>They shall be.</i> |

*Subjunctive Mood.*Present Tense. *may or can.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Sim, <i>I may be,</i> | Sīmus, <i>We may be,</i> |
| 2. Sis, <i>Thou mayest be,</i> | Sītis, <i>Ye may be,</i> |
| 3. Sit, <i>He may be ;</i> | Sint, <i>They may be.</i> |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Essem, <i>I might be,</i> | Esēmus, <i>We might be,</i> |
| 2. Esset, <i>Thou mightest be,</i> | Essetis, <i>Ye might be,</i> |
| 3. Esset, <i>He might be ;</i> | Essent, <i>They might be.</i> |

Perfect. *may have.*

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuērim, <i>I may have been,</i> | Fuērīmus, <i>We may have been,</i> |
| 2. Fueris, <i>Thou mayest have been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye may have been,</i> |
| 3. Fuerit, <i>He may have been ;</i> | Fuerint, <i>They may have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had,*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Fuissem, <i>I might have been,</i> | Fuisēmus, <i>We might have been,</i> |
| 2. Fuisses, <i>Thou mightest have been,</i> | Fuissetis, <i>Ye might have been,</i> |
| 3. Fuisset, <i>He might have been ;</i> | Fuissent, <i>They might have been.</i> |

Future. *shall have.*

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuēro, <i>I shall have been,</i> | Fuērīmus, <i>We shall have been,</i> |
| 2. Fueris, <i>Thou shalt have been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye shall have been,</i> |
| 3. Fuerit, <i>He shall have been ;</i> | Fuerint, <i>They shall have been.</i> |

Imperative Mood.

2. Es *vel* esto, *Be thou,* Este *vel* estōte, *Be ye,*
 3. Esto, *Let him be;* Suntō, *Let them be.*

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. Esse, *To be.*

Perf. Fuisse, *To have been.*

Fut. Esse futurus, -a, -um, *To be about to be.*

Fuisse fütürus, -a, -um, *To have been about to be.*

Participle.

Future, Fütürus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood: because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner however at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, or you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are, &c. So *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest: *vos amatis*, ye love; *illi amant*, they love.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as *tu es*, thou art, or much oftener, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast, or you were; *tu sis*, thou mayest be, or you may be, &c. So *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst, or you loved, &c.

Verbs are thus varied in the different Conjugations;

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Principal Parts.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinit.</i>
amo,	amāvi,	amātum,	amāre, <i>to love.</i>

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense. love, do love, or am loving,

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amo,	<i>I love.</i>
2. Am-as,	<i>Thou lovest, or you love,</i>
3. Am-at,	<i>He loves, or he loveth;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-amus,	<i>We love,</i>
2. Am-atis,	<i>Ye or you love,</i>
3. Am-ant,	<i>They love.</i>

Imperfect.

Imperfect. *loved, did love, or was loving.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-ābam,	<i>I loved,</i>
2.	Am-abas,	<i>Thou lovedst,</i>
3.	Am-abat,	<i>He loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-abamus,	<i>We loved,</i>
2.	Am-abatis,	<i>Ye or you loved,</i>
3.	Am-abant,	<i>They loved.</i>

Perfect. *loved, have loved, or did love.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-āvi,	<i>I have loved,</i>
2.	Am-avisti,	<i>Thou hast loved,</i>
3.	Am-avit,	<i>He has loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-āvīmus,	<i>We have loved,</i>
2.	Am-avistis,	<i>Ye have loved,</i>
3.	Am-avērunt, v. -avēre,	<i>They have loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *had.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-āvērā,	<i>I had loved,</i>
2.	Am-averas,	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>
3.	Am-averat,	<i>He had loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-averāmus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
2.	Am-averatis,	<i>Ye had loved,</i>
3.	Am-averant,	<i>They had loved,</i>

Future. *shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-ābo,	<i>I shall love,</i>
2.	Am-abis,	<i>Thou shalt love,</i>
3.	Am-abit,	<i>He shall love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-abīmus,	<i>We shall love,</i>
2.	Am-abitis,	<i>Ye shall love,</i>
3.	Am-abunt,	<i>They shall love.</i>

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense. *may or can.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-em,	<i>I may love,</i>
2.	Am-es,	<i>Thou mayest love,</i>
3.	Am-et,	<i>He may love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Amēmus,	<i>We may love,</i>
2.	Am-etis,	<i>Ye may love,</i>
3.	Am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>

Imperfect.

	Imperfect.	<i>might, could, would, or should.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-ārem,	<i>I might love,</i>
2.	Am-ares,	<i>Thou mightest love,</i>
3.	Am-aret,	<i>He might love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-arēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
2.	Am-aretis,	<i>Ye might love,</i>
3.	Am-arent,	<i>They might love.</i>
	Perfect.	<i>may have.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-āvērīm,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
2.	Am-averis,	<i>Thou mayest have loved;</i>
3.	Am-averit,	<i>He may have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-averīmus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
2.	Am-averitis,	<i>Ye may have loved,</i>
3.	Am-averint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>
	Plu-perfect.	<i>might, could, would, or should have; or had.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> 2.	Am-āvīssēm,	<i>I might have loved.</i>
2.	Am-avīssēs,	<i>Thou mightest have loved,</i>
3.	Am-avīssēt,	<i>He might have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-avīssēmūs,	<i>We might have loved,</i>
2.	Am-avīssētis,	<i>Ye might have loved,</i>
3.	Am-avīssēt,	<i>They might have loved.</i>
	Future.	<i>shall have.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-āvērō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
2.	Am-averis,	<i>Thou shalt have loved,</i>
3.	Am-averit,	<i>He shall have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-averīmus,	<i>We shall have loved,</i>
2.	Am-averitis,	<i>Ye shall have loved,</i>
3.	Am-averint,	<i>They shall have loved.</i>
	Imperative Mood.	
<i>Sing.</i> 2.	Am-a, <i>vel</i> am-āto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love,</i>
3.	Am-ato,	<i>Let him love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2.	Am-āte <i>vel</i> amatōte,	<i>Love ye, or do ye love,</i>
3.	Am-anto,	<i>Let them love.</i>
	Infinitive Mood.	
<i>Pres.</i>	Am-āre,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Esse amatūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love.</i>
	Fuisse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>
		<i>Participle.</i>

Participle.

Present, Am-ans, *Loving.*
Future, Am-aturus, -a, -um, *About to love.*

Gerunds.

Nom. Am-andum, *Loving,*
Gen. Am-andi, *Of loving,*
Dat. Am-ando, *To loving,*
Acc. Am-andum, *Loving,*
Abl. Am-ando, *With loving.*

Supine.

Former, Am-atum, *To love,*
Latter, Am-atu, *To love, or to be loved.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present Indicative. *Perfect Participle.* *Infinitive.*
 Amor, *amātus*, *amāri, to be loved.*

*Indicative Mood.**Present Tense. am.*

Sing. 1. Am-or, *I am loved,*
 2. Am-aris, *vel -arc,* *Thou art loved,*
 3. Am-atur, *He is loved;*
Plur. 1. Am-amur, *We are loved,*
 2. Am-amīni, *Ye or you are loved,*
 3. Am-antur, *They are loved.*

Imperfect. was.

Sing. 1. Am-abar, *I was loved,*
 2. Am-abaris *vel -abare,* *Thou wast loved,*
 3. Am-abatur, *He was loved;*
Plur. 1. Am-abamur, *We were loved,*
 2. Am-abamīni, *Ye were loved,*
 3. Am-abantur, *They were loved.*

Perfect. am; have been, or was.

Sing. 1. Amatus sum, *vel fui,* *I have been loved,*
 2. Amatus es, *v. fuisti,* *Thou hast been loved,*
 3. Amatus est, *v. fuit,* *He has been loved;*
Plur. 1. Amati sumus, *v. fuimus,* *We have been loved,*
 2. Amati estis, *v. fuistis,* *Ye have been loved,*
 3. Amati sunt, *fuērunt, v. fuēre,* *They have been loved.*

Plu-perfect.

Plu-perfect. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus eram <i>vel</i> fueram,	<i>I had been loved,</i>
2. Amatus eras, <i>v.</i> fueras,	<i>Thou hadst been loved,</i>
3. Amatus erat, <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>He had been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Amati eramus. <i>v.</i> fueramus,	<i>We had been loved,</i>
2. Amati eratis, <i>v.</i> fueratis,	<i>Ye had been loved,</i>
3. Amati erant, <i>v.</i> fuerant.	<i>They had been loved.</i>

Future. *shall, or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābor,	<i>I shall be loved,</i>
2. Am-abēris <i>vel</i> -abēre,	<i>Thou shalt be loved,</i>
3. Am-abitur,	<i>He shall be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ābimur,	<i>We shall be loved,</i>
2. Am-abimini,	<i>Ye shall be loved,</i>
3. Am-abuntur,	<i>They shall be loved.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.*Present Tense. *may or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-er,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
2. Am-ēris <i>vel</i> -ēre,	<i>Thou mayest be loved,</i>
3. Am-etur,	<i>He may be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ēmur,	<i>We may be loved,</i>
2. Am-emini,	<i>Ye may be loved,</i>
3. Am-entur,	<i>They may be loved.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ārer,	<i>I might be loved,</i>
2. Am-arēris <i>vel</i> -arēre,	<i>Thou mightest be loved,</i>
3. Am-aretur,	<i>He might be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-arēmur,	<i>We might be loved,</i>
2. Am-aremini,	<i>Ye might be loved,</i>
3. Am-arentur,	<i>They might be loved.</i>

Perfect. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
2. Amatus sis <i>v.</i> fueris,	<i>Thou mayest have been loved,</i>
3. Amatus sit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>He may have been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Amati simus <i>v.</i> fuerimus,	<i>We may have been loved,</i>
2. Amati sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis,	<i>Ye may have been loved,</i>
3. Amati sint <i>v.</i> fuerint.	<i>They may have been loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have been; or had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus essem <i>vel</i> fuissem,	<i>I might have been loved,</i>
2. Amatus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been loved,</i>
3. Amatus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset,	<i>He might have been loved;</i>

Plur.

- Plur. 1.* Amati essemus v. fuissetus, *We might have been loved,*
 2. Amati essetis v. fuissetis, *Ye might have been loved,*
 3. Amati essent v. fuissent. *They might have been loved.*

Future. shall have been.

- Sing. 1.* Amatus fuëro, *I shall have been loved,*
 2. Amatus fueris, *Thou shalt have been loved,*
 3. Amatus fuerit, *He shall have been loved ;*
Plur. 1. Amati fuërimus, *We shall have been loved,*
 2. Amati fueritis, *Ye shall have been loved,*
 3. Amati fuerint. *They shall have been loved.*

Imperative Mood.

- Sing. 2.* Am-äre *vel* am-ātor, *Be thou loved,*
 3. Am ātor, *Let him be loved ;*
Plur. 2. Am-amīni, *Be ye loved,*
 3. Am-antor, *Let them be loved.*

Infinitive Mood.

- Pres. Am-āri,* *To be loved.*
Perf. Esse v. fuisse amatus, -a, -um, *To have been loved.*
Fut. Am-ātum iri, *To be about to be loved.*

Participle.

- Perf. Am-atus, -a, -um,* *Loved.*
Fut. Am-andus, -a, -um, *To be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Döceo, döcui, doctum, döcere, To teach.

Indicative Mood.

Sing.

Plur.

1. 2. 3. 1. 2. 3.

- Pres. Doc-eo,* -es -et ; -ëmus, -ëtis, -ent.
Imp. Doc-ëbam, -ebas, -ebat ; -ebämus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Perf. Doc-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt,
 v. -uëre.
Plu. Doc-uëram, -ueras, -uerat ; -uerämus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Doc-ëbo, -ebis, -ebit ; -ebimus, -ebitis, -ebunt.

Subjunctive Mood.

- Pres. Doc-eam,* -eas, -eat ; -eämus, -eatis, -eant.
Imp. Doc-ërem, -eres, -eret ; -erëmus, -eretis, -erent.
Perf. Doc-uërim, -ueris, -uerit ; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Plu. Doc-uissëm, -uissës, -uisset ; -uissëmus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Doc-uëro, -ueris, -uerit ; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Imperative.

Imperative Mood.

2. 3. 2. 3.
Pres. Doc-e vel -ēto, -ēto; -ēte vel -etote, -ento.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ēre.	<i>Pr.</i> Doc-ens,	Doc-endum,	1. Doc-tum,
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-uisse	<i>Fnt.</i> Doc-tūrus.	Doc-endi,	2. Doc-tu.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse docturus, -a, -um.		Doc-endo, &c.	
	Fuisse docturus, -a, -um.		

PASSIVE VOICE.

Dōceor, doctus, dōcēri, *To be taught.*

Indicative Mood.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Doc-eor,	-ēris, vel -ēre,	-etur;	-emur, -emini, -entur.
<i>Im.</i> Doc-ēbar,	-ēbāris, vel -ebare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
<i>Perf.</i> Doctus sum vel fui, doctus es vel fuisti, &c.			
<i>Plu.</i> Doctus eram v. fueram, doctus eras v. fueras, &c.			
<i>Fut.</i> Doc-ebor,	-ēbēris vel -ebere.	-ebitur;	-ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> Doc-ear,	-cāris, vel -eare,	-eatur;	-eamur, -eamini, -eantur.
<i>Im.</i> Doc-ērer,	-erēris, vel -erēre,	vel -eretur;	-eremur, -eremini, -erentur.
<i>Perf.</i> Doctus sim vel fuerim, doctus sis vel fueris, &c.			
<i>Flu.</i> Doctus essem v. fuisset, doctus esses v. fuisset, &c.			
<i>Fut.</i> Doctus fuero, doctus fueris, doctus fuerit, docti fuerimus, &c.			

Imperative Mood.

2. 3. 2. 3.
Pres. Doc-ēre vel -ētor, -etor; -emini, entor.

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-eri,	<i>Perf.</i> Doc-tus, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Esse vel fuisse doctus, -a, -um,	<i>Fut.</i> Doc-endus, -a, -um,
<i>Fut.</i> Doctum iri.	

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, lēgere, *To read.**Indicative Mood.**Sing.**Plur.*

1. 2. 3. 1. 2. 3.

Pres. Leg-ō, -is, -it; -īmus, -ītis, -unt.*Imp.* Leg-ēbam, ebas, ebat; -ebāmus, -ebatis, -ebant.*Perf.* Lēg-i, -isti, -it; -īmus, -istis, -ērunt, v -ēre.*Plu.* Lēg-eram, -eras, -erat; -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.*Fut.* Lēg-am, -es, -et; -ēmus, -etis, -ent.*Subjunctive Mood.**Pres.* Lēg-am, -as, -at; -āmus, -atis, -ant.*Imp.* Lēg-erem, -eres, -eret; -ērēmus, -erētis, -erent.*Perf.* Lēg-erim, -eris, -erit; -erīmus, -erītis, -erint.*Plu.* Lēg-isse, -isses, -isset; -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.*Fut.* Lēg-ero, -eris, -erit; -erīmus, -eritis, -erint.*Imperative Mood.*2. 3. 2. 3.
Pres. Lēg-e, vel -ito, -ito; -ite, vel -itōte, -unto.*Infinitive.* *Participles.* *Gerunds.* *Supines.**Pres.* Lēg-ere, *Pr.* Leg-ens. Lēg-endum. 1. Lectum.*Perf.* Lēg-isse. *Fut.* Lec-tūrus. Leg-endi. 2. Lec-tu.*Fut.* Esse lectūrus, -a, -um, Leg endo, &c.

Fuisse lectūrus, -a, um.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Lēgor, lectus, lēgi. *Te be read.**Indicative Mood.**Sing.**Plur.**Pr.* Lēg-or -eris, -itur; -īmur, -imīni, -antur.*Im.* Lēg-ēbar, -ebāris, -ebātur; -ebamur, -ebamīni, -ebantur.*Per.* Lectus sum vel fui, lectus es vel fuisti, &c.*Plu.* Lectus eram vel fueram, lectus eras vel fueras, &c.*Fut.* Lēgar, -eris, -ētur; -ēmur, -emīni, -entur.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> Lēg-ar,	-āris, vel āre,	-atur;	-amur,	-amini,	-antur.
<i>Im.</i> Lēg-ēret,	-crēris, vel crēre,	-ēretur;	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.
<i>Perf.</i> Lēctus sim vel fuerim, lēctus sis vel fueris, &c.					
<i>Plu.</i> Lēctus essem v. fuisset, lēctus esses v. fuissetis, &c.					
<i>Fut.</i> Lēctus fuero, lēctus fueris, lēctus fuerit, &c.					

Imperative Mood.

<i>2.</i>	<i>3.</i>	<i>2.</i>	<i>3.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Lēg-ēre, vel -itor,	-itor;	-imīni,	-untor,
<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Participles.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i> Lēg-i.	<i>Perf.</i> Lec-tus,	-a,	-um,
<i>Perf.</i> Esse v. fuisse lēctus,	-a,	-um.	<i>Fut.</i> Lēg-endus,
<i>Fut.</i> Lēctum iri.			-a,
			-um.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, *To hear.*

Indicative Mood.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>1.</i>	<i>2.</i>	<i>3.</i>	<i>1.</i>	<i>2.</i>	<i>3.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-io,	-is	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.
<i>Im.</i> Aud-iēbam,	-iebās,	-iebat;	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-īvi,	-ivisti,	-ivit;	-ivimus,	-ivistis,	-ivērunt, vel -ivēre.
<i>Pl.</i> Aud-ivēram,	-iveras,	-iverat;	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.
<i>Fu.</i> Aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.
<i>Im.</i> Aud-īrem,	-ires,	-iret;	-irēmus,	-iretis,	-irent.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-iverim,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.
<i>Pl.</i> Aud-ivissem,	-ivisses,	-ivisset;	-ivissemus,	-ivissetis,	-ivissent.
<i>Fu.</i> Aud-ivero,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.

Imperative Mood.

<i>2.</i>	<i>3.</i>	<i>2.</i>	<i>3.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-i, vel -īto,	-īto;	-īte, vel -itōte,	-iunto.
			<i>Infinitive.</i>

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-īre.	<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum, 1.	Auditum.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-ivisse.	<i>Fut.</i> Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi.	2. Auditū.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse auditurus, -a, -um,	Aud-iendo, &c.		
Fuisse auditurus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior, Auditus, Audiri, *To be heard.*

*Indicative Mood.**Sing.**Plur.*

<i>Pr.</i> Aud-ior,	-īris, vel -īre,	-ītur;	-īmur;	-īmini,	-iuntur.
<i>Im.</i> Aud-ībar,	-iebāris, vel -iebāre,	-iebatur;	-iebamur,	-iebamini,	-iebantur.
<i>Perf.</i> Auditus sum vel fui, Auditus es v. fuisti, &c.					
<i>Plu.</i> Auditus es, m. v. fueram, Auditus eras v. fueras, &c.					

Fut. Aud-iar,

-iēris, vel -iēre,	-iētur;	-iemur,	-ieminī,	-ientur.
-----------------------	---------	---------	----------	----------

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iar;	-iāris, vel -iāre,	-iatur;	-iamur,	-iamini,	-iantur.
<i>Im.</i> Aud-īrer,	-ireris, vel -irere,	-iretur;	-iremur,	-iremini,	-ireatur.

Perf. Auditus sim vel fuerim, Auditus sis v. fueris, &c.

Plu. Auditus essem v. fuissē, Auditus esset v. fuisset, &c.

Fut. Auditus fuero, Auditus fueris, &c.

Imperative Mood.

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Aud-īre, vel -ītor,	-ītor;	īmini,	-iuntor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

<i>Pres.</i> Aud-īri,	<i>Perf.</i> Aud-ītus, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Esse vel fuisse auditus, -a, -um, <i>Fut.</i> Aud-icendus, -a, -um.	
<i>Fut.</i> Auditum iri.	

FORMATION OF VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive; according to the following rhyme:

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.

2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ſſe*, and *ſſem*.

3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.

4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*; *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *di*; as,

AM-O, -em; AMAVI, -eram, -erim; -iſſem, -ero, -iſſe; AMAT-UM, -u, -urus, -us; AM-ARE, -abam, -abo, -arem, -a, -ans, -andum, di, do; -andus.

DOC-EO, -eam; DOC-UI, -ueram, &c.; DOCT-UM, -u, -urus, -us; DOCE-RE, -ebam, -ebo, -erem, -e, -ens, -endum; di, do, -endus.

LEG-O, -am; LEG-I, -eram, &c.; LECT-UM, -u, -urus, -us; LEG-ĒRE, -ebam, -erem, -e, -ens, -endum, &c.

AUD-IO, -iam; AUD-IVI, -iveram, &c.; AUDIT-UM, -u, -urus, -us; AUD-IRE, -iebam, -irem, -i, -iens, -iendum, di, do, -iendus.—So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*; as, CAP-IO, -iam; CEP-I, -eram, &c.; CAPT-UM, -u, &c.; CAP-ĒRE, -iebam, -erem, -e, -iens, -iendum, di, do, -iendus.

The paſſive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

But it is much more eaſy and natural to form all the parts of a verb from the preſent and perfect of the indicative, and from the ſupine; thus,

AM-O, -ābam, -ābo, -em, -ārom, -a or -āto, -āre, -ans, -andum, di, do, &c. -andus:

AMAV-I, -ēram, -ērim, -iſſem, -ēro, -iſſe; AMĀT-UM, -u, -us, -ūrus.

So Doc-EO, -ēbam, -ēbo, -eam, -erem, -e or -eto, -ēre, -eus, -endum, di, &c. -endus; Docu-I, -ēram, -ērim, -iſſem, -ēro, -iſſe; Doct-UM, -u, -us, -ūrus:

LĒG-O, -ēbam, -am, es, et, &c. -am, as, at, &c. -erem, -e or -ito, -ēre, -ens, -endum, &c. -endus:

LĒG-I, -ēram, -ērim, -iſſem, -ēro, -iſſe, &c.: LECT-UM, -u, -us, -urus:

CĀP-IO, -iebam, -iam, ies, iet, &c. -iam, ias, &c. -erem, -e or -ito, -ēre, -iens, -iendum, -iendus: CEP-I, -ēram, -ērim, -iſſem, -ēro, -iſſe; CAPT-UM, -u, -us, -ūrus.

AUD-IO, -iebam, -iam, -irem, -i or -ito, -ire, -iens, &c. AUDĪV-I -ēram, &c.

A verb is commonly ſaid to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, becauſe from them all the reſt are derived.

The firſt perſon of the Preſent of the Indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, becauſe from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the ſame, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am*, in *am-o*. The reſt are called the *Termination*; as, *ābāmus* in *ām-ābāmus*.

All the letters which come before *-āre, -ēre, -īre, or -ire,* of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

SIGNIFICATION of the TENSES in the various Moods.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo,* I love, do love, or am loving; *amabam,* I loved, did love, or was loving; *amābo,* I shall or will love, or shall be loving, &c.

Amavi, I loved, did love, or have loved, *that is,* have done with loving; *amaveram,* I had loved, or had done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice; *Amor,* I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved; *amābar,* I was loved, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum,* and the participle perfect; thus,

Indicative Mood.

Perfect. *Amatus sum,* I am, or have been loved, or *ostener,* I was loved; *Amatus fui,* I have been loved, or I was loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram,* I was or had been loved; *Amatus fueram,* I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mood.

Perfect. *Amatus sim,* I may be or may have been loved; *Amatus fuerim,* I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus essem,* I might, could, would, or should be or have been loved;

Amatus fuissem, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or I had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero,* I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mood, both active and passive; thus,

Amaturus sum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.

Amatus ero, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus est,* he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est,* she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est,* it was loved, when applied to a thing: *amati sunt,* they were loved, when

applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, as far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amavi*: so *amor*, and *amatus sum*, I am loved; *amabar*, and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amex*, and *amatus sum*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mood may be variously rendered, according to their connection with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English, as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligant, qualis sit*, As if they understood, what kind of a person he is, Cic. *In facinus jurasse putet*, You would think &c. Ov. M. 1, 242. *Eloquar an sileam?* Shall I speak out, or be silent? Virg. A. 3, 39. *Nec vos arguerim, Teucri*, for *urguam*, ih. 11. 164. *Si quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, for *peribo*, Ter. Heaut. 2, 3, 75. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperare dolorem; Et perferre, soror, potero*: for *potuissem* and *possem*, Virg. A. 4, 419. *Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? Ov. Tr. 3, 7, 43. *Prediceres mihi*, you should have told me before hand, Ter. And. 4, 4, 54. *At tu distis, Albane, moneres*, ought to have stood to your word, Virg. A. 8, 643. *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, Juv. 15, 21. *Hæseris ensis*, the sword would have destroyed, Virg. A. 2, 600. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that, Cic.—The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse bovet*, *luctuque resurgit*, for *resurgit*, Virg. A. 2, 12. *Fuerat melius*, for *fuisset*, id. *Invidia dilapsu erat*, for *fuisset*, Sall. Jug. 27. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *venisti*, Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Epeesum*, for *navigabo*, id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentis*, for *esses* and *sentires*, Ter. And. 2, 1, 10. *Cato affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphare*, for *triumphaturum esse*, Cic. *Persuadet Castico, ut occuparet*, for *occupet*, Cæf. B. G. 1, 3. *Mox ego huc revertor*, for *revertar*, Ter. And. 3, 2, 5. add. Plaut. Cist. 2, 3, 86.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet* or *fecerit*, unless he do this, Ter. Ad. 3, 3, 40. And. 3, 3, 19, &c.

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do it; *valebis*, *meque amabis*, farewell, and love me. Cic.

The present time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mood, we must put an accusative, and some other verb, before each of them: thus,

- Dicit me scribere*; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.
Dixit me scribere; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.
Dicit me scripsisse; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.
Dixit me scripsisse; he said that I had written.
Dicit me scripturum esse; he says that I will write.
Dixit nos scripturos esse; he said that we would write.
Dicit nos scripturos fuisse; he says that we would have written.
Dicit literas scribi; he says that letters are written, writing, a-writing, in writing, or in being written.
Dixit literas scribi; he said that letters were writing, or written.
Dicit literas scriptas esse; he says that letters are or were written.
Dicit literas scriptas fuisse; he says that letters have been written.
Dixit literas scriptas fuisse; he said that letters had been written.
Dicit literas scriptas iri; he says that letters will be written.
Dixit literas scriptas iri; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*; is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrasis* or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore vel futurum esse ut scribant*,—*ut litera scribantur*; I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore vel futurum esse ut scriberent*,—*ut litera scriberentur*; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse, ut litera scriberentur*; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs that want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed:

- Scribendum est mihi, puero, nobis, pueris, &c. literas*; I, the boy, we, the boys, &c. must write letters.
Scribendum fuit mihi, puero, nobis, &c. I must have written, &c.
Scribendum erit mihi; I shall be obliged to write.
Scio scribendum esse mihi literas; I know that I must write letters.
 — *scribendum fuisse mihi*; — that I must have written.
Dixit scribendum fore mihi; He said that I would be obliged to write.
 —Or with the participle in *du*.

Literæ sunt scribendæ mihi, puero, hominibus, &c. or a me, puero, &c.; letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So *literæ scribendæ erant, fuerunt, erunt, &c.* *Si literæ scribendæ sint, essent, forent, &c.* *Scio literas scribendas esse*; I know that letters are to be or must be written. *Scivi literas scribendas fuisse*; I knew that letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

Note. Most of the simple tenses of a verb in Latin may be expressed, as in English, by the participle and the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *Sum amans* for *amo* I am loving; *eram amans*, for *amabam, &c.*; *Fui te carens*, for *carui*, Plaut. *Ut sis sciens*, for *ut scias*, Ter. And. 4, 4, 36. Only the Tenses in the active which come from the preterite, and those in the passive which come from the present, cannot be properly expressed in this manner; because the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle present passive. This manner of expression however does not often occur,

FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE, GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as,

Voco, vocāvī, vocātum, to call: so *revoco, revocāvī, revocātum*, to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pepuli*, to beat; *repello, repuli*; never *repēpuli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do, flo, disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule; thus, *ēdisco, ēdidici*, to get by heart; *dēposco, dēpōposci*, to demand; &c. So *præcurro, præcūcurri*; *rēpungo, rēpūpūgi*; also sometimes several other compounds of *curro*; as, *concurro, concurri* or *concūcurri*, &c.

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *fācio, fēci. factum*, to make; *perficio, perfēci, perfectum*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*; also the compounds of *bābeo, plāceo, sāpio, sālio*, and *stātuo*, observe the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine; as, *lābo, labāre*, to fall; *polleo, -ere*, to be able, &c.

SPECIAL RULES.

First Conjugation.

Verbs of the first conjugation have *āvī* in the preterite, and *ātum* in the supine; as,

<i>Creo, creāvī, creātum</i> , to create;	<i>pāro, pārāvī, pārātum</i> , to prepare.—So,	
<i>ābundo</i> , to abound.	<i>āriēto</i> , to publicize.	<i>Būlūlo</i> , to boot like an owl.
<i>Accūso</i> , to charge with a crime.	<i>Apto</i> , to fit.	
<i>ādumbro</i> , to shade, to delineate.	<i>āro</i> , to plough.	<i>Cāco</i> , to go to stool.
<i>Ādificio</i> , to build.	<i>āscio</i> , to cut or hew.	<i>Cæco</i> , to blind or dazzle.
<i>Āstimo</i> , to value.	<i>āšēvēro</i> , to affirm.	<i>Cælo</i> , to carve.
<i>Ambūlo</i> , to walk.	<i>Ausculto</i> , to listen.	<i>Calceo</i> , to put on shoes, to shoe.
<i>Amplio</i> , to enlarge, to put off a cause.	<i>Auctōro</i> , to engage for service.	<i>Calcitro</i> , to kick.
<i>ānimo</i> , to encourage.	<i>Autūmo</i> , to suppose.	<i>Calco</i> , to tread.
<i>Anticipo</i> , to anticipate.	<i>āverrunco</i> , to avert.	<i>Cāligo</i> , to be dark or dim sighted.
<i>Antiquo</i> , i. e. <i>antiqua probo</i> , to reject a law.	<i>Bajūlo</i> , to carry.	<i>Carmīno</i> , to card wool.
<i>Appello</i> , to call.	<i>Bālo</i> , to beat.	<i>Castigo</i> , to chastise.
<i>Appropinquo</i> , to approach.	<i>Bāsis</i> , to kiss.	<i>Castro</i> , to cut off.
	<i>Bello</i> , to war.	<i>Cēlebro</i> , to make famous.
	<i>Ben</i> , to bliss.	<i>Cēlo</i> , to conceal.
	<i>Blātēro</i> , to babble.	<i>Centūrio</i> , & <i>concentūrio</i> ,
	<i>Boo</i> , to bellow.	

- türío, to divide into companies.
- Certo, to strive, to fight.
- Cesso, to cease.
- Clāmo, to cry.
- Claudico, to limp.
- Coāgūlo, to curdle.
- Cōgito, to think.
- Collineo, to aim at, to hit the mark.
- Cōlo, to strain.
- Communico, to impart.
- Compāro, to compare.
- Compensō, to make amends.
- Compērendino, to put off a cause to the day after to-morrow.
- Compilo, to pile up, to pillage.
- Concilio, to gain, to reconcile.
- Concordo, to agree.
- Consūto, rēfūto, to disprove.
- Congēlo, to freeze.
- Considēro, to consider.
- Contāmīno, to pollute.
- Cōpūlo, to couple.
- Corrūgo, to wrinkle.
- Corralco, to brandish.
- Crēmo, to burn.
- Creo, to create.
- Cribo, to sift.
- Crispo, to curl.
- Crūcio, to torment.
- Cūro, to care.
- Damno, to condemn.
- Décimo, to take the tenth part, to punish every tenth man.
- Declāro, to declare.
- Dēcollo, to lose a thing from off the neck, to behead.
- Dēcōro, to adorn.
- Dēcūrio, to divide soldiers into files or small companies, or citizens into wards.
- Dēdicō, to dedicate.
- Dēlecto, to delight.
- Dēlibero, to deliberate.
- Dēlineo, to trace, to chalk out.
- Dēliro, to doat, to rave.
- Dēlumbo, to weaken.
- Dēsīdēro, to desire.
- Dēsōlo, to lay waste.
- Destino, to design.
- Dico, to dedicate.
- Discepto, disputo, to debate, to dispute.
- Disippo, to scatter.
- Dōlo, to bew or cut.
- Dōno, to present.
- Duplico, to double.
- Edūco, to bring up.
- Ejūlo, to wail, to weep.
- Emancipo, to free a son from the power of his father.
- Emendo, to amend.
- Enucleo, to take out the kernel, to explain.
- Enodo, to unknit, to explain.
- Ēquito, to ride.
- Errō, to wonder.
- Examino, to examine, to try.
- Exantlo, to empty, to endure.
- Exāro, to plough up, to scrawl, to write fast.
- Exentēro, to take out the guts.
- Existimo, to think.
- Explōro, to search.
- Extrico, to disentangle.
- Fabrīco, to frame.
- Fascīno, to bewitch.
- Fātigo, to weary.
- Fermentō, to leaven with dough, or ferment.
- Festino, to hasten.
- Flāgito, to dun.
- Flāgro, to be on fire.
- Flo, to blow.
- Fōcillo, rēfocillo, to cherish, to warm.
- Fōdico, to pierce or push.
- Fōro, to bore.
- Fortūno, to prosper.
- Fragro, to smell sweetly.
- Fraudo, to defraud.
- Frio, to crumble.
- Frustrō, & -or, to disappoint.
- Fūco, to colour, to paint.
- Fūgo, to put to flight.
- Fundo, to found.
- Gēnēro, to beget.
- Grāvo, to weigh down.
- Gūberno, to govern.
- Gusto, to taste.
- Hābito, to dwell.
- Hāsīto, to doubt.
- Hālo, to breathe.
- Hio, to gape.
- Hōnoro, to honour.
- Jacto, to boast, to brag.
- Jento, to breakfast.
- Ignōro, to be ignorant.
- Immōlo, to sacrifice.
- Inpēro, to command.
- Impetro, to obtain.
- Inauro, to gild.
- Inchoo, to begin.
- Inclino, to incline.
- Indāgo, to trace out.
- Indico, to brew.
- Inquīno, to pollute.
- Inspico, to sharpen at the end.
- Instauro, to renew.
- Instīgo, to push on.
- Intercālo, to insert one or more days, to make the year agree with the course of the sun.
- Intro, to enter.
- Invito, to invite.
- Irrādio, to shine upon.
- Irrito, to provoke.
- Itēro, to do again.
- Jūbilo, to shout for joy.
- Jurgo,

Jurgo, & -or, to chide or scold.	Narro, to tell.	Prōbo, to approve.
Jūro, to swear.	Nausco, to be sea-sick.	Procrastīno, to delay.
Lāboro, to labour.	Nāvigo, to sail.	Profligo, to rout.
Lācēro, to tear.	Nāvo, to act vigorously.	Prōmulgo, to publish.
Lachrymo, & -or, to weep.	Nēgo, to deny.	Propāgo, to propagate.
Lāvigo, to smooth or polish.	Nictō, to wink.	Prōpēro, to hasten.
Lallo, to sing as a nurse to a child.	No, to swim.	Propīno, to drink to.
Lānio, to tear.	Nōde, to knot, rar. act.	Prōtēlo, to chase away.
Latro, to bark.	Nōmīno, to name.	Publico, to publish, to confiscate.
Laxo, to loose.	Nōto, to mark.	Pugno, to fight.
Lēgo, to send as an am- bassador, to bequeath.	Nōvo, to renew.	Pullūlo, to bud.
Lēvo, to lighten.	Nūdo, to make bare.	Purgo, to cleanse.
Lībo, to taste.	Nūmēro, to count.	Pūto, to think.
Lībēro, to free.	Nuncūpo, to call.	Quadro, to square.
Līgo, to bind.	Nuntio, to tell.	Rēcūpēro, to recover.
Līquo, to melt.	Nūto, to nod.	Rēcūso, to refuse.
Litigo, to quarrel.	Obscuro, to beseech.	Refrīgēro, to cool.
Līto, to appease by sa- crifice.	Obsēro, to lock.	Rēgēlo, to thaw.
Lūcubro, to sit up late, to study.	Obtempēro, to obey.	Rēpāro, to repair.
Lustro, to survey.	Obtrunco, to kill.	Rēpraesentō, to resent- ble, to brew; to pay money in advance.
Luxo, to put out of joint.	Obtūro, to stop up.	Rēsēro, to unlock.
Macto, to slay, to sacrifi- ce.	Occo, to barrow.	Rīgo, to water.
Mādo, to command, to commit.	ōdōro, to perfume.	Rōgo, to ask.
Māno, to flow.	ōnēro, to load.	Rōto, to wheel about.
Mātūro, to hasten.	Opto, to wish.	Ruōto, & -or, to belch.
Mēdicō, & -or, to cure.	Orbo, to deprive.	Rūmīno, to chew the
Mēmōro, to tell.	Ordīno, to put in order.	Runco, to weed. (cud.
Meo, to go or pass.	Orno, to deck, to adorn.	Sacro, to consecrate.
Mēridio, & -or, to sleep at noon.	ōro, to beg.	Sāgīno, to fatten.
Migro, to remove.	Osōto, & -or, to yawn, to be listless.	Sāhvo, to spit or flaven.
Milito, to be a soldier.	Pāco, to subdue.	Salto, to dance.
Mīnistro, to serve.	Palpito, to beat or throb.	Sālūto, to salute.
Mītigo, to pacify.	Palpo, to stroke, to gain by flattery.	Sāno, to heal.
Monstro, to show or tell.	Pārento, to perform fun- eral rites, to revenge.	Sātio, to satisfy.
Mulco, to beat.	Pāro, to prepare.	Sātūro, to fill, to glut.
Multo, & -cto, to fine.	Patro, to perform.	Scārifico, to lance, or open.
Muslo, & -ito, to mutter.	Pecco, to sin.	Screo, to hawk, or retch in spitting.
Mūtīlo, to maim.	Pēnetro, to pierce.	Sēcūndo, to prosper.
Mūto, to change.	Persēvēro, to continue constant.	Sēdo, to allay.
	Pio, to expiate.	Sēpāro, to sever.
	Plāco, to appease.	Servo, to keep.
	Plōro, to bewail.	Sībilo, to hiss.
	Porto, to carry.	Sicco, to dry.
	Postūlo, to demand.	Signo, to mark out.
	Prīvo, to deprive.	Significo,

Significo, to mean, to give notice.	Sulco, to furrow.	Vasto, to lay waste.
Simūlo, to pretend.	Sūpĕro, to overtake.	Vellico, to pluck, to twitch or pinch; to taunt or rail at.
Sōcio, to match, to join.	Suppĕdĭto, to afford.	Vĕlo, to cover.
Sōlĕito, to stir up, to disquiet.	Sūsurro, to whisper.	Ventĭlo, to fan.
Somnio, to dream.	Tardo, to stop.	Verbĕro, to whip.
Speĕto, to behold.	Taxo, to rate, to reprove.	Vestĭgo, to search for.
Spĕro, to hope.	Tĕmĕro, to defile.	Vibro, to brandish, to shake.
Spĭro, to breathe.	Tempĕro, to temper.	Vĭduo, to deprive.
Spōlio, to rob.	Tĕnuo, to make small.	Vĭgĭlo, to watch.
Spūmo, to foam.	Tĕrebro, to bore.	Vĭndĭco, to claim, to revenge.
Stagno, to stand as water.	Termino, to bound.	Vĭolo, to violate.
Stillo, to drop.	Titillo, to tickle.	Vĭtio, to spoil.
Stimūlo, to goad, to vex.	Tĭtūbo, to flatter.	Vĭto, to sbun.
Stĭpo, to stuff, to guard.	Tōlĕro, to bear.	Vĭtĭpĕro, to blame.
Strangūlo, to strangle.	Trāno, to swim over.	Vōco, to call.
Strĭgo, to breathe, or rest in work, as oxen or horses do.	Trĭpūdĭo, to caper.	Vōlo, to fly.
Sūdo, to sweat.	Trĭumpho, to triumph.	Vōro, to devour.
Suffōco, to strangle.	Trūcido, to kill.	Vulgo, to spread abroad.
Suffōco, to burn incense.	Turbo, to disturb.	Vulnero, to wound.
Sugillo, to taunt or jeer.	ŭlūlo, to bowl.	
	Umbro, to shade.	
	Vācillo, to waver.	
	Vāco, to want, to be at leisure.	

Exc. 1. *Do, dĕdi, dātum, dāre, to give.* So *venundo, to sell; circundo, to surround; pessundo, to overthrow; satĭsdo, to give surety; venundĕdi, venundātum, venundāre, &c.* The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

Sto, stĕti, statum, to stand. Its compounds have *stĭti, stĭtum*, and oftener *stātum*; as *præsto, præstĭti, præstĭtum, or præstātum, to excel, to perform.* So *ad-, ante-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-sto.*

Exc. 2. *Lāvo, lāvĭ, lōtum, lautum, lāvātum, to wash.*

Pōto, pōtavi, pōtum, or pōtātum, to drink.

Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, to help; fut. part. juvaturus. So *adjūvo.*

Exc. 3. *Cūbo, cūbui, cūbitum, to ly.* So, *ac-, ex-, oc-, rĕ-cūbo.* The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

Dōmo, dōmui, dōmĭtum, to subdue. So *ĕ-, per-dōmo.*

Sōno, sōnui, sōnĭtum, to found. So *af-, circum-, con-, dif-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, rĕ-sōno.*

Tōno, tōnui, tōnĭtum, to thunder. So *at-, circum-, in-, superin-, re-tōno.* Horace has *intōnatus, epod. 2, 51.*

Vĕto, vĕtui, vĕtĭtum, to forbid.

Crĕpo, crĕpui, crĕpĭtum, to make a noise. So *con-, in-, per-, rĕ-crĕpo*: *dis-crĕpo* has rather *dis-crĕpāvi*.

Exc. 4. *Fricō, fricui, frictum*, to rub. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-fricō*. But some of these have also *atum*.

Sĕco, sĕcui, sĕctum, to cut. So *circum-, con-, dĕ-, dif-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, rĕ-, sub-sĕco*.

Nĕco, nĕcui, or nĕcovi, nĕcātum, to kill. So *inter-, ĕ-nĕco*; but these have oftener *ĕctum*; *eneĕctum, interneĕctum*.

Mĭco, mĭcui, — to glitter, to shine. So *inter-, prō-, mĭco*. *Emĭco*, has *ĕmĭcui, ĕmĭcātum*: *dĭmĭco, dimĭcāvi, dĭmĭcātum*, rarely, *dimĭcui*, to fight.

Exc. 5. These three want both pret. and sup. *lābo*, to fall or faint; *nexo*, to bind; and *plico*, to fold.

Plico, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions *re, sub*, has *āvi, ātum*; as, *dup-lico, duplicāvi, duplicatum*, to double. So *multi-, sup- re-plico*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *ĭtum*; as *applicō, applicui, applicĭtum*, or *-āvi, ātum*, to apply. So *im-, com-plico*. *Explico*, to unfold, has commonly *explicui, explicĭtum*; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, *expli-āvi, explicātum*.

Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *ĭtum*; as *hābeo, habui, habitum*, to have.—So,

Ādhībeo, to admit, to use.

Cohībeo, inhībeo, to restrain.

Exhībeo, to show, to give.

Pĕrhībeo, to say, to give out.

Prohībeo, to hinder.

Posthabeo, to value less.

Præbeo, to afford.

Rĕdhībeo, to return or take back a thing that was sold, for some fault.

Dĕbeo, to owe.

Mĕrĕo, to deserve: *Con-, de-, e-, per-, pro-mĕrĕo*, or *mereor*.

Mōneo, to admonish: *Ad-, com-, prae-mōneo*.

Terreo, to terrify: *Abs-, con-, de-, ex-, per-terreo*.

Dirĭbeo, to count over, to distribute.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the supine; as, *āreo, ārui*, to be dry; *albeo, ui*, to be white.—So,

Ācco, & ſco, to be sour.

Candĕo, to be white.

Calleo, to be hard.

Cāneo, to be heavy.

Clāreo, to be bright.

Ēgeo, indigeo, to want.

Ēmĭneo, to stand above

others.

Flaccĕo, to wither.

Flōreo, to flourish.

Fatĕo, to sink.

Frenĕo, to gnash the teeth.

Fronĕo, to bear leaves.

Horreo, to be rough.

Hūmeo, to be wet.

Immĭneo, to hang over.

Languĕo, to languish.

Liquĕo,

Liqueo, licui, to melt, to be clear.	Pâteo, to be open.	Studeo, to favour.
Măceo, to be lean.	Puteo, to stink.	Stupeo, to be amazed.
Mădco, to be wet.	Putreo, to rot.	Splendeo, to shine.
Marceo, to wither.	Ranceo, to be mouldy.	Têpeo, to be warm.
Muceo, to be mouldy.	Rigeo, to be stiff.	Torpeo, to be benumbed.
Nitco, to shine.	Rubeo, to be red.	Tumeo, to swell.
Palleo, to be pale.	Squaleo, to be foul.	Vigco, to be strong.
	Sordeo, to be nasty.	Vitico, to be green.

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Valeo*, to be in health; and *æqui-, con-, e-, in-, præ-valeo*: *Placeo*, to please; and *com, per-placeo*: *displaceo*, to displease: *Careo*, to want; *Pareo*, to appear, to obey; and *ap-, com-pareo*: *Jaceo*, to lie; and *ad-, circum-, inter-, ob-, præ-, sub-, super-jaceo*: *Caleo*, to be warm; and *con-, in-, ob-, per-, re-caleo*: *Noceo*, to hurt; *Doleo*, to be grieved; and *con-, de-, in-, per-doleo*: *Co'leo*, to grow together: *Liceo*, which in the active signifies, to be lawful, to be valued; and, what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price: *Lateo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine, *deliteo, inter-, sub-lateo*: as likewise do those of *Taceo, -cui, -citur*, to be silent, *con- ob-, rê-liceo, -icui, —*.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Timeo, -ui*, to fear; *Sileo, -ui*, to conceal; *Arceo, -cui*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo, exercui, exercitum*, to exercise. So *co-erceo*, to restrain.

Exc. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

Jubeo, jussi, jissum, to order. So *fidē-jubeo*, to bail, to be surety for.

Sorbeo, sorbui, sorp'um, to sup. So *ab-sorbeo*, to suck in; *ex-, rê-sorbeo*. We also find *absorpsi, exorpsi*: *Exsorptum, rêsorptum*, are not in use.

Duceo, docui, doctum, to teach. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, sub-duceo*.

Misceo, miscui, missum or *mixtum*, to mix. So *ad-, com-, in-, inter-, per-, rê-misceo*.

Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, to streak, to soothe. So *ad-, circum-, com, de-, per-, rê-mulceo*.

Luceo, luxi, — to shine. So *al-, circum-, col, di-, ë-, il-, inter-, per-, or pel-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, trans-luceo*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO*:

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, to dine.

Video, vīdi, vīsum, to see. So *invideo*, to envy; *per-, præ-, pro-, revideo*.

Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, to sit. So *es-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, ob-, per-, pos-, præ-, rē-, sub-sideo*: *Circumsideo*, or *circumsēdeo*, *supersēdeo*. But *dē-, dis-, per-, præ-, rē-, sub-sideo*, seem to want the supine.

Strideo, strīdi, — to make a noise.

Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum, to hang. So *de-, im-, pro-, super-pendeo*.

Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum, to bite. So *ad-, t. m-, de-, ob-, præ-, re-mordeo*.

Spondeo, spōndi, sponsum, to promise. So *de-, re-spondeo*.

Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, to clip. So *at-, circum-, de-tondeo*.

But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first syllable; thus, *dependi, remordi, respondi, attondi, &c.*

Rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, to laugh. So *ar-, de-, ir-, sub-rīdeo*.

Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, to advise. So *dis-, per-suādeo*.

Ardeo, arsi, arsum, to burn. So *ex-, in-, ob-ardeo*.

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO*:

Augeo, auxi, auctum, to increase. So *ad-, ex-augeo*.

Lūgeo, luxi, — to mourn. So *e-, pro-, sub-lūgeo*.

Frīgeo, frixi, — to be cold. So *per-, re-frīgeo*.

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, to wipe. So *abs-, circum-, de-, ex-, per-tergeo*.

Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsam, or *mulctum*, to milk. So *e-, im-mulgeo*.

Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, to grant, to indulge.

Urgeo, urxi, — to press. So *ad-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-, super-urgeo*.

Fulgeo, fulsi, — to shine. So *af-, circum-, con-, ef-, inter-, præ-, re-, super-fulgeo*.

Turgeo, tursi, — to swell. *Algeo, alsi, —* to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO*:

Vīco; vīcvi, vīctum, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

Cīco, (cīvi) cītum, to stir up, to rouse. So *ac-, con-, ex-, in-, per-cīco*. *Cīvi* comes from *cīo* of the fourth conjugation.

Fleo, flēvi, flētum, to weep. So *af-, de-fleo*.

Compleo, complēvi, complētum, to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo*; *de-, ex-, im-, adim-, op-, re-, sup-pleo*.

Dēleo,

Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum, to destroy, to blot out.

ōleo, to smell, has *ōlui, ōlitum*. So likewise its compounds which have a similar signification; *ob-*, *per-*, *red-*, *sub-ōleo*. But such of the compounds as have a different signification make *ēvi* and *ētum*; thus *exōleo, exōlēvi, exōlētum*, to fade. So *inōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, or *-itum*, to grow into use; *obōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, to grow out of use. *Abōleo*, to abolish, has *ābōlēvi, ābōlītum*; and *ādōleo*, to grow up, to burn, *adōlēvi, adultum*.

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO, QUEO, REO*, and *SEO*.

Māneo, mansi, mansum, to stay. So *per-*, *rē-māneo*.

Neo, nēvi, nētum, to spin. So *per-neo*.

Tēneo, tēnui, tentum, to hold. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ob-*, *re-*, *suf-tineo, -tīnui, -tentum*. But *astineo, pertinēo*, are not used in the supine; and seldom *abstineo*.

Torqueo, torsti, tortum, to throw, to whirl, to twist. Thus, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *re-torqueo, -torsti, -tortum*.

Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, to stick. Thus, *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *sub-hæreo, -hæsi, -hæsum*.

Torreo, torrui, tostum, to roast. So *exterreo*.

Censeo, censui, censum, to judge. So *ac-*, *per-*, *re-censeo*, to review; *succenseo*, to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO* have *vi, tum*; as, *mōveo, mōvi, mōtum*, to move; *Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum*, to cherish. So *con-*, *rē-fōveo*. So *vōveo, vōvi, vōtum*, to vow, or wish; and *dēvōveo*.

Fāveo, to favour; has *fāvī, fautum*; and *cāveo*, to be ware of; *cāvī, cautum*. So *præ-cāveo, -cāvī, -cautum*.

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine; as, *pāveo, pāvī*, to be afraid: whence *ex-pāveo*.

Ferveo, to boil, to be hot, makes *ferbui*. So *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *rē-ferveo, -ferbui, — -ere*.

Conniveo, to wink, has *cannīvi* and *connixi*.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo*, to suck milk, *liveo*, to be black and blue; *scæteo*; to abound; *renideo*, to shine; *mareo*, to be sorrowful; *āveo*, to desire; *polleo*, to be able; *flūveo*, to be yellow; *denseo*, to grow thick; *glabreo*, to be smooth or bare. To these add *calveo*, to be bald; *cēveo*, to wag the tail as dogs do when they fawn on one; *hēbeo*, to be dull; *ūveo*, to be moist; and some others.

Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

10.

1. *Fācio, fēci, factum*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a*: *lucrī-, magnī-, ārē-, cālē-, mādē-, tēpē-, bēnē-, mālē-, sātis-fācio, &c.* But those which change *a* into *i*, have *ēctum*; as, *afficio, affēci, affectum*. So, *con-, de-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, prae-, pro-, re-, sus-ficio*. Note; *FACIO*, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a*; but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation; as, *Amplifico, sacrifico, terrifico, magnifico; gratificor*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up; *lūdificor*, to mock.

Jācio, jēci, jactum, to throw. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, superin-, tra-jicio*; in the supine *-ēctum*.

The compounds of *spēcio* and *lācio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi*, and *ēctum*; as, *aspicio, aspexi, aspectum*, to behold. So *circum-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, intro-, per-, pro-, re-, retro-, su-spicio, -spexi, -spectum*.

Allicio, allexi, allectum, to allure. So *il-, pel-licio*; but *ēlicio*, to draw out, has *elicui, elicūctum*.

2. *Fōdio, fōdi, fossum*, to dig, to delve. So *ad-, circum-, con-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, re-, sus-, transfōdio*.

Fūgio, fūgi, fugitum, to fly. So *au-, (for ab-,) con-, de-, dis-, ef-, per-, pro-, re-, sus-, subter-, transfūgio*.

3. *Cāpio, cēpi, captum*, to take. So *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, prae-, re-, sus-cāpio*, (in the supine *-ceptum*;) and *ante-cāpio*.

Rāpio, rāpui, raptum, to pull or snatch. So *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, prae-, pro-, sur-rāpio, rāpui, -reptum*.

Sāpio, sāpui, —, to favour, to be wise. So *consipio, consipui, —* to be well in one's wits; *desipio, desipui*, to be foolish; *resipio, resipui*, to come to one's wits.

Cūpio, cūpivi, cūpitum, to desire. So *con-, dis-, per-cūpio*.

4. *Pārio, pēpēri, paritum*, or *partum*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

Quatio, quassi, quassum, to shake: but *quassi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi, cussum*, as, *concutio, concussi, concussum*. So *de-, dis-, ex-, in- per-, re-, reper-, succutio, -cussi, cussum*.

UO has *ui, ūtum*; as,

Arguo, argui, argūtum, to shew, to prove, or argue, to reprove. So *co-, red-arguo*, to confute. So,

Ācuo, Exācuo, to sharpen.

Batuo, vel battuo, to beat, to fight, to fence with sails.

Induo, to put on cloaths.

Exuo, to put off cloaths.

Imbuo, te wet, or imbrue, to season or instruct.

Minuo, to lessen: *Com-, de-, di-, im-minuo, -ui, -ūtum*.

Spuo, to spit: *Con-, de-, ex-, in- spuo*,

Stātuo, to set or place, to ordain:

Con-, de-, in- præ-, pro- re-, sub-stituo, -stitui, -stitūtum.

Sternuo, to sneeze.

Suo, to sew or stitch, to tack together: *At-, circum- con-, dis-, in-, præ-, rē-, -suo, -sui, -sūtum*.

Tribuo, to give, to divide: *At-, con-, dis-, re-tribuo*.

Exc. 1. *Flo, fluxi, fluxum*, to flow. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, subter-, super-, trans-flo, -fluxi, -fluxum*.

Struo, struxi, structum, to put in order, to build. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ, sub-, super-, struo, -struxi, -structum*.

Exc. 2. *Luo, lui, lūtum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *abluo. -ui, -ūtum*, to wash away, to purify. So *al-, circum-, col-, de-, di-, e-, inter-, per-, pol-, pro-, sub-luo, -lui, -lūtum*.

Ruo, rui, rūtum, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as *diruo, dirui, dirūtum*, to overthrow. So *ē, ob-, pro-, sub-ruo*. *Corruo*, and *irruo*, want the supine; as likewise do *mētuo*, to fear; *pluo*, to rain; *ingruo*, to assail; *congruo*, to agree; *respuo*, to reject, to slight; *annuo*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo*; *abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod or beckon with the head; *rēnuo*, to deny: all which have *ui* in the preterite.

BO has *bi, bītum*; as,

Bibo, bibi, bibītum, to drink. So *ad-, com-, e-, im-, per-, præ-bibo, -bibi, -bibītum*.

Exc. 1. *Scrībo, scripsi, scriptum*, to write. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, supra-, trans-scribo, -scripsi, -scriptum*.

Nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, to veil, to be married. So *de-, e-, in-, ab-nūbo*. Instead of *nupsi*, we often find *nupta sum*.

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cūbo* in this conjugation insert *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accūbui, accūbitum*, to recline at table. So *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superin-cumbo, -cūbui, -cūbitum*.

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi*, to scratch; *lambo, lambi*, to lick. So *ad-, circum-, dē-, prae-, lambo, -lambi, -ēre*.

Glūbo and deglūbo, to strip, to flay, want both pret. & sup.

CO.

1. *Dīco, dixi, dictum*, to say. So *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, prae-, pro-dīco, -dixi, dictum*.

Dūco, duxi, ductum to lead. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, prae-, pro-, re-, se-, sub-, tra-, or trans-dūco, -duxī, ductum*.

2. *Vinco, vīci, victum*, to overcome. So *con-, de-, e-, per-, rē-vinco, -vīci, -victum*.

Parco, pēperci, parsum, seldom *parsi, parsitum*, to spare. So *comparco*, or *comperco*, which is seldom used.

Ico, īci, ictum, to strike.

SCO has *vi, tum*; as,

Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, to know: fut. part. *noscītūrus*. So, *Dignosco, to distinguish*; *ignosco, to pardon*; also *inter-, per-, prae-nosco, nōvi, nōtum*.

Cresco, -ēvi, -ētum, to grow: *Conde-, ex-, re-, and without the supine, ac-, in-, per-, pro-, suc-, super-cresco*.

Quiesco, ēvi, -ētum, to rest: *Ac-, con-, inter-, rē-quiesco*.

Scisco, -īvi, -itum, to ordain; *ad-, or ascisco, to take to, to associate*;

conscisco, to vote, to commit; also

prae-, re-scisco; *descisco, to revolt*.

Suesco, to be accustomed: *As-, con-, de-, in-suesco, -suēvi, -suētum*.

Exc. 1. *Agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum*, to own; *cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum*, to know. So *recognosco*, to review.

Pasco, pāvi, pastum, to feed. So *com-, dē-pasco*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the supine.

Disco, didīci, to learn. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, prae-disco, didīci*.

Posco, pōposci, to demand. So *ap-, dē-, ex-, rē-posco*.

Compesco, compescui, to stop, to restrain. So *dispesco, dispescui*, to separate.

Exc. 3. *Glisco*, to glitter, to grow; *fatisco*, to be weary; and

and likewise inceptive verbs, want both preterite and supine ; as *arisco*, to become dry. But these verbs sometimes borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives ; as *ardesco*, to grow hot, *arfi*, *arfum*, from *ardeo*.

DO has *di*, *sum* ; as,

Scando, *scandi*, *scansum*, to climb ; *ĕdo*, *ĕdi*, *ĕsum*, to eat.
So,

<i>Ascendo</i> , to mount,	<i>Cūdo</i> , to forge, to stamp	<i>Mando</i> , to chew : Præ-,
<i>Descendo</i> , to go down :	or coin : Ex-, in-,	re-mando.
Con-, e-, ex-, in-,	per-, pro-, re-cūdo.	<i>Prehendo</i> , to take hold
tran-scendo.	<i>Defendo</i> , to defend.	of : Ap-, com-, de-
<i>Accendo</i> , to kindle :	<i>Offendo</i> , to strike a-	prehendo.
In-, suc-cendo.	gainst, to offend, to find.	

Exc. 1. *Divido*, *divīfi*, *divīsum*, to divide.

Rādo, *rāfi*, *rāsum*, to shave. So *ab-*, *circum-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *sub-rādo*, *-rāfi*, *-rāsum*.

Claudo, *claufi*, *clausum*, to close. So *circum-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *oc-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *se-clūdo*, *-clūfi*, *clūsum*.

Plaudo, *plaufi*, *plausum*, to clap hands for joy. So *ap-*, *circum-plaudo* : also *com-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *sup-plūdo*, *-plūfi*, *-plūsum*.

Lūdo, *lūfi*, *lūsum*, to play. So *ab-*, *al-*, *col-*, *de-*, *e-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-lūdo*, *-lūfi*, *-lūsum*,

Trūdo, *trūfi*, *trūsum*, to thrust. So *ab-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *pro-*, *re-trūdo*, *-trūfi*, *trūsum*.

Lædo, *læfi*, *læsum*, to hurt. So *al-*, *col-*, *e-*, *il-lūdo*, *-lūfi*, *-lūsum*.

Rōdo, *rōfi*, *rōsum*, to gnaw. So *ab-*, *ar-*, *circum-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *e-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-rōdo*, *-rōfi*, *-rōsum*.

Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine : but its compounds have *fi*, *sum* ; as *invādo*, *invāfi*, *invāsum*, to invade, to fall upon. So *circum-*, *ē-*, *super-vādo*.

Cēdo, *cessi*, *cessum*, to yield. So *abf-*, *ac-*, *antē-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *rē-*, *retro-*, *se-*, *suc-cēdo*.

Exc. 2. *Pando*, *pandi*, *passum*, and sometimes *pansum*, to open, to spread. So *dis-*, *ex-*, *op-*, *præ-*, *rē-pando*.

Cōmēdo, *comēdi*, *comēsum*, or *comestum*, to eat. But *ĕdo* itself and the rest of its compounds have always *ĕsum* ; as, *ad-*, *amb-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *sub-*, *super--ĕdo*, *-ĕdi*, *-ĕsum*.

Fundo, *fūdi*, *fūsum*, to pour forth. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *of-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *suf-*, *super-*, *superin-*, *trans-fundo*, *-fūdi*, *-fūsum*.

Scindo,

Scindo, scīdi, scīssum, to cut. So *ab-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, tran-* *scindo, -scīdi, -scīssum*.

Findo, fīdi, fīssum, to cleave. So *con-, dis-, in-* *findo*.

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tūtūdi, tūsum*, and sometimes *tūsum*, to beat. The compounds have *tūdi, tūsum*; as, *contundo, contūdi, contūsum*, to bruise. So *ex-, ob-, per-, retundo, -tūdi, -tūsum*.

Cādo, cēcīdi, cāsum, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter- pro-, suc- cīdo, -cīdi* —; except *incīdo, incīdi, incāsum*, to fall in; *recīdo, recīdi, recāsum*, to fall back; and *occīdo, occīdi, occāsum*, to fall down.

Cædo, cēcīdi, cæsum, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *i* long, and do not redouble the first syllable in the perfect; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accīsum*, to cut about. So *abs-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, rē-, suc- cīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum*.

Tendo, tētendi, tensum, or *tentum*, to stretch out. So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ab-, præ-, pro-* *tendo, -tendi, -tensum* or *-tentum*. But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo*, to shew; which has commonly *ostensum*.

Pēdo, pēpēdi, peditum, to break wind backwards. So *op-pēdo*, which rarely occurs.

Pendo, pēpendi, pensum, to weigh. So *ap-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, re-, sus-* *pendo, -pendi, -pensum*.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dīdi*, and *dītum*; as, *abdo, abdīdi, abdītum*, to hide. So *ad-, con-, de-, dī-, ē-, ob-, per-, pro-, red-, sub-, trā-* *do*: also *decon-, recon-* *do*; and *coad-, superad-* *do*; and *deper-, disper-* *do*. To these add *crēdo, crēdīdi, crēdītum*, to believe; *vendo, vendīdi, vendītum*, to sell. *Abscādo*, to hide, has *abscondīdi, abscondītum*, rarely *abscondīdi*.

Exc. 3. These three want the supine: *strīdo, strīdi*, to creak; *rūdo, rūdi*, to bray like an ass; and *sīdo, sīdi*, to sink down. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo*; as, *consīdo, consēdi, confessum*, to sit down. So *af-, circum-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, rē-, sub-* *sīdo, -sēdi, -fessum*.

Note. Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be carefully distinguished; as, *conçīdo, concīdo, cançēdo*; *consīdo* and *conçīdo*; *conscīdo, conscendo*, &c.

GO, GUO has *xi, elum*; as,

Rēgo, rexi, reclum, to rule, to govern; *dirigo, -exi, -eclum*, to direct; *arrigo, & erigo, -exi, -eclum*, to raise up; *corrigo*, to correct; *porrigo*, to stretch out; *subrigo*, to raise up. So

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, to gird, to surround: *Ac-, dis-, circum-, in-, præ-, re-, suc-tingo*.

Fligo, to dash or beat upon: *As-, con-, in-fligo*: also *profligo, to rout*, of the first conj.

Jungo, to join; *abjungo, to separate*: *Ad-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, inter-, se-, sub-jungo*.

Lingo, to lick: *de-, e-lingo*; & *pollingo, to anoint a dead body*.

Mungo, to wipe or clean the nose.

Empungo, to wipe, to cheat.

Plango, to beat, to lament.

Stingo, or Stinguo, to dash out, to extinguish: *Di-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-stingo*.

Tēgo, to cover: *Circum-, con-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-tēgo*.

Tingo, or Tinguo, to dip or dye: *Con-, in-tingo*.

Ungo, or Unguo, to anoint: *ex-, in-, per-, super-ungo*.

Exc. 1. *Surgo, to rise*, has *surrexi, surreclum*. So *as-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, re-surgo, -surrexi, surreclum*.

Pergo, perrexi, perreclum, to go forward.

Stringo, strinxi, strictum, to bind, to strain, to lop. So *ad-, con-, de-, dis-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-stringo*.

Fingo, finxi, fictum, to feign. So *as-, con-, ef-, re-fingo*.

Pingo, pinxi, pictum, to paint. So *ap-, de-pingo*.

Exc. 2. *Frango, frēgi, fractum*, to break. So *con-, de-, dis-, ef-, in-, of-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-fringo, -frēgi, -fractum*.

Āgo, ēgi, aclum, to do, to drive. So *ab-, ad-, ex-, red-, sub-, trans-, transad-igo*; and *circum-, per-āgo*: *cōgo, for coāgo, coēgi, coaclum*, to bring together, to force.

These three compounds of *āgo* want the supine: *sātāgo, satēgi*, to be busy about a thing; *prōdīgo, prodēgi*, to lavish, or spend riotously; *dēgo, for deāgo; dēgi*, to live or dwell. *Ambīgo, to doubt, to dispute*, also wants the preterite.

Lēgo, lēgi, leclum, to gather, to read. So *al-, per- præ-, re-, sublēgo*: also *col-, de-, e-, recol-, se-ligo*, which change *e* into *i*.

Dīligo, to love, has *dilexi, dileclum*. So *neglīgo, to neglect*; and *intelligo, to understand*; but, *neglīgo* has sometimes *neglēgi*, Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. *Tango, tēgi, tactum*, to touch. So *at-, con-, ob-, per-tingo*; thus, *attingo, attingi, attaclum, &c.*

Pungo.

Pungo, pūpūgi, punctum, to prick or sting. The compounds have *punxi*; as, *compungo, compunxi, compunctum*. So *dis-, ex-, inter-pungo*: but *repungo* has *repunxi*, or *repūpūgi*.

Pango, panxi, pactum, to fix, to drive in, to compose: or *pēpēgi*, which comes from the obsolete verb *pāgo*, to bargain, for which we use *paciscor*. The compounds of *pango*, have *pēgi*: as, *compingo, compēgi, compactum*, to put together. So *im-, ob-, sup-pingo, -pēgi, -pactum*.

Exc. 4. *Spargo, sparsi, sparsum*, to spread. So *ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-spergo; -sparsi, -spersum*.

Mergo, mersi, mersum, to dip, or plunge. So *de-, e-, im-, sub-mergo*.

Tergo, terfi, tersum, to wipe, or clean. So *abs-, de-, ex-, per-tergo*.

Figo, fixi, fixum, to fix or fasten. So *af-, con-, de-, in-, of-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-, transf-igo*.

Frigo, frixi, frixum, or *frictum*, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clango, clanxi*, to found a trumpet; *ningo* or *ninguo, ninxi*, to snow; *ango, auxi*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline or lie towards, wants both preterite and supine. So *e-, de-, in-ergo*.

HO, ʒO.

1. *Trābo, traxi, tractum*, to draw. So *abs-, at-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, per-, pro-, re- sub-trābo*.

Vebo, vexi, vectum, to carry. So *a-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, e-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, transf-vebo, -vexi, vectum*.

2. *Mejo, or mingo, minxi, miſtum*, to make water. So *immejo*.

LO.

1. *Cōlo, cōlui, cultum*, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So *ae-, circum-ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-cōlo*: and likewise *occūlo, occului, occultum*, to hide.

Consūlo, consului, consultum, to advise or consult.

Alō, ālui, alitum, or contracted *altum*, to nourish.

Mōlo, mōlui, mōlitum, to grind. So *con-, e-, per-mōlo*. The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *ante-, ex-, præ-cello, -cellui*, to excel. *Percello*, to strike, to astonish, has, *percūli, percultum*.

Pello,

Pello, pēpūli, pulsūm, to thrust. So *ap-, af-, com-, de-, dif-, ex-, im-, per- pro- re-pello*; *appūli, appulsūm*, &c.

Fallo, fēfelli, falsūm, to deceive. But *rēfello, refelli*, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello, velli*, or *vulsi, vulsūm*, to pull or pinch. So *a-, con-, e-, inter-, præ-, re-vello*. But *de-, di-, per-vello*, have rather *velli*.

Sallo, falli, falsūm, to salt. *Pfallo, pfalli*, — to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.

Tollo, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *sustūli*, and *sublātum*; *Extollo, extūli, elātum*; but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

MO has *ui, itum*; as,

Gēmo, gēmui, gēmītum, to groan. So *ad-, or ag-, circum-, con-, in-, re-gēmo, -gēmui, -gēmītum*.

Frēmō, frēmui, frēmītum, to rage or roar, to make a great noise. So *af-, circum-, con-, in-, per-frēmō*.

Vōmo, ēvōmo, -ui, -itum, to vomit or spew, to cast up.

Exc. 1. *Dēmo, dempsī, demptum*, to take away.

Prōmo, prompsī, promptum, to bring out. So *de-, ex-prōmo*.

Sūmo, sumpsī, sumptum, to take. So *ab-, af-, -con-, de-, in-, præ-, re-, tran-sūmo*.

Cōmo, compsi, comptum, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *p*; as, *demsi, demzum*; *sumsi, sumtum*, &c.

Exc. 2. *ēmo, ēmi, emptum*, or *emtum* to buy. So *ad-, dir-, ex-, inter-, per-, red-imo* and *co-ēmo, -ēmi, emptum* or *-emtum*.

Prēmō, pressī, pressum, to press. So *ap-, com-, de-, ex-, im-, op-, per-, re-, sup-prīmo, -pressī, -pressum*.

Trēmō, trēmui, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine. So *at-, circum-, con-, in-trēmō*.

NO.

1. *Pōno, pōsui, pōsitum*, to put or place. So *ap-, ante-, circum-, com-, de-, dif-, ex-, im-, inter-, ob-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sup-, super-, superim-, trans-pōno, -pōsui, pōsitum*.

Gigno, gēnui, gēnītum, to beget. So, *con-, e-, in-, per-, pro-, re-gigno*.

Cāno, cēcīni, cantum, to sing. But the compounds have *-cīnui* and *centum*; as, *accīno, accīnui, accentum*, to sing

in concert. So *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *ſuc-cīno*; *oc-cīno*, and *oc-cāno*: *recīno* and *re-cāno*: but *occanui*, *recanui*, are not in uſe.

Temno, to deſpiſe, wants both preterite and ſupine: but its compound *Contemno*, to deſpiſe, to ſcorn, has *contempſi*, *contemptum*; or, without the *p*, *contempſi*, *contemptum*.

2. *Sperno*, *ſprēvi*, *ſprētum*, to diſdain, or ſlight. So *deſperno*.

Sterno, *ſtrāvi*, *ſtrātum*, to lay flat, to ſtrow. So *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *ſub-ſterno*.

Sīno, *ſīvi*, or *ſi*, *ſitum*, to permit. So *deſīno*, *deſīvi*, oftener *deſi*, *deſitum*, to leave off.

Līno *līvi*, or *lēvi*, *lītum*, to anoint or daub. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*. *de-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſub-*, *ſubter-*, *ſuper-*, *ſuperil-līno*.

Cerno, *crēvi*, ſeldom *crētum*, to ſee, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So *de-*, *diſ*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ſe-cerno*.

PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *pi* and *ptum*; as, *Carpo*, *carpiſi*, *carptum*, to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame.—So *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ex-*, *præ-cerpo*, *-cerpiſi*, *-cerptum*.

Clēpo, *-piſi*, *-ptum*, to ſteal.

Rēpo, *-piſi*, *-ptum*, to creep; *Ad-*,
v. *ar-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *ir-*, *in-*
tro-, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *ſub-rēpiſi*,
-ptum.

Scalpo, to ſcratch or engrave. So
circum-, *ex-scalpo*, *-piſi*, *-ptum*.

Sculpo, to grave or carve. So *ex-*,
in-ſculpo, *-piſi*, *-ptum*.

Serpo, to creep, as a ſerpent.

Exc. 1. *Strēpo*, *ſtrēpui*, *ſtrēpitum*, to make a noiſe. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-ſtrēpo*.

Exc. 2. *Rumpo*, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, to break. So *ab-*, *cor-*, *di-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-rumpo*.

There are only two ſimple verbs ending in *QUO*, viz.

Cōquo, *coxi*, *coctum*, to boil. So *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-cōquo*, *-coxi*, *-coctum*.

Linquo, *liqui*, —, to leave. The compounds have *liētum*; as, *rēliquo*, *reliqui*, *reliētum*, to forſake. So *de-*, and *dērē-linguo*.

RO.

1. *Quæro* makes *quæſivi*, *quæſitum*, to ſeek. So *ac-*, *an-*, *con-*, *diſ-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-quæro*, *-quæſivi*, *-quæſitum*.

Tëro, *trīvi*, *trītum*, to wear, to bruife. So *at-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *ſub-tëro*.

Verro, *verri*, *verſum*, to ſweep, brush, or make clean. So *ā-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *præ-*, *rē-verro*. Uro

Uro, uffi, ustum, to burn. So *ad-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-uro, -ussi, -ustum*.

Gero, gessi, gestum, to carry. So *ag-, con-, di-, intro-, re-, sug-gero, -gessi, -gestum*.

2. *Curro, cucurri, cursum*, to run. So *ac-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, prae-, pro-curro*, which sometimes double the first syllable, and sometimes not; as, *accurri*, or *accucurri*, &c. *Circum-, re-, suc-, trans-curro*, hardly ever redouble the first syllable.

3. *Sero, sevi, satum*, to sow. The compounds which signify planting or sowing, have *sevi, situm*; as, *consero, consēvi, consitum*, to plant together. So *af-, circum-, de-, dis-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, tran-sero, -sevi, -situm*.

Sero, — to knit, had anciently *serui, fertum*, which its compounds still retain; as, *asero, asserui, assertum*, to claim. So *con-, circum-, de-, dis-, edis-, ex-, in-, inter-sero*.

4. *Furo, (obsolet.) furis*, to be mad, wants both preterite and supine.

SO has *sivi, situm*; as,

Arcesso, arcessivi, arcessitum, to call or send for. So *capesso, to take; facesso, to do, to go away; lacesso, to provoke: capessivi, -itum, &c.*

Exc. 1. *Viso, visi, —* to go to see, to visit. So *in-, re-viso. Incesso, incessi, —* to attack, to seize.

Exc. 2. *Depso, depsi, depsum*, to knead. So *con-, per-depso, -ui, -sum*.

Piso, pinsui, or pinsi, pinsum, pistum, or pinsitum, to bake.

TO.

1. *Flecto*, has *flexi, flexum*, to bow or bend. So *circum-de-, in-, re-, retro-flecto, -xi, -xum*.

Plecto, plexi, and plexui, plexum, to plait. So *implecto*.

Necto, nexi, and nexui, nexum, to tie or knit. So *ad-, vel an-, con-, circum-, in-, sub-necto, -xi and -xui, -xum*.

Pecto, pexi and pexui, pexum, to dress or comb. So *de-, ex-, re-pecto, -xi & xui, -xum*.

2. *Meto, messui, messum*, to reap, mow, or cut down. So *de-, e-, prae-meto, -ssui, -ssum*.

3. *Peto, petivi, petitum*, to seek, to pursue. So *ap-, com-, ex-, im-, op-, re-, sup-peto, -ivi, -itum*.

Mitto, misi, missum, to send. So *a-, ad-, com-, circum-,*

dē-, dī-, z-, inter-, intro-, ō-, per-, præ-, præter-, prō-, rē-, sub-, super-, transf-mitto, -misi, -missum.

Verto, verti, verſum, to turn. So *a-, ad-, animad-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, dī-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, præter-, re-, sub-, transf-vertō, -ti, -ſum.*

Sterto, ſtertui, — to ſnore. So *de-ſterto, -ui, —.*

4. *ſiſto*, an active verb, to ſtop, has *ſtiti, ſtatum*: but *ſiſto*, a neuter verb, to ſtand ſtill, has *ſtēti, ſtatum*, like *ſto*. The compounds have *ſtiti*, and *ſtitum*; as, *aſſiſto, aſſiti, aſſitum*, to ſtand by. So *ab-, circum-, con- de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, sub-ſiſto*. But the compounds are ſeldom uſed in the ſupine.

VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vivo, vixi, victum, to live.* So *ad-, con-, per-, pro-, re-, super-vivo, -xi, -ctum.*

Solvo, ſolvi, ſōlūtum, to roll. So *abſolvo, to acquit; dif-, ex-, per-, re-ſolvo, -volvi, -ſōlūtum.*

Volvo, volvi, vōlūtum, to roll. So *ad-, circum-, con-, dē-, z-, in-, ob-, per-, prō-, rē-, sub-volvo, -volvi, -vōlūtum.*

2. *Texo, to weave.* (the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*), has *texui, textum*. So *at-, circum-, con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-texo, -texui, -xtum.*

Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *ivi*, and the ſupine in *itum*; as,

Mūnio, mūnivi, mūnītum, to fortify. So,

<i>Balbūtio, to ſammer, to liſp, to flutter.</i>	<i>Garrio, to prate.</i>	<i>Mollio, to ſoſten.</i>
<i>Bullio, to boil, or bubble.</i>	<i>Glūtio, to ſwallow.</i>	<i>Mūgio, to bellow.</i>
<i>Condiō, to ſeaſon.</i>	<i>Grunnio, to grunt.</i>	<i>Mūtio, to mutter.</i>
<i>Crōcio, to croak.</i>	<i>Hinnio, to neigh.</i>	<i>Nutrio, to nourish.</i>
<i>Cuſtōdiō, to keep.</i>	<i>Impēdiō, to entangle, to binder.</i>	<i>Obēdiō, to obey.</i>
<i>Dormiō, to ſleep.</i>	<i>Inſānio, to be mad.</i>	<i>Pāvio, to beat.</i>
<i>Effūtiō, to babble or blab out.</i>	<i>Irrētio, to enſnare.</i>	<i>Pīpio, to peep like a chicken.</i>
<i>Ērūdiō, to inſtruct.</i>	<i>Laſcīvio, to be wanton.</i>	<i>Pōlio, to poliſh.</i>
<i>Expēdiō, to diſentangle, to free.</i>	<i>Lēnio, to eaſe or mitigate.</i>	<i>Prūrio, to itch, to tickle.</i>
<i>Faſtidio, to diſtain.</i>	<i>Ligūrio, to eat deliciouſly, to ſlabber up.</i>	<i>Pūnio, to puniſh.</i>
<i>Gannio, to yelp, or rubine.</i>	<i>Lāppio, to be dim ſighted or blear-eyed.</i>	<i>Rēdīmio, to bind.</i>
		<i>Rūgio, to roar like a lion.</i>
		<i>Savio, to rage.</i>

Sāgio, <i>præsāgio</i> , to <i>guess</i> , to <i>foresee</i> .	Servio, to <i>serve</i> .	Tinnio, to <i>tinkle</i> .
Sarrio, to <i>weed</i> , to <i>rake</i> .	Sitio, to <i>thirst</i> .	Tussio, to <i>cough</i> .
Scio, to <i>know</i> .	Sōpio, to <i>lull asleep</i> .	Vāgio, to <i>cry</i> or <i>squtal</i> as a <i>child</i> .
Nescio, <i>not to know</i> .	Stābilio, to <i>establish</i> .	Vestio, to <i>clothe</i> .
Sq̄tūrio, to <i>gush out</i> .	Sūperbio, to <i>be proud</i> .	
	Sulio, to <i>perforate</i> .	

Exc. 1. *Singultio*, *singultivi*, *singultum*, to *sob*.

Sepelio, *sepelivi*, *sepultum*, to *bury*.

Venio, *vēni*, *ventum*, to *come*. So *ad-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *contra-*, *de-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*-*vēnio*, -*vēni*, -*ventum*.

Veneo, *vēnii*, — to *be sold*.

Sālio, *sālui*, and *sālii*, *saltum*, to *leap*. The compounds have commonly *silui*, sometimes *silii*, or *silivi*, and *sultum*; as, *transilio*, *transilui*, *transilii* and *transilivi*, *transultum*, to *leap over*. So *ab-*, *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*-*silio*, -*silui*, *silii*, & -*silivi*, -*sultum*.

Exc. 2. *Amicio*, has *amicui*, *amicum*, seldom *amixi*, to *cover* or *clothe*.

Vincio, *vinxi*, *vincum*, to *tie*. So *circum-*, *de-*, *e-*, *re-*-*vincio*, -*vinxi*, -*vincum*.

Sancio, *sānxi*, *sancum*; and *sancivi*, *sancitum*, to *establish* or *ratify*.

Exc. 3. *Cambio*, *campsi*, *campsum*, to *change money*.

Sēpio, *sepsti*, *septum*, to *hedge* or *inclose*. So *circum-*, *dis-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*-*sēpio*, -*psti*, -*ptum*.

Haurio, *hausi*, *haustum*, rarely *hausum*, to *draw out*, to *empty*, to *drink*. So *de-*, *ex-*-*haurio*, -*si*, -*stum*.

Sentio, *sensti*, *sensum*, to *feel*, to *perceive*, to *think*. So *af-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *sub-*-*sentio*, -*si*, -*sum*.

Raucio, *rausi*, *rausum*, to *be hoarse*.

Exc. 4. *Sarcio*, *sarsti*, *sartum*, to *mend* or *repair*. So *ex-*, *re-*-*sarcio*, -*sarsti*, -*sartum*.

Farcio, *farsti*, *fartum*, to *cram*. So *con-*-*farcio*, *ef-*-*farcio*, or *ef-*-*farcio*; *in-*-*farcio*, or *in-*-*farcio*; *re-*-*farcio*, -*si*, -*rtum*.

Fulcio, *fulsti*, *fulsum*, to *prop* or *uphold*. So *con-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *sub-*-*fulcio*, -*si*, -*lum*.

Exc. 5. The compounds of *pārio*, have *pēruī*, *pertum*; as, *āpērio*, *apēruī*, *āpertum*, to *open*. So *ōpērio*, to *shut*, to *cover*. But *compērio*, has *compēri*, *compertum*, to *know* a thing for certain. *Rēpērio*, *repēri*, *repertum*, to *find*.

Exc. 6. The following verbs want the supine. *Cæcütio, cæcütivi*, to be dim-sighted. *Gestio, gestivi*, to shew one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glöcio, glöcivi*, to cluck or keckle as a hen. *Dementio, dementivi*, to be mad. *Ineptio, ineptivi*, to play the fool. *Prösilio, prosilui*, to leap forth. *Feröcio, feröcivi*, to be fierce.

Ferio, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So *referio*, to strike again.

DEPONENT and COMMON VERBS.

A *deponent* verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Löquor*, I speak; *mörör*, I die.

A *common* verb, under a passive form, has either an active or neuter signification; as, *Criminör*, I accuse; or I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have laid aside the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lätör, lætätus, lætätari*, to rejoice; *vöreör, vörütus, vöreri*, to fear; *fungör, functus, fungi*, to discharge an office; *pötior, pötütus, pötüri*, to enjoy, to be master of.

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations; thus, *lätör*, of the first conjugation, like *amor*:

Indicative Mood.

Pres. *Lätör*, I rejoice; *lætäris, vel -äre*, thou rejoicest, &c.
 Imp. *Lätöbar*, I rejoiced, or did rejoice; *lätöbaris*, &c.
 Perf. *Lätätus sum vel fui**, I have rejoiced, &c.
 Plu-perf. *Lätätus eram vel fueram*, I had rejoiced, &c.
 Fut. *Lätäbor*, I shall or will rejoice; *lätäberis, or -abere*, &c.
Lätäturus sum, I am about to rejoice, or I am to rejoice, &c.

Subjunctive.

Pres. *Lätör*, I may rejoice; *lätäris, or -ere*, &c.
 Imp. *Lätärer*, I might rejoice; *lätäreris, or -ere*, &c.
 Perf. *Lätätus sim vel fuerim*, I may have rejoiced, &c.
 Plu-perf. *Lätätus essem vel fuissim*, I might have rejoiced, &c.
 Fut. *Lätätus fuerö*, I shall have rejoiced, &c.

* *Fui, fueram*, &c. are seldom joined to the participles of deponent verbs; and not so often to those of passive verbs as *sum, eram*, &c.

Imperative.

Pres. *Latare*, vel *-ātor*, rejoice thou; *latator*, let him rejoice, &c.

Infinitive.

Pres. *Latari*, to rejoice.

Perf. *Latatus esse* vel *fuisse*, to have rejoiced.

Fut. *Lataturus esse*, to be about to rejoice.

Lataturus fuisse, to have been about to rejoice.

Participles.

Pres. *Latans*, rejoicing.

Perf. *Latatus*, having rejoiced.

Fut. *Lataturus*, about to rejoice.

Latandus, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate, in the First Conjugation,

<i>Abōmīnor</i> , to abhor.	<i>Commentor</i> , to meditate on, or write what one is to say.	<i>Inficior</i> , to deny.
<i>Adūlor</i> , to flatter.	<i>Conciōnor</i> , to barangue.	<i>Insecōtor</i> , to pursue, to inveigh against.
<i>Āmūlor</i> , to vie with, to envy.	<i>Confiētor</i> , to struggle.	<i>Insīdior</i> , to lie in wait.
<i>Altercor</i> , to dispute, to make a repartee.	<i>Conor</i> , to endeavour.	<i>Interprētor</i> , to explain.
<i>Aprīcor</i> , to bask in the sun.	<i>Conspīcor</i> , to spy, to see.	<i>Jacūlor</i> , to dart.
<i>Arbitror</i> , to think.	<i>Contemplor</i> , to view.	<i>Jōcor</i> , to jest.
<i>Aspernor</i> , to despise.	<i>Convivor</i> , to feast.	<i>Lāmentor</i> , to bewail.
<i>Āversor</i> , to dislike.	<i>Cornīcor</i> , to chatter like a crow.	<i>Lucror</i> , to gain.
<i>Auctiōnor</i> , to sell by auction.	<i>Crimīnor</i> , to blame.	<i>luctor</i> , to wrestle.
<i>Aucūpor</i> , & -o, to hunt after.	<i>Cunctor</i> , to delay.	<i>Māchinor</i> , to contrive.
<i>Augūror</i> , & -o, to forebode, or presage by augury.	<i>Dētestor</i> , to abhor.	<i>Mēdicor</i> , to cure.
<i>Auspīcor</i> , to take an omen, to begin.	<i>Dōmīnor</i> , to rule.	<i>Mēditōr</i> , to muse or ponder.
<i>Auxilior</i> , to assist.	<i>Ēpūlor</i> , to feast.	<i>Mercor</i> , to purchase.
<i>Bacchor</i> , to rage, to revel, to riot.	<i>Exsecror</i> , to curse.	<i>Mētor</i> , to measure.
<i>Calumniōr</i> , to accuse falsely.	<i>Fāmūlor</i> , to serve.	<i>Mīnor</i> , to threaten.
<i>Cāvillor</i> , to scoff.	<i>Fērior</i> , to keep holy-day.	<i>Mīror</i> , to wonder.
<i>Caupōnor</i> , to huckster, to retail.	<i>Frustror</i> , to disappoint.	<i>Misēror</i> , to pity.
<i>Causor</i> , to plead in excuse, to blame.	<i>Fūror</i> , to steal.	<i>Mōdēror</i> , to rule.
<i>Circūlor</i> , to meet in companies, to stroll, to talk.	<i>Glōrior</i> , to boast.	<i>Mōdūlor</i> , to play a tune.
<i>Cōmessor</i> , to revel.	<i>Grātūlor</i> , to rejoice, to wish one joy.	<i>Mōrigēror</i> , to humour.
<i>Cōmītor</i> , to accompany.	<i>Grāvōr</i> , to grudge.	<i>Mōror</i> , to delay.
	<i>Hāriōlor</i> , to conjecture.	<i>Mūnēror</i> , to present.
	<i>Heilvor</i> , to guttle or gormandize, to waste.	<i>Mūtuor</i> , to borrow.
	<i>Hortor</i> , to encourage.	<i>Nāgor</i> , to trifle.
	<i>Hallūcinor</i> , to speak at random, to err.	<i>Obsecōr</i> , to beseech.
	<i>Imāginor</i> , to conceive.	<i>ōdōror</i> , to smell.
	<i>Imītor</i> , to imitate.	<i>ōpēror</i> , to work.
	<i>Indīgnor</i> , to disdain.	<i>ōpīnor</i> , to think.
		<i>ōpītūlor</i> , to help.
		<i>Oscūlor</i> , to kiss.
		<i>ōtiōr</i> , to be at leisure.
		<i>Pālor</i> , to stroll or straggle.

Palpor, or -o, to stroke or soothe.	Præcor, to pray.	Stömächor, to be angry.
Patrôcînör, to patro- nise.	Depræcor, to intreat, to pray against.	Suâviör, to kiss.
Percantör, to inquire.	Pröcor, to ask, to woo.	Suffrâgör, to vote for one, to favour.
Pëgrinör, to go a- broad.	Rëcordör, to remem- ber.	Suspîcor, to suspect.
Përiclitör, to be in dan- ger.	Refrâgör, to be against.	Tergiverfor, to boggle, to put off.
Pignëror, to pledge.	Rîmör, to search.	Testör, to witness.
Pîscör, to fish.	Rîxor, to scold or brawl.	Tütör, to defend.
Pöpülör, & -o, to lay waste.	Rustîcor, to dwell in the country.	Vâdör, to bail, to force to give bail.
Prædor, to plunder.	Serütör, to search.	Vâgör, to wander.
Præliör, to fight.	Sölor, to comfort.	Vâtîcînör, to prophesy.
Præstölör, to wait for.	Spätîör, to walk abroad.	Vëlîtor, to skirmish.
Prævârîcor, to go cross- ed; to shuffle or preva- litate.	Spëcülör, to view, to spy.	Vënëror; to work; p.
	Stipülör, to stipulate or agree.	Vënör, to hunt.
		Verfor, to be employed.
		Vöcîfëror, to bawl.

In the Second Conjugation.

Mëreör, mëritus, to deserve.	Polliceör, pollicîtus, to promise.
Tueör, tuitus, or tütus, to defend.	Lîceör, licîtus, to bid at an auction.

In the Third Conjugation.

Amplectör, amplexus; and complectör, complexus, to embrace.
Revertör, reversus, to return.

In the Fourth Conjugation.

Blandiör, to soothe, to flatter.	Partiör, to divide.
Mentiör; to lie.	Sortiör, to draw or cast lots.
Möliör, to attempt something diff. ult.	Largiör, to give liberally.

Part. perf. Blandîtus, mentîtus, molîtus, partîtus, sortîtus, largîtus.

There are no exceptions in the First Conjugation.

EXCEPTIONS in the Second Conjugation.

Reör, rätus, to think.

Misëreör, misertus, or not contracted miserîtus, to pity.

Fâteör, fassus, to confess. The compounds of fâteör have fessus; as, profîteör, professus, to profess. So confîteör, confessus, to confess, to own or acknowledge.

EXCEPTIONS in the Third Conjugation.

Lâbor, lapsus, to slide or glide. So al-, col-, de-, di-, c-, il-, inter-, per-, præter-, præ-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, trans-lâbor.

Ulcîscör, ultus, to revenge.

Ütor, ùsus, to use. So ab-, de-ütör, -ùsus.

Löquör,

Lōquor, lōquūtus, or locūtus, to speak. So *al-, col-, cir-, cum-, e-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-lōquor.*

Sēquor, sēquūtus, or sēcutus, to follow. So *af-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-sēquor.*

Quēror, questus, to complain. So *con-, inter-, præ-quēror: conquestus, conquēri, &c.*

Nītor, nīsus, or nixus, to endeavour, to lean upon. So *ad- vel an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-nītor: but the compounds have oftener nixus.*

Pāciscor, pactus, to bargain. So *de-peciscor, v. depaciscor.*

Grādiar, gressus, to go. So *ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, retro-, sug-, super-, trans-grēdiar, -gressus, -grēdi, &c.*

Prōficiscor, profectus, to go a journey.

Nanciscor, nacltus, to get.

Pātior, passus, to suffer. So *per-pētior, perpeffus, -pētī.*

āpiscor, aptus, to get. So *adīpiscor, adeptus, and indīpiscor, indeptus.*

Commīniscor, commentus, to devise or invent.

Fruor, frūitus, or frucltus, to enjoy. So *per-fruor.*

Oblivīscor, oblitus, to forget.

Expergiscor, experrectus, to awake.

Mōrior, mortuus, mōri or mōriri, to die. So *com-, de-, e-, im-, inter-, præ-mōrior.*

Nascor, nātus, to be born. So *ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nascor.*

ōrior, ortus, ōriri, to rise. So *ab-, ad-, co-, ex-, ob-, sub-ōrior.*

The three last form the future participle in *ītūrus*; thus *mōritūrus, nascitūrus, ōritūrus.*

EXCEPTIONS in the Fourth Conjugation.

Mītior, mensus, to measure. So *ad-, com-, di-, e-, præ-, re-mētior.*

Ordior, orfus, to begin. So *ex-, red-ordior.*

Expērior, expertus, to try, to experience.

Oppērior, oppertus, to wait, or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect:

Vescor, vesci, to feed.

Mēdeor, mederi, to heal.

Liquor, liqui, to melt, or to be dissolved.

Rēmīniscor, reminisci, to remember.

Irafcor, irasci, to be angry.

Ringor,

Ringor, ringi, to grin like a dog.
 Prævertor, præverti, to get before,
 to outrun.
 Diffiteor, diffiteri, to deny.

Divertor, diverti, to turn aside, to
 take lodging.
 Defectior, defectisci, to be wary,
 or faint.

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight; *sum*, *eo*, *queo*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *fero*, and *fito*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six; *nolo* and *malo* being compounds of *volo*.

SUM has already been conjugated, (p. 88). After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-*, *ab-*, *de-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *ob-*, *sub-*, *super-**sum*; and *insum*, which wants the preterite; thus, *adsum*, *adsumi*, *adesset*, &c.

PROSUM, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*; as,
 Ind. Pr. Prō-sum, prōd-es, prōd-est; pro-sūmus, &c.

Im. Prōd-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat; prod-eramus, &c.
 Sub. Im. Prod-esset, prod-esset, prod-esset; prod-essemus, &c.
 Imperat. Prod-esto, prod-este. Infinit. Pres. Prod-esse.

In the other parts it is like *sum*: *Pro-sim*, *fitis*, *-fit*, *sīmus*, &c. *Profui*, *-fueram*, &c.

POSSUM is compounded of *potis*, able, and *sum*; and is thus conjugated:

Possūm, potūi, posse, to be able.

Indicative Mood.

Pr. Possūm, potēs, potest; possūmus, potestis, possunt.

Im. Pōt-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

Per. Pōt-ui -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.

Plu. Pot-uēram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

Fut. Pot-ēro, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erunt.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pr. Pos-sim, -sis, -sit; -sīmus, -sītis, -sint.

Im. Pos-sem, -ses, -set; -sēmus, -setis, -sent.

Per. Pot-uērim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerīmus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Plu. Pot-nissem, -uisses, -uisset; -uissemus, -uissetis, -uisissent.

Fut. Pot-uēro, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive.

Pres. Possē. Per. Potuisse. The rest wanting.

EO, *īvi, itum, ire, To go.**Indicative Mood.*

<i>Pr.</i> Eo,	is,	it;	īmus,	ītis,	eunt.
<i>Imp.</i> Ibam,	ības,	ibat;	ibāmus,	ibātis,	ibant.
<i>Per.</i> Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit;	ivimus,	ivistis,	iverunt, ivēre.
<i>Plu.</i> Iveram,	īveras,	iverat;	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
<i>Fut.</i> Ibo,	ībis,	ibit;	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> Eam,	cas,	eat;	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
<i>Imp.</i> Irem,	īres,	iret;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
<i>Per.</i> Iverim,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
<i>Plu.</i> Ivissē,	ivissēs,	ivisset;	ivissēmus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Ivero,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

Imperative.

<i>Pres.</i> { I,	ito;	{ ite,	eunto.
{ Ito,		{ itote,	

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i> Ire.
<i>Perf.</i> Ivissē.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse iturus, a, um.
Fuisse iturus.

Participles.

<i>Pr.</i> Iens,	<i>Gen.</i> euntis.
<i>Fut.</i> Iturus,	-a, -um.

Gerunds.

Eundum.
Eundi.
Eundo, &c.

Supines.

1. Itum.
2. Itu.

The compounds of *Eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-, ab-, ex-, ob-, rēd-, sūb-, pēr-, co-, in, inter-, prae-, ante-, prōd-co-*: only in the perfect and the tenses formed from it they are usually contracted; thus, *Adeo, adii*: seldom *adīvi, aditum, adire*. to go to; *perf. Adii, adīssi* or *adīssi, &c. adīeram, adīerim, &c.* So likewise *VENEO; venii*,—to be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But *AMBIO īvi, -itum, -ire*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *it*, he is going; *īvit*, he is gone; *īverat*, he was gone; *iverit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So *venit*, he is coming; *vēnit*, he is come; *vēnerat*, he was come. &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are chiefly used impersonally; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going; *itum est ab illis*, they are gone, &c. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally: as, *pericula adēuntur*, are undergone. *Cic. Libri sibyllini aditi sunt*, were looked into, *Liv. Flumen pedibus transfiri potest*. *Cæs. Inimicitie subeantur*, *Cic.*

QUEO, I can, and *NEQUEO*, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

VOLO, völuī, velle, *to will, or to be willing.*

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pr.</i>	Völ-o,	vīs,	vult;	volūmus,	vultis,	volunt.
<i>Im.</i>	Vol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i>	Vol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt,-uere.
<i>Pl.</i>	Vol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,-ueratis	-uerant.	
<i>Fu.</i>	Vol-am,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i>	Velim,	-velis,	-velit;	velīmus,	velītis,	velint.
<i>Im.</i>	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	velletis,	vellent.
<i>Per.</i>	Vol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Vol-uissē,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Vol-uerō,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Infinitive.

Pres. Velle.

Perf. Voluisse.

Participle.

Pres. Volens.

The rest not used.

NOLO, nölui, nolle, *to be unwilling.*

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pr.</i>	Nölo,	nön vīs;	nön-vult;	nolūmus,	nön-vultis,	nolunt.
<i>Im.</i>	Nol-ebām,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebāmus,-ebatis,	-ebant.	
<i>Per.</i>	Nol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt.
						-uere.
<i>Plu.</i>	Nol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,-ueratis,	-uerant.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Nolam,	nöles,	nolet;	-nolemus,-noletis,	nolent.	

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pr.</i>	Nölim,	nölīs,	nölīt;	nölīmus,	nölītis,	nölint.
<i>Im.</i>	Nöllem,	nölles,	nöllet;	nöllemus,	nölletis,	nöllent.
<i>Per.</i>	Nol-uerim	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Nol-uissē,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Nol-uerō,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Participle.

2. *Sing.* 2. *Plur.*

<i>Pr.</i>	{	Noli, vel	{	nolite, vel	<i>Pr.</i> Nolle.	<i>Pr.</i> Nolens.
		Nolito :		nolitote.		

MALO,

MALO, malui, malle, *to be more willing.*

Indicative Mood.

Pr. Māl-o, mavis, mavult; malūmus, mavultis, malunt.
Im. Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per. Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.
Plu. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Malam, -es, -et: &c. *This is scarcely in use.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Pr. Malim, malis, malit; malīmus, malitis, malint.
Im. Mallem, malles, mallet; mallemus, malletis, mallent.
Per. Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Plu. Mal-uiffem, -uiffes, -uiffet; -uiffemus, -uiffetis, -uiffent.
Fut. Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. Malle. *Perf.* Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, tūli, lātum, ferre, *to carry, to bring or suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Pr. Fēro, fers, fert; ferīmus, fertis, ferunt.
Im. Fer-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per. Tuli, tulisti, tulit; tulimus, -tulistis, -tulerunt, -ere.
Plu. Tul-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.
Fut. Feram, feres, feret; feremus, feretis, ferent.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pr. Feram, feras, ferat; feramus, feratis, ferant.
Im. Ferrem, ferres, ferret; ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.
Per. Tul-erim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
Plu. Tul-iffem, -iffes, -iffet; -iffemus, -iffetis, -iffent.
Fut. Tul-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Pr. { Fer, fertō : { ferte, ferunto. *Pr.* Ferre.
 { Fertō, fertō : { fertote, ferunto. *Per.* Tulisse.
Fut. Esse laturus, a, um.
 Fuisse laturus, a, um.

Participles.

Gerunds.

Supines.

Pres. Fērens. *Ferendum.* 1. Lātum.
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um, *Ferendi.* 2. Latu.
Ferendo, &c.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, lātus, ferri, *to be brought.**Indicative Mood.*Pr. Fēror, ^{ferri,}
^{vel ferre,} fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.Im. Fer-ebat, ^{-ebaris,}
^{vel -ebare,} -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.

Perf. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.

Plu. Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.

Fut. Ferar, ^{ferēris,}
^{vel ferere,} feretur; -feremur, feremini, ferentur.*Subjunctive Mood.*Pr. Ferar, ^{feraris,}
^{vel ferare,} feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.Im. Ferrer, ^{ferreris,}
^{vel ferrere,} ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.

Per. Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c.

Plu. Latus essem, &c. latus fuisset, &c.

Fut. Latus fuero, &c.

Imperative Mood.

Pref. Ferre vel fertor, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

Pref. Ferri. Perf. Latus, -a, -um.

Perf. Esse vel fuisse latus, -a, um. Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um.

Fut. Latum iri.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fēro*: as, *affēro*, *attūli*, *allatum*; *aufēro*, *abstūli*, *ablatum*; *diffēro*, *distūli*, *dilatatum*; *confēro*, *contūli*, *collatum*; *infēro*, *intūli*, *illatum*; *offēro*, *obtūli*, *oblutum*; *effēro*, *extūli*, *elatum*. So *circum-*, *per-*, *trans-*, *de-*, *pro-*, *ante-*, *præ-*, *re-fēro*. In some writers we find *adfero*, *adtūli*, *adlatum*; *constatum*, *inlatum*; *obfero*, &c. for *aff-ero*, &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, are contracted for *vōlis*, *vōlit*, *vōlitis*, the *o* being changed into *u*. In old writers we find *volt*, *voltis* for *vult*, *vultis*. *Nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *malo*, for *magis volo*; *fero*, *feri*, *fert*, &c. for *feris*, *ferit*, &c. *Feror*, *ferris*, v. *ferre*, *fertur*, for *ferēris*, *feritur*, &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, and *fācio* are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, instead of *dīce*, *dūce*, *fāce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

FIO, factus, fieri, *to be made or done, to become.**Indicative Mood.*

Pr. Fīo, fis, fit; fimus, fitis, fiunt.

Im. Fiebam, fiebas, fiebat; fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.

Perf. Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.

Pl. Factus eram, &c. factus fueram, &c.

Fut. Fiam, fies, fiet; fiemus, fietis, fient.

Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mood.

Pr. Fiam, fias, fiat; fiamus, fiatis, fiant.
Im. Fierem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.
Per. Factus sim, &c. factus fuerim, &c.
Plu. Factus essem, &c. factus fuisset, &c.
Fut. Factus fuero, &c.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Pr. { Fi, fito; } { fite, fiunto. } *Pr.* Fieri.
 { Fito, } { fitote, } *Per.* Esse vel fuisse factus, a, um.
Fut. Factum iri.

Participles.

Supine.

Per. Factus, -a, -um. Factu.
Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um.

The compounds of *fācio* which retain *a*, have also *fo* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as, *cālēfācio*, to warm, *calefio*, *calefac*: but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fice* in the imperative; as, *conficio*, *confice*; *conficior*, *conficior*, *confici*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confieri*; *desit*, it is wanting; *infit*, he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called NEUTER PASSIVE Verbs, which, like *fo*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sōleo*, *sōlitus*, *sōlere*, to use; *āudeo*, *āusus*, *āudēre*, to dare; *gaudeo*, *gāvīsus*, *gaudēre*, to rejoice; *fīdo*, *fīsus*, *fīdēre*, to trust: So *confīdo*, to trust; and *difīdo*, to distrust; which also have *confīdī*, and *difīdī*. Some add *mareo*, *maestus*, *marere*, to be sad; but *maestus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *jūratu* sum and *canatu* sum, for *juravi* and *canaui*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vāpūlo*, -avi, -atum, to be beaten or whipped; *vōneo*, to be sold; *exūlo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons.

These three, *ōdi*, *cāpi*, and *mēmīni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification; thus,

Odi, I hate, or have hated, *oderam*, *oderim*, *odissem*, *odero*, *odisse*. Participles, *ōsus*, *ōsūrus*: *exōsus*, *perōsus*.

Cāpi, I begin or have begun, *cāperam*, -*crim*, -*issem*, -*ero*, -*isse*. Supine, *cāptu*. Participles, *cāptus*, *cāpturus*.

Mēmīni, I remember, or have remembered, *meminēram*, *-ērim*, *-iſſem*, *-ēro*, *-iſſe*: Imperative, 2 perf. *memento*, *mementōte*.

Instead of *ōdī*, we ſometimes ſay, *ōſus ſum*; and always *exōſus*, *perōſus ſum*, and not *exōdī*, *perōdī*. We ſay, *opus capit fieri* or *captum eſt*.

To theſe ſome add *nōvi*, becauſe it frequently has the ſignification of the preſent, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*; though it comes from *noſco*, which is complete.

Fūro, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to ſpeak, as alſo, *der* and *fer*, are not uſed in the firſt perſon ſingular; thus, we ſay, *dāris*, *dātur*; but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following moſt frequently occur: *Aio*, I ſay, *inquam*, I ſay, *fōrem*, I ſhould be; *auſim*, contracted for *auſus ſim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll ſee to it, or I will do it; *āve* and *ſalve*, ſave you, hail, good-morrow; *cedo*, tell thou, or give me; *quæſo*, I pray.

<i>Ind. Pr.</i>	<i>Aio</i> ,	<i>aīs</i> ,	<i>ait</i> :	—	—	<i>aīunt</i> .
<i>Im.</i>	<i>Aiebam</i> ,	<i>-ēbas</i> ,	<i>-ebat</i> :	<i>-ebamus</i> ,	<i>-ebatis</i> ,	<i>-ebant</i> .
<i>Per.</i>	—	<i>aīſſi</i> ,	—	—	—	—
<i>Sub. Pref.</i>	—	<i>aīas</i> ,	<i>aiat</i> :	—	<i>aiatis</i> ,	<i>aiant</i> .
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Ai</i> .			<i>Particip. Pref.</i>	<i>Aiens</i> .	
<i>Ind. Pr.</i>	<i>Inquam</i> ,	<i>quis</i> ,	<i>-quit</i> :	<i>-quīmus</i> ,	<i>-quītis</i> ,	<i>-quiunt</i> .
<i>Im.</i>	—	—	<i>inquietabat</i> :	—	—	<i>inquietabant</i> .
<i>Per.</i>	—	<i>inquiſti</i> ,	—	—	—	—
<i>Fut.</i>	—	<i>inquiries</i> ,	<i>inquiet</i> :	—	—	—
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Inque</i> ,	<i>inquīto</i> .	—		<i>Particip. Pr.</i>	<i>Inquiens</i> .
<i>Sub. Im.</i>	} <i>Fōrem</i> ,	<i>fores</i> ,	<i>foret</i> :	<i>forēmus</i> ,	<i>foretis</i> ,	<i>forent</i> .
<i>Plu.</i>						
<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Fōre</i> , to be hereafter, or to be about to be, the ſame with <i>eſſe futurus</i> .					
<i>Sub. Pr.</i>	<i>Auſim</i> ,	<i>auſis</i> ,	<i>auſit</i> :	—	—	—
<i>Per.</i>	<i>Faxim</i> ,	<i>faxis</i> ,	<i>faxit</i> :	—	—	<i>faxint</i> .
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Faxo</i> ,	<i>faxis</i> ,	<i>faxit</i> :	—	<i>faxītis</i> ,	<i>faxint</i> .

Note. *Faxim* and *faxo* are uſed inſtead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

Imperat. 2 perf. ſ. *Ave* vel *avēto*; plur. *avēte* vel *avetote*. *Inf.* *avere*.

— *Salve* v. *ſalvēto*; — *ſalvēte* v. *ſalvētote*. — *ſalvēre*.

Indic. Fut. — *Salvebis*.

Imperat. ſecond perf. ſing. *Cēdo*, plur. *cedite*.

Indic. Pref. firſt perf. ſing. *Quæſo*, plur. *quæſūmus*.

Moſt of the other Defective verbs are but ſingle words, and rarely to be found, but among the poets; as, *inſit*, he begins; *deſit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *ſi*; as, *ſiſ*, for *ſi vis*, if thou wilt; *ſūltis*, for *ſi vultis*; *ſoder*, for *ſi audes*, equivalent to *quæſo*, I pray; *capſis*, for *cape ſi vis*.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any *person* or nominative before it

Impersonal verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *dēlectat*, it delights; *dēcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *ēvenit*, it happens:

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Ind. Pr.	Dēlectat,	Dēcet,	Contingit,	Ēvenit,
Im.	Dēlectabat,	Decebat,	Contingebat,	Eveniebat,
Per.	Dēlectavit,	Decuit,	Contigit,	Ēvenit,
Plu.	Dēlectaverat,	Decuerat,	Contigerat,	Ēvenerat,
Fut.	Dēlectabit.	Decebit.	Continget.	Eveniet.
Sub. Pr.	Dēlectet,	Dēceat,	Contingat,	Ēveniat,
Im.	Dēlectaret,	Decēret,	Contingēret,	Eveniret,
Per.	Dēlectaverit,	Decuerit,	Contigerit,	Ēvenerit,
Plu.	Dēlectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Ēvenisset,
Fut.	Dēlectaverit.	Decuerit.	Contigerit.	Ēvenerit.
Inf. Pr.	Dēlectāre,	Decēre,	Contingēre,	Evenire,
Per.	Dēlectāviffe.	Decuiffe.	Contigiffe.	Eveniffe.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, *fāvētur*, *curritur*, *vēnitur*; from *pugno*, to fight; *favēo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come.

Ind. Pr.	Pugnātur,	Fāvētur,	Curritur,	Vēnitur,
Im.	Pugnabatur,	Favebatur,	Currebatur	Veniebatur,
Per.	Pugnatum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
Plu.	Pugnatum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat,
Fut.	Pugnabitur.	Favebitur.	Curretur.	Venietur.
Sub. Pr.	Pugnātur,	Faveatur,	Curratur,	Veniatur,
Im.	Pugnaretur,	Faveretur,	Curreretur,	Veniretur.
Per.	Pugnatum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
Plu.	Pugnatum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
Fut.	Pugnatum fuerit.	Fautum fuerit.	Cursum fuerit.	Ventum fuerit.
Inf. Pr.	Pugnari,	Faveri,	Curri,	Veniri,
Per.	Pugnatum esse,	Fautum esse,	Cursum esse,	Ventum esse,
Fut.	Pugnatum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive; as, *dēlectet*, let it delight, &c.; nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *pani-*

tens, -dum, -dus, &c. *Induci ad pudendum et pigendum, Cic.* In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obf. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation: *dēet*, it becomes; *panīlet*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *miſēret*, it pities; *piget*, it irks; *plūdet*, it shames; *licet*, it is lawful; *libet* or *libet*, it pleases; *tudet*, it wearies; *liquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *miſeret, miſeruit, or miſertum eſt*; *piget, piguit, or pigitum eſt*; *pu-det, puduit, or puditum eſt*; *licet, licuit, or licitum eſt*; *libet, libuit, or libitum eſt*; *tudet, tudit, tatum eſt, oftener pertaſum eſt*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations:

In the first conjug. *ſolvat, ſpeſcit, vdat, ſtat, conſtat, praſtat, veſtat, &c. datur, ſtat, corſtat, peccatur, imperatur, &c.*

In the second, *Apparet, attinet, peritnet, dēbet, dōlet, nō-ct, lātet, liquet, pōct, dācet, diſpōct, vdet, tōlet, &c. ſavetur, nocetur, &c.*

In the third, *Ardeat, incipit, deſinit, ſufficit, &c.*

In the fourth, *Convēnit, expēdit, &c.*

Alſo Irregular verbs, *Eſt, vbeſt, prōdeſt, pōceſt, intēreſt, ſupdeſt*; *ſit, praeterit, nequit, and nequitur, ſubit, conſert, reſert, &c.*

Obf. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended thoſe which expreſs the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgurat, fulminat, tonat, grandinat, gelat, pluit, ningit, luceſcit, adveſperat, &c.*

Obf. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any perſon or number, by putting that which ſtands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the caſes which they govern; as, *placet mihi, tibi, illi*, it pleases me, thee, him; or I please, thou pleaſeſt, &c. *pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fighteſt, he fighteth, &c. So *Carritur, venitur a me, a te, a nobis, a militibus, &c.* I run, thou runneſt, &c. *Favetur tibi a me*, Thou art favoured by me, or I favour thee, &c.

Obf. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they expreſs, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus we can ſay, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot ſay, *ſi placeas audire*, if you pleaſe to hear, but *ſi placet tibi audire*. So, we can ſay, *multa homini contingunt*, many things happen to a man: but inſtead of *ego contigi eſſe domi*, we muſt either ſay, *me contigit eſſe domi*, or *mibi contigit eſſe domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant uſe of Impersonal verbs can be acquired only by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Thoſe are called *Redundant Verbs*, which have different forms to expreſs the ſame ſenſe: thus, *aſſentio* and *aſſentior*, to agree; *fabrico* and *fabricor*, to frame; *merco* and *mercor*, to deſerve, &c. Theſe verbs, however, under the paſſive form have likewiſe a paſſive ſignification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are uſually of the firſt conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lavo, lavat, lavare*; and *lavo, lavas, lavare*, to waſh.

2. Some are uſually of the ſecond, and rarely of the third; as, *Ferveo, ferves, and fervo, fervis, to boil.*

Fulgeo, fulges, and fulgo, fulgis, to ſhine.

Strideo, strides, and strido, stridis, to make a hissing noise, to creak.

Tueor, tuēris, and tuor, tuēris, to defend.

To these add *tergeo, terges*; and *tergo, tergis*, to wipe, which are equally common

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,

Fodio, fodis, fodere, and fodio, fodis, fodire, to dig.

Sallo, fallis, fallere, and sallo, fallis, fallere, to salt.

Arcesso, -is, arcessere, and arcessio, arcessere, to send for.

Morior, morēris, mori, and morior, morēris, moriri, to die.

So Orior, orēris, and orior, orēris, oriri, to rise.

Potior, potēris, and potior, potēris, potiri, to enjoy.

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cicō, cicas, cicere*; and *cio, cis, cire*, to rouse: whence *accire* and *accitus*.

To these we may add the verb *EDO*, to eat, which though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum*; thus,

Ind. Pres. *Edo, edis* or *es, edit* or *est*; — *editis* or *estis* —

Sub. Imperf. *Ederem* or *essem, ederes* or *esses, &c.*

Imp. *Ede* or *es, edito* or *esto*; *edite* or *estis*; *editote* or *estote*.

Inf. Pres. *Edere* or *esse*.

Passive, Ind. Pres. *Editur* or *estur*.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs, which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated:

Aggēro, -as, to heap up.

Appello, -as, to call.

Compello, -as, to address.

Colligo, -as, to bind.

Consterno, -as, to astonish.

Effēro, -as, to enrage.

Fundo, -as, to found.

Mando, -as, to command.

Obsēro, -as, to lock.

Volo, -as, to fly.

Aggēro, -is, to bring together.

Appello, -is, to drive to, to arrive at.

Compello, -is, to drive together.

Colligo, -is, to gather together.

Consterno, -is, to stress.

Effēro, -fers, to bring out.

Fundo, -is, to pour out.

Mando, -is, to chere.

Obsēro, -is, to beset.

Volo, vis, to will.

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

Cōlo, -as, to strain through a cloth.

Dīco, -as, to dedicate.

Ēdūco, -as, to train up.

Lēgo, -as, to send on an embassy.

Vādo, -as, to wade.

Cōlo, -is, to till.

Dīco, -is, to say.

Ēdūco, -is, to lead for: b.

Lēgo, -is, to read.

Vādo, -is, to go.

2. The following verbs agree in the preterite :

Æcco, acui, to be four.

Cresco, crevi, to grow.

Frigeo, frixi, to be cold.

Fulgeo, fulsi, to shine.

Luceo, luxi, to shine.

Paveo, pavi, to be afraid.

Pendo, pependi, to hang.

Acuo, acui, to sharpen.

Cerno, crevi, to see.

Frigo, frixi, to fry.

Fulcio, fulsi, to prop.

Lugeo, luxi, to mourn.

Paſco, pavi, to feed.

Pendo, pependi, to weigh.

3. The following agree in the supine :

Cresco, cretum, to grow.

Manco, mansum, to stay.

Sto, statum, to stand.

Succenseo, -censum, to be angry.

Teneo, tentum, to hold.

Verro, verſum, to sweep.

Vinco, victum, to overcome.

Cerno, cretum, to behold.

Mando, mansum, to chew.

Sisto, statum, to stop.

Succendo, -censum, to kindle.

Tendo, tentum, to stretch out.

Verto, verſum, to turn.

Vivo, victum, to live.

THE OBSOLETE CONJUGATION.

This occurs chiefly in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM*, without the *e*; as, *audibam, scibam*; for *audiēbam, sciēbam*.

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *ibor* in the passive voice: as, *dormitō, dormitor*, for *dormiam, dormiar*.

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM*: as, *edim*, for *edam*; *duim* for *dem*.

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM*. and the future in *SSO*; as, *levassim, levasso*, for *levaverim, levavero*; *capſim, capſo*, for *ceperim, cepero*: Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE*: as, *levassere* for *levaturus esse*.

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *minor* in the plural; as *fumino*, for *fare*; and *progrēdiminor* for *progrēdimini*.

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as, *fariet* for *fari*; *dicier* for *dici*.

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable: thus, *credo inimicos dicturum esse*, for *dicturos*, Cic. *Cobortes ad me missum facias*, for *missas*, Cic. ad. Attic. viii. 12.

DERIVATION and COMPOSITION of VERBS.

I. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*; as, *Cano*, I sup; *laudo*, I praise; *fraudo*, I defraud; *lapido*, I throw stones; *opëror*, I work; *frumentor*, I forage; *lignor*, I gather fuel, &c. from *cana*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance,

semblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patrīſſo*, *Græcor*, *bûbûlo*, *cornîcor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Græcian, an owl, a crow, &c. from *pater*, *Græcus*, *cornix*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desiderative*s.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *âtû* into *îtû*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *û* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, I cry, *clâmîto*, I cry frequently: *terreo*, *terrîto*; *verto*, *verſo*; *dormio*, *dormîto*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minûor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nâto* from *no*; *noſcîto* from *noſco*; *ſcîtor*, or rather *ſeîſcîtor*, from *ſcîo*; *pavîto*, from *paves*; *ſeîtor*, from *ſequor*, *loquîtor*, from *loquor*. So *querîto*, *fundîto*, *agîto*, *fluîto*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other Frequentatives; as *curro*, *curſo*, *curſîto*; *pello*, *pulſo*, *pulſîto*, or by contraction *pulto*; *capio*, *capto*, *capîto*; *cano*, *canto*, *canîto*; *defendo*, *deſenſo*, *deſenſîto*; *dico*, *dicîto*, *dicîto*; *gero*, *geſo*, *geſîto*; *jacio*, *jacîto*; *jacîto*; *vento*, *venîto*; *mutio*, *muſſo*, (for *mutîto*.) *muſſîto*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person sing. of the present of the indicative, by adding *eo*: as, *caleo*, to be hot, *cales*, *caleſco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labiſco*, from *labo*: *tremiſco*, from *tremo*; *abdormiſco*, from *abdormio*. *Hiſco*, from *bio*, is contracted for *biaſco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *pueraſco*, from *puer*; *dulceſco*, from *dulcis*; *juveniſco*, from *juvenis*.

All Inceptives are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DÉSIDERATIVE Verbs* signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *rio*, and shortening the *û*: as, *canâtûrio*, I desire to sup, from *canatu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *êûrio*, *-îvi*, *-îtum*, to desire to eat; *partûrio*, *-îvi*, —, to be in travail; *nuptûrio*, *-îvi*, —, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in I.L.O., which are called *Diminutive*; as, *canâtîlo*, *ſorbîllo*, *-are*, I sing, I sup a little: To these some add *albîco* and *canâico*, *-are*, to be or to grow whitish; also *niprico*, *ſodîco*, and *velliîco*. Some verbs in S.S.O. are called *Intensive*; as *Copîſſo*, *ſacîſſo*, *petîſſo* or *petiſſo*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

II. Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of the simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fûto*, *ſendo*, *ſpecîo*, *grûo*, &c. The component parts usually

remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as *prodeo*, for *pro-co*: or taken away; as, *asporto*, *omitto*, *trado*, *pejoro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præbeo*, &c. for *abporto*, *obmitto*, *transdo*, *perjuro*, *perrego*, *debibeo*, *præbibeo*, &c. So *demo*, *promo*, *sumo*, of *de-*, *pro-*, *sub-*, and *emo*, which anciently signified *to take* or *to take away*. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, is changed: as, *damno*, *condemno*; *calco*, *conculco*; *lædo*, *collido*; *audio*, *obœdïo*, &c. *Affero*, *aufero*, *collaudo*, *implico*, &c. for *adfero*, *abfero*, *conlaudo*, *inplico*, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it *partakes* both of an adjective and of a verb, having in *Latin* gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both. Participles in *English*, like adjectives, admit of no variation.

Participles in *Latin* are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only participles in *dus* are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love; and the perfect and future passive; as, *amatus*, loved, *amandus*, to be loved.

The *Latins* have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in *English*, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in *Latin*, or some other tense, according to its connection with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two participles; as, *Sedens*, *sessurus*; *sians*, *siaturus*.

From some Neuter Verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tense; as, *Erratus*, *festinatus*, *juratus*, *laboratus*, *vigilatus*, *cessatus*, *sudatus*, *triumphatus*, *regnatus*, *decursus*, *desitus*, *emeritus*, *emersus*, *obitus*, *placitus*, *successus*, *occusus*, &c. and also of the future in *dus*; as, *Jurandus*, *vigilandus*, *regnandus*, *dormiendus*, *erubescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle: *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fsus*; *soleo*, *solens* and *solitus*; *vapulo*, *vapulans* and *vapulaturus*; *Gaudeo*, *gadiens*, *gavifus*, and *gavifurus*; *Audeo*, *audens*, *ausus*, *ausurus*, *audendus*. *Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti*. *Virg. Æn. vi. 624.*

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

Loquens,

Loquens, speaking; *locuturus*, about to speak; *locutus*, having spoken; *loquendus* to be spoken; *Dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many Participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominatus*, *conatus*, *confessus*, *adortus*, *amplexus*, *blanditus*, *lurgatus*, *mentitus*, *oblitus*, *testatus*, *veneratus*, &c.

There are several Participles compounded with *in* signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition; as, *Insciens*, *insperans*, *indicens*, for *non dicens*, *inopinans*, and *neopinans*, *immerens*; *Illeus*, *impransus*, *inconsultus*, *incustoditus*, *immetatus*, *impunitus*, *imparatus*, *incomptus*, *indemnatus*, *inletatus*, *incorruptus*, *interritus*, and *impertisritus*, *intestatus*, *inausus*, *inopinatus*, *inultus*, *incensus*, for *non census*, not registered; *infectus*, for *non factus*, *invisus*, for *non visus*, *indictus*, for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo*; *infectus* from *inficio*; *invisus* from *invideo*; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

Amans, loving, *amantior*, *amantissimus*; *doctus*, learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus*; or a substantive; as, *Præfectus*, a commander or governor; *consonans*, f. sc. *litera*, a consonant; *continens* f. sc. *terra*, a continent; *confluens*, m. sc. *fluvius*, a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occidens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS*, *ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which although resembling participles are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs; as, *alatus*, *barbatus*, *cordatus*, *caudatus*, *criflatus*, *auratus*, *pellitus*, *turratus*; *asutus*, *cornutus*, *nasutus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus*, *aratus*, *argentatus*, *feratus*, *plumbatus*, *gypfatus*, *calceatus*, *clypeatus*, *galeatus*, *tunicatus*, *laxvatus*, *palliatuſ*, *lymphatus*, *purpuratus*, *prætextatus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistratus*, frizzled, crisped or curled, *crinatus*, having long hair, *peritus*, skilled. &c.

There is a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much; *Sall. Jug. 60.* and *101.* *Liv. xxv. 13.* So *errabundus*, *ludibundus*, *populobundus*, *moribundus*, &c.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the

the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund, *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs is *io*, and some others, often take *u* instead of *e*; as *faciundum, di, do, dus*; *experiundum, potiundum, gerundum, petundum, diundum, &c.* for *faciendum, &c.*

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds: and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *sectum non vapulatum dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem, v. verberarer*, to be beaten, Plaut.

ADVERB.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, *added to a verb, adjective, or other adverb*, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality, manner, &c.*

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place, Time, and Order.*

1. Adverbs of *Place*, are fivefold, namely, such as signify,

1. <i>Motion or rest in a place.</i>		Illic,	} <i>Thither.</i>
Ubi?	<i>Where?</i>	Istuc,	
Hic,	<i>Here.</i>	Intro,	<i>In.</i>
Illic,	} <i>There.</i>	Fõras,	<i>Out.</i>
Isthic,		Eò,	<i>To that place.</i>
Ibi,		Aliò,	<i>To another place.</i>
Intus,	<i>Within.</i>	Aliquò,	<i>To some place.</i>
Fõris,	<i>Without.</i>	Eòdem,	<i>To the same place.</i>
ubiquè,	<i>Every where.</i>	3. <i>Motion towards a place.</i>	
Nusquam,	<i>No where.</i>	Quorsum?	<i>Whither?</i>
Allicubi,	<i>Some where.</i>	Versus,	<i>Towards.</i>
Alibi,	<i>Else where.</i>	Horsum,	<i>Hitherward.</i>
ubivis,	<i>Any where.</i>	Ilorsum,	<i>Thitherward.</i>
Ibidem,	<i>In the same place.</i>	Sorsum,	<i>Upward.</i>
2. <i>Motion to a place.</i>		Deorsum,	<i>Downward.</i>
Quò?	<i>Whither?</i>	Antrorsum,	<i>Forward.</i>
Huc,	<i>Hither.</i>	Retrorsum,	<i>Backward.</i>
			<i>Dextrorsum,</i>

Dextrorsum,	Towards the right.	Utrinque,	On both sides.
Sinistrorsum,	Towards the left.	Süperne,	From above.
4. Motion from a place.			
Unde?	Whence?	Inferne,	From below.
Hinc,	Hence.	Cælitus,	From heaven.
Illinc,	} Thence.	Funditus,	From the ground.
Isthinc,		5. Motion through or by a place.	
Inde,		Quà?	Which way?
Indidem,	From the same place.	Hæc,	This way.
Aliunde,	From else where.	Illac,	} That way.
Allicunde,	From some place.	Isthac,	
Sicunde,	If from any place.	Alià,	Another way.

2. Adverbs of Time are threefold, namely, such as signify,

1. Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.				
Nunc,	Now.	Nunquam,	Never.	
Hödie,	To day.	Interim,	In the mean time.	
Tunc,	} Then.	Quötidie,	Daily.	
Tum,		2. Continuance of time.		
Hëri,	Yesterday.	Diu,	Long.	
Düdum,	} Heretofore.	Quamdiu?	How long?	
Pridem,		Tamdiu,	So long.	
Prödie,	The day before.	Jamdiu,	} Long ago.	
Nüdius tertius,	Three days ago.	Jamdüdum,		
Nüper,	Lately.	Jampridem,		
Jamjam,	Presently.	3. Vicissitude or repetition of time.		
Mox,	Immediately.	Quöties?	How often?	
Stärim,	By and by.	Sæpe,	Often.	
Prörinus,	Instantly.	Räro,	Seldom.	
Illico,	Straightway.	Tötici,	So often.	
Cras,	To-morrow.	Aliquöties,	For several times.	
Postridie,	The day after.	Vicissim,	} By turns.	
Pércendie,	Two days hence.	Alternätim,		
Nondum,	Not yet.	Rurfus,	} Again.	
Quando?	When?	Iterum,		
Aliquando,	} Sometimes.	Sübinde,	Ever and anon, now	
Nonnunquam,		and then.	Semel,	Once.
Interdum,		Bis,	Twice.	
Semper,	Ever, always.	Ter,	Three times.	
		Quäter,	Four times, &c.	

3. Adverbs of Order.

Inde,	Then.	Dénique,	Finally.
Deinde,	After that.	Postremò,	Lastly.
Dehinc,	Henceforth.	Primò, -um,	First.
Porro,	Moreover.	Sécundò, -um,	Secondly.
Deinceps,	So forth.	Tertiò, -um,	Thirdly.
Denuo,	Of new.	Quartiò, -um,	Fourthly, &c.

II. Adverbs

II. Adverbs denoting **QUALITY, MANNER, &c.** are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called **ABSOLUTE** denote,

1. **QUALITY**, simply; as *bene*, well; *malè*, ill; *fortiter*, bravely; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.
2. **CERTAINTY**; as, *profecèdò*, *certè*, *sànè*, *plànè*, *nè*, *utique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *omnino*, certainly.
3. **CONTINGENCE**; as, *forè*, *forfan*, *fortassis*, *forè*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.
4. **NEGATION**; as, *non*, *haud*, not; *nequàquam*, not at all; *neutiquam*, by no means; *minime*, nothing less.
5. **PROHIBITION**; as, *ne*, not.
6. **SWEARING**; as, *berce*, *pol*, *edèpol*, *mècastor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, by the temple of Pollux, &c.
7. **EXPLAINING**; as, *utpòte*, *vidèlicet*, *scilicet*, *nimirum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely, that is, that is to say.
8. **SEPARATION**; as, *seorsum*, apart; *sèparàtim*, separately; *sìgil-latim*, one by one; *virìtim*, man by man; *oppidàtim*, town by town, &c.
9. **JOINING TOGETHER**; as, *sìmul*, *undè*, *pàrìter*, together; *gènèralitèr*, generally; *unìversalitèr*, universally; *plèrumque*, for the most part.
10. **INDICATION or POINTING out**; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.
11. **INTERROGATION**; as, *cur*, *quàre*, *quamobrem*, why, wherefore? *num*, *an*, whether? *quòmodo*, *què*, how? To which add, *Ubi*, *quò*, *quorsum*, *undè*, *quà*, *quando*, *quamdiu*, *quoties*.

Those Adverbs which are called **COMPARATIVE** denote,

1. **EXCESS**; as, *Valde*, *maximè*, *magnopère*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *admòdum*, *oppidò*, *perquam*, *longè*, very much, exceedingly; *nimis*, *nimiùm*, too much; *prorsus*, *pénitus*, *omnino*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *melius*, better; *pejus*, worse; *fortius*, more bravely; and *optimè*, best; *pejssimè*, worst; *fortissimè*, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.
2. **DEFECT**; as, *Ferme*, *serè*, *pròpemòdum*, *pènè*, almost; *pàrum*, little; *paulo*, *paululum*, very little.
3. **PREFERENCE**; as, *pòtius*, *sàtius*, rather; *pòtissimùm*, *præcipuè*, *præsertim*, chiefly, especially; *imo*, yes, nay, nay rather.
4. **LIKENESS or EQUALITY**; as, *ita*, *sic*, *adèò*, so; *ut*, *uti*, *sicut*, *sicuti*, *vèlut*, *vèluti*, *ceu*, *tànquam*, *quasi*, as, as if; *quemadmodum*, even as; *sàtis*, enough; *isidè*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equally.
5. **UNLIKENESS or UNEQUALITY**; as, *aliter*, *secus*, otherwise; *aliòqui* or *aliòquin*, else; *nedum*, much more or much less.
6. **ABATÈMENT**; as, *sensim*, *paulàtim*, *pèssèntim*, by degrees, piecemeal; *vix*, scarcely; *agrè*, hardly, with difficulty.
7. **EXCLUSION**; as, *tantum*, *sòlum*, *modò*, *tantummodo*, *duntaxat*, *dènum*, only.

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, and COMPOSITION of ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in *TUM* or *TUS*; as, *partim*, partly, by parts; *nominatim*, by name; *generatim*, by kinds, generally; *speciatim*, *vocatim*, *gregatim*; *radicitus*, from the root, &c. 2. From Adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in *E*; as, *liberè*, freely; *plene*, fully: Some in *O*, *UM*, and *TER*; as, *facile*, *tantum*, *largiter*: A few in *A*, *TIUS*, and *IM*; as *rectè*, *antiquitus*, *privatim*. Some are used two or three ways, as *primò*, v. -ò; *purè*, -iter; *certe*, -ò; *caute*, -tim; *humanè*, -iter, -itus; *publicè*, *publicitus*, &c.—Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in *TER*, seldom in *E*; as, *turpiter*, *feliciter*, *acriter*, *pariter*; *facile*, *repente*: one in *O*, *omnino*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken adverbially; as, *recent natus*, for *recenter*; *perfidum ridens*, for *perfidè*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for *multum* or *valde*, Virg. So in English we say, *to speak loud, high*, &c. for *loudly, highly*, &c. In many cases a Substantive is understood; as, *primò*, i. e. *loco*; *optatò advenis*, i. e. *tempore*; *hic*, i. e. *viâ*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as, from *ILLE*, *illic*, *illuc*, *illorsum*, *illinc*, and *illac*. So, from *QUIS*, *ubi*, *quò*, *quorsum*, *unde* and *quâ*. Also of time: thus, *quando*, *quandiu*, &c.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *cesim*, with the edge; *punctim*, with the point; *strictim*, closely; from *cado*, *pungo*, *stringo*: *amanter*, *properanter*, *dubitanter*; *diffidentè*, *emendatè*; *meritò*, *inopinatò*, &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood, which is also sometimes expressed.

5. From prepositions; as, *intus*, *intrò*, from *in*; *clanculum*, from *clam*; *subtus*, from *sub*, &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; as, *durè*, *facile*, *acriter*: The *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *durius*, *facilius*, *acrius*: The *superlative*, in *ime*; as, *durissimè*, *facillimè*, *acerrimè*.

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too: as, *benè*, *melius*, *optimè*; *malè*, *pejus*, *pejussimè*; *parum*, *minus*, *minimè*, & -um; *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*; *propè*, *propius*, *proximè*; *oculus*, *oculissimè*; *prius*, *primò*, -um; *nuper*, *nuperrimè*; *novè*, & *noviter*, *novissimè*; *meritò*, *meritissimò*, &c. Those adverbs also are compared, whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sapè*, *sapius*, *sapissimè*; *penitus*, *penitius*, *penitissimè*; *satis*, *satius*; *secus*, *secius*; &c. *Magis*, *maximè*; and *potius*, *potissimum*, want the positive.

Adverbs in English are not varied by comparison, except some few of them, particularly irregulars; as, *often*, *oftener*, *oftenest*; *well*, *better*, *best*; *much*, *more*, *most*, &c.

Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *postridie*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *tantopere*,
N multimodis,

multimōdis, omnimōdis, quomōdo, quare; of postero die; magno opere, &c. Illicet, scilicet, videlicet, of ire, scire, videre, licet; illico, of in loco: comminus, hand to hand, of cum or con and manus; eminus, at a distance, of e and manus; quorsum, of quò versum; denuo, anew, of de novo; quin, why not, but, of qui ne; cur, of cui rei; pedetentim, step by step, as it were pedem tendendo; perendie, for perempto die; nimirum, of ne, i. e. non and mirum; antea, postea, præterea, &c. of ante and ea, &c. Ubivis, quovis, undelibet, quovisque, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, desuper, insuper, quomobrem, &c. of ubi, and vis, &c. nudiustertius, of nunc dies tertius; identidem, of idem et idem; impræsentiarum, i. e. in tempore rerum præsentium, &c.

Obs. 1. The adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientiâ*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel* for *unâ vice*; *bis*, for *duabus vicibus*; *Mæhercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other: as, *ubi*, where or when; *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hæcenus*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c. *eatenus, quatenus*, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past*, *present*, or *future*; as, *jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, *esse peregrè*, to be abroad; *ire peregrè*, to go abroad; *redire peregrè*, to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque*, answer to the English adjection *so ever*; as, *ubi-ubi*, or *ubicunque*, wheresoever; *quoquò, quòcunque* whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in other interrogative words; as, *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever; *quantusquantus*, or *quantuscunque*, how great soever; *utut* or *utcunque*, however or howsoever, &c.—In English, the adverbs *here*, *there*, and *where*, when joined to certain participles or prepositions, as, *to*, *of*, *by*, *with*, *in*, &c. have the signification of pronouns; as, *hereof*, the same with *of this*; *thereof*, the same with *of that*; *whereof*, *of which*, &c.

PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is an indeclinable word which shews the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight Prepositions in Latin, which govern the accusative; that is, have an accusative after them.

Ad,	To.	Cis,	} On this side.
Apud,	At.	Citra,	
Ante,	Before.	Circa,	} About.
Adversus,	} Against, towards.	Circum,	
Adversum,		Erga,	Towards.
Contra,	Against	Extra,	Without, not within.

Inter.

Inter,	<i>Between, among.</i>	Pŕenes,	<i>In the power of.</i>
Intra,	<i>Within.</i>	Post,	<i>After.</i>
Infra,	<i>Beneath.</i>	Pōne,	<i>Behind.</i>
Juxta,	<i>Nigh to.</i>	Sĕcus,	<i>By, along.</i>
Ob,	<i>For.</i>	Sĕcundum,	<i>According to.</i>
Propter,	<i>For, hard by.</i>	Supra,	<i>Above.</i>
Per,	<i>By, through.</i>	Trans,	<i>On the farther side.</i>
Præter,	<i>Besides, except.</i>	Ultra,	<i>Beyond.</i>

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen; namely,

A,	} <i>From, or by.</i>	De,	<i>Of, concerning.</i>
Ab,		E,	} <i>Of, out of.</i>
Abs,		Ex,	
Abſque,	<i>Without.</i>	Pro,	<i>For.</i>
Cum,	<i>With.</i>	Præ,	<i>Before.</i>
Clam,	} <i>Without the knowledge of.</i>	Pålam,	<i>With the knowledge of.</i>
Cōram,		} <i>Before, in the presence of.</i>	Sine,
			Tĕnus,

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative:

In, *In, into.* Sub, *Under.* Sŭper, *Above.* Subter, *Beneath.*

Obſ. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the word with which they are joined. Some, however, are put after; as, *cum* when joined with *me, te, se,* and sometimes with *quo, quæ, and quibus*: thus, *meum, tecum, &c.* *Tenus* is always placed after; as *mento tenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are the adverbs *versus* and *usque*; and *ward*, in English; as, *toward, eastward, &c.*

Obſ. 2. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs; as, *subire*, to undergo. In English they are frequently put after verbs; as, *to go in, to go out, to look to, &c.*

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together; as, *Ex adversus eum locum*, Cic. Div. 1, 45. *Ex adversum Athenas*, C. Nep. 2, 3. *In ante diem quartum Kalendarum Decembris distulit*, i. e. *usque in eum diem*, Cic. Phil. 3, 8. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum idus Octob. i. e. ab eo die*, Liv. *Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris*, Plin. 11, 16. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions; as, *propålam, protinus, insŭper, &c.*

Obſ. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification: as, *adeo*, I go to: *propōno*, I place before. But from this there are several exceptions. 1. *IN* joined with adjectives generally denotes privation; as, *infidus*, unfaithful: but when joined with verbs, increases their signification; as, *induro*, I harden greatly. In some words *in* has two contrary senses; as, *invocatus*, called upon, or not called upon. So *infrĕnatus, immutatus, insuetus, impenus, inbumatus, intentatus, infractus, &c.* 2. *PER* commonly increases the

signification; as, *Percārus, percēler, percōmis, percuriōsus, perdifficilis, perelēgans, pergrātus, pergrāvis, perhospitālis, perilluſtris, perlatuſ, &c.* very dear, very ſwift, &c. 3. *PRÆ* ſometimes increaſes; as, *Præclārus, prædīves, prædulcis, prædūrus, præpinguis, prævaliduſ; prævāleo, præpolleo*; and alſo *EX*; as, *Exclāmo, exaggēro, exaugeo, excalcifacio, extenuo, exhibāro, exopto*; but *EX* ſometimes denotes privation, as, *Exſanguis*, bloodleſs, pale; *excors, exanimis, -mo, &c.* 4. *SUB* often diminuiſhes; as, *Subalbiduſ, ſubabſurduſ, ſubamāruſ, ſubdulciſ, ſubgrandiſ, ſubgrāviſ, ſubniger, &c.*; a little white or whitish, &c. *DE* often ſignifieth downward; as, *Decido, decurro, deſcēdo, deſpicio, delābor*: ſometimes increaſes; as, *Deſmo, demīror*; and ſometimes expreſſes privation; as, *Demens, decolor, deformiſ, &c.*

Obſ. 4. There are five or ſix ſyllables, namely, *AM, DI* or *DIS, RE, SE, CON*, which are commonly called, *Inſeparable Prepoſitions*, becauſe they are only to be found in compound words: however they generally add ſomething to the ſignification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	round about.	} as,	Ambio,	to ſurround.
Di,	} aſunder.		Divello,	to pull aſunder.
Dis,			Diſtrāho,	to draw aſunder.
Re,	again.		Rēlēgo,	to read again,
Se,	aſide or apart.		Sēpono,	to lay aſide.
Con,	together.		Concreſco,	to grow together.

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a ſentence, to expreſs ſome paſſion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural ſounds, and common to all languages; as, *Ob! Ab!*

Interjections expreſs in one word a whole ſentence, and thus fitly re- preſent the quickneſs of the paſſions.

The different paſſions have commonly different words to expreſs them; thus,

1. JOY; as, *evax, hey, brave, io!*
2. GRIEF; as, *ah, bei, heu, eheu!* ah, alas, woes me!
3. WONDER; as, *papa! O ſtrange? vab! hah!*
4. PRAISE; as, *euge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apäge!* away, begone, avaunt, off, fy, tuſh!
6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Ob, prob!* O!
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, *atat!* ha, aha!
8. IMPRECATION; as, *væ!* wo, pox on't!
9. LAUGHTER; as, *ba, ba, be!*
10. SILENCING; as, *au, ſt, pax!* ſilence, huſh, 'ſt!
11. CALLING; as, *eho, ebōdam, io, bo!* fo, ho, ho, O!

12. DERISION; as, *bui!* away with!

13. ATTENTION; as, *hem!* ha!

Some interjections denote several different passions: thus, *Vab* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Miserum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus, "You and I, and the boy, read Virgil," is one sentence, made up of these three, by the conjunction and twice employed; *I read Virgil; You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil.* In like manner, "You and I read Virgil, but the boy reads Ovid," is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions and and but.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, ac, atque, que,* and; *etiam, quoque, item,* also; *cum, tum,* both, and. Also their contraries, *nec, neque, neu, neve,* neither, nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive,* either, or.

3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis,* though, although, albeit.

4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, at, atque,* but; *tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumenimvero,* yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

5. CAUSAL; as, *nam, namque, enim,* for; *quia, quippe, quoniam,* because; *quod,* that, because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque,* therefore; *quapropter, quocirca,* wherefore; *proinde,* therefore; *cum, quum,* seeing, since; *quandoquidem,* forasmuch as.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut, uti,* that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si, sin, si,* if; *dum, modo, dummodo,* provided, upon condition that; *siquidem,* if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni, nisi,* unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *saltem, certe,* at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as, *an, anne, num,* whether; *ne, annon,* whether, not; *neque, or not.*

12. EXPLETIVE; as, *autem, verò,* now, truly; *quidem, equidem,* indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde,* thereafter; *denique,* finally; *insuper,* moreover; *etiam, etiam, etiam,* moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c.* to wit, namely, truly,

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both adverbs and conjunctions. Thus, *an, anne, &c.* are either interro-

gative adverbs: *An scribit?* Does he write? or, *suspensive conjunctions*; as, *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obf. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, fin, siquidem, præterquam, &c.*: some stand in the second place; as, *Autem, verò, quoque, quidem, enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpote, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, si, ni, nisi, &c.* Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive, and Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*, because, when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable; as in the following verse,

Indolusque pilæ, discive, trocive, quiescit, Horat. de art. p. 380.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

Arbutos fetus montanæque fraga legebant, Ovid. Met. I, 104.

SEN.

SENTENCES.

A SENTENCE is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another; namely, that of *Concord* or agreement; and that of *Government* or influence.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

General Principles of SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.

3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.

5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.

6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.

7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.

8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.

9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

10. The genitive or possessive case in English always depends on some noun; and the objective or accusative case is put after a verb active or a preposition.

All Sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

Syntax therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A Simple Sentence is that which has but one nominative ; and one finite verb, *that is*, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The **SUBJECT** is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The **ATTRIBUTE** expresses what we affirm concerning the subject, as,

The boy reads his lesson : Here, " the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of ; " reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject.—*The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home* : Here we have still the same subject, " the boy," marked by the character of " diligent," added to it ; and the same attribute, " reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, " carefully," " at home."

CONCORD.

The following words agree together in sentences, 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. Agreement of one Substantive with another.

RULE I. Substantives signifying the same thing, agree in case ; as,

Cicero orator, Cicero the Orator ; *Cicerōnis oratōris*, Of Cicero the Orator.
Urbs Athēnæ, The city Athens ; *Urbis Athēnārum*, Of the city Athens.

2. Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.

II. An Adjective agrees with a Substantive, in gender, number, and case ; as,

<i>Bonus vir</i> , a good man ;	<i>Bonī viri</i> , good men.
<i>Femina casta</i> , a chaste woman ;	<i>Feminae castæ</i> , chaste women.
<i>Dulce pomum</i> , a sweet apple ;	<i>Dulcia poma</i> , sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This

This rule applies also to Adjective pronouns and participles; as *meus liber*, my book; *ager colendus*, a field to be tilled: Plur. *Mei libri*, *agri colendi*, *meorum librorum*, &c.

Obf. 1. The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing, Virg. E. 3, 80. *Scire tuum*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge, Perf. 1, 27. *velle suum cuique est*, for *sua voluntas*, every one has a will of his own, Id. 5, 53. We sometimes however find the substantive understood in the feminine; as, *Non posteriores feram, sup. partes*, Ter. Adolph. 3, 4, 25.

Ob. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as *certus amicus*, a sure friend; *bona ferina*, good venison; *summum bonum*, the chief good: *homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*.—A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incola turba vocant*, the inhabitants, Ovid. *Fast.* 3. 582.

Obf. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extrēmus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *cætera*, usually signify *the first part*, *the middle part*, &c. of any thing; as, *media nox*, the middle part of the night; *summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obf. 4. In English, the adjective generally goes before the noun; as, *a wise man*, *a good horse*; unless something depend upon the adjective; as, *food convenient for me*; or the adjective be emphatical; as, *Alexander the Great*. And the article goes before the Adjective: except the adjectives *all*, *such*, and *many*, and others subjoined to the adverbs *so*, *as*, and *how*; as, *all the men*; *many a man*, *so good a man*; *as good a man*; *how beautiful a prospect*; or when there are two or more adjectives joined to the noun; as, *a man learned and religious*.

Obf. 5. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissimus*, *res presentissima*, &c.

Obf. 6. A substantive in English, sometimes supplies the place of an adjective; as, *sea-water*, *land-fowl*, *forest-trees*, *a stone-arch*, &c.; and even when no hyphen is marked; as, *the London Chronicle*, *the Edinburgh Magazine*.

Obf. 7. Nouns of measure, number, and weight, are sometimes joined in the singular with Numeral Adjectives plural; as, *fifty foot*; *six score*; *ten thousand fathom*; *a hundred head*; *an hundred weight*. We say, *by this means*, *by that means*; for, *by these means*, *by those means*; or, *by this mean*, *by that mean*, as it was used anciently: So, *This forty years*, for *these*;
th/fe

these and and those kind of things, for this and that. Each, every, either, are always joined with the singular number, unless the plural noun convey a collective idea; as, every twelve years.

3. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

III. A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person; as,

Ego lego, I read;

Nos legimus, We read.

Tu scribis, Thou writest or you write; *Vos scribitis, ye or you write.*

Præceptor docet, the master teaches; *Præceptores docent, Masters teach.*

And so through all the moods, tenses, and numbers.

Obs. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos*, of the second person; *ille* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *Tu es patronus, tu pater*, Ter. Ad. 3, 4, 10. *Tu legis, ego scribo.*

Obs. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *vacare culpâ magnum est solatium*, Cic. Fam. 7,

3. *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*; the sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens detained the dictator for a long time, Liv. 7. 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet, id est esse regem*, Sallust. Jug. 31.

Obs. 3. The infinitive mood often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant* or *fugere ceperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidebant*, Ter. Eun. 3, 1, 20.

Obs. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo stat* or *stant*; The multitude stands, or stand.

A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant casti*; *Pars obnixæ trudent*, sc. *formicæ*, Virg. Æn. iv. 406. *Magna pars raptæ*, sc. *virginis*, Liv. i. 9.

Sometimes,

Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. *Æn.* vii. 624.

Obs. 5. The neuter pronoun *it* in English, is often the nominative to the verb when we speak either of persons or things; as, *It is I; it is he; it was they; it appears*; in Latin, *Ego sum, ille est, &c.* It is sometimes understood; as, *may be, for, it may be; as follows, for, as it follows; was is thought, for, as it is thought.*

Obs. 6. We often say in English, *You was*, instead of *You were*; which is a great inaccuracy in grammar; but so frequently used, particularly in common conversation, that it seems to be in a manner established by custom. So, *there's two or three of us, for there are; There was more Sopbists, for were; great pains has been taken, for have, &c.*

Accusative before the Infinitive.

¶ IV. The infinitive mood has an accusative before it; as,

Gaudeo te valere,

[I am glad that you are well.]

Obs. 1. The participle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the participle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied, especially after participles; as, *Hostium exercitum casum fusumque cognovi*, Cic. Phil. 14, 1. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus suscepturum, scil. me esse*, Ter. And. 2, 3, 27.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod, ut, ne, or quin*; as *Gaudeo te valere, i. e. quod valeas, or propter tuam bonam valetudinem: Jubeo vos bene sperare, or ut bene speretis; Prohibeo eum exire, or ne exeat: non dubito eum fecisse, or much ostener, quin fecerit. Scio quod filius amet, for filium amare*, Plaut. *Afin.* 1, 1, 37. *Miror, si potuit, for eum potuisse*, Cic. *Nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes virtute superârit, for populum Romanum superâsse*, Nep. 23, 1. *Ex animi sententiâ juro, ut ego, rempublicam non deseram, for me non deserturum esse*, Liv. xxii. 53.

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

¶ V. Any Verb may have the same case after it as before it; *when both words refer to the same thing; as,*

<i>Ego sum discipulus,</i>	I am a scholar.
<i>Tu vocaris Joannes,</i>	You are named John.
<i>Illia incedit regina,</i>	She walks as a queen.
<i>Scio illum haberi sapientem,</i>	I know that he is esteemed wise.
<i>Scio vos esse discipulos,</i>	I know that you are scholars.

¶ So *Redeo iratus, jaceo supplex; Evadent digni*, they will become worthy; *Rempublicam defendi adolescens; nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malim videri timidus, quam parum prudens*, Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligentem*, Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beatis*, Claudian. *Cupio me esse clementem; cupio non putari mendacem; Vult esse medius*, sc. *se*, He wishes to be neuter, Cic. *Disce esse pater; Hoc est esse patrem?* sc. *eum*, Ter. *Id est, dominum, non imperatorem esse; Sallust.* Jug. 85.

Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are,

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem*, and *existo; eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evado, jaceo, fugio, &c.*

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appello, vocor, nominor, nuncupor*; to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constituor, salutor, designor, &c.*

These and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Interest omnium esse bonos*, scil. *se*; It is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or acc. promiscuously; as, *Cupio dici doctus*, or *doctum* sc. *me dici*; *Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax; vult esse medius.*

Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents, Ter. And. 5, 4, 47. *Omnia pentus erant*, Ovid. M. 1, 292. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amanium iræ amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love, Ter. And. 3, 3, 23. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that sub-

stantive

stantive which is most the subject of discourse; as, *Oppidum Pastum, Græcis Posidonia appellatum*, Plin. 3, 5. l. 10. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic.

Obf. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy; or, *licet mihi esse beatum*, *me* being understood; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beato*, One may be happy, *scil. alicui* or *homini*:—so *licet esse beatis*, *sc. illis*, Hor. S. 1, 1, 19.

Obf. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; as, *Rettulit Ajax Jovis esse pronæpos*, for *Se esse pronæpotem*, Ovid. Met. xii. 141. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *te vocari sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. 1. 16. 30. *Acceptum refero versibus esse nocens*; Ovid. Tr. 2, 10. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse socer*; Lucan. 9, 1037.

Obf. 6. The verb *to be* in English, has always a nominative case after it; as, *It was I*: unless it be of the infinitive mood; as, *I took it to be him*. We often use however this impropriety in common conversation, *It is me*, *It can't be me*, *It was him*, for *It is I*, *It cannot be I*, *It was he*.

GOVERNMENT.

I. The GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former*); as,

Amor Dei, the love of God. *Lex natura*, the law of nature.
Domus Cæsaris, the house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obf. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective, as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *filius veri* or *verilis*, a master's son: and among the poets, *labor Herculeus*, for *Herculis*; *ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obf. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, the love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him: So *caritas patris*, signifies either, the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense; thus, *timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur*; and *providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So *caritas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soil, Liv. ii. 1.

Obf. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hebæris Andromæche*, *scil. uxor*; *ventum est ad Vesta*, *scil. adem* or *templum*; *ventum est tria millia*, *scil. passuum*, three miles.

Obf. 4. We find often the dative used after a verb for the genitive, particularly

particularly among the poets; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, his body is extended; Virg. *Æn.* vi. 596.

Obf. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *amicitia, inimicitia, pax, cum aliquo*; *amor in vel erga, aliquem*; *gaudium de re*; *cura de aliquo*; *mentio illius, vel de illo*; *quies ab armis*; *fumus ex incendiis*; *prædator ex sociis, for sociorum*, Sallust. Jug. 44. &c.

Obf. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of*; as, *Descensus Averni* the descent to Avernus, Virg. *A.* 6, 126. *prudentia juris*, skill in the law, Cic. Off. 1, 42.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also adjective pronouns when used as substantives, or having a noun understood; as, *liber ejus, illius, hujus, &c.* the book of him, or his book, sc. *hominis*: the book of her, or her book, sc. *femina*; *libri eorum, v. eorum*, their books; *cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book; *quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noster*, not *nostri*; *suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum, vestrum*; but we use their possessives, when an active sense is expressed; as, *amor mei*, the love of me, that is, the love wherewith I am loved: *amor meus*, my love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find however the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively; as, *odium tuum*, hatred of thee, Ter. Phorm. v. 8. 27; *labor mei*, my labour, Plaut. Pl. 1, 1, 3.

The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *pectus tuum hominis simplicis*, Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Noster duorum eventus*, Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*, Cic. *Mea scripta timentis, &c.* Hor. S. 1, 4, 22. *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, Cic. Att. 11, 15. *Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime.* Id. Offic. 1, 31.

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon its nominative: as, *Cato interfecit se, Miles defendit suam vitam: Dicit se scripturum esse.* We find however *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; as, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus*, Cic. *Persuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis profisciscantur, for una secum*, Cæf. B. G. 1, 5.

VII. If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir summa prudentia, or summâ prudentiâ, A man of great wisdom.
Puer proba indolis, or probâ indole, A boy of a good disposition.

Obf. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as, *cum, de, ex, in, &c.* Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ*, is the same with *vir cum summâ prudentiâ.*

Obf. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used; as, *Magni formica laboris*, the laborious ant; *Vir imi subfellii, homo minimi pretii*, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war; Sallust. Jug. 85. *Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci*, Cic. Fam. 9, 26. f. *Ager trium jugesum*. In others only the ablative; as, *Es bono animo*, be of good courage, Ter. Eun. 1, 2, 4. *Mirâ sum alacritate ad litigandum*, Cic. Att. 2, 7. *Capite aperto est*, his head is bare; *obvoluto*, covered. *Capite et supercilio semper est raris*, Id. Q. Rosc. 7. *Mulier magno natu*, Liv. 26, 49. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *adolescens eximiâ spe, summa virtutis*, Cic. Fam. 1, 7. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obf. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative: thus, we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio*; or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quod* ad being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdöche*; as *Miles fractus membra, i. e. fractus secundum or quod ad membra*, or *habens membra fracta*, Horat. S. 1, 1, 5. *Os humerosque deo similis*, Virg. A. 1, 579.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

VIII. An Adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ, Much money. *Quid rei est?* What is the matter?

Obf. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers; as, *Plus eloquentiæ, minus sapientiæ, tantum fidei, id negotii; quicquid erat patrum, reos diceret*, all the senators, Liv. 2, 35. *Id loci; ad hoc at-tis*, Sallust. Jug. 85.

Obf. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, &c.* To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam, &c.* *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obf. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns, *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nihil sanceri*, no sincerity; but seldom govern, in this manner, adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is*; as, *Nequid hostile timerent, not hostilis*: we find however *quicquid civilis*, Liv. v. 3.

Obf. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *angusta viarum, opaca locorum, Telluris aperta, loca* being understood. So *amara curarum, acuta belli, sc. negotia*, Horat. od. 4, 4 f. An adjective indeed of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood; as, *amicus Cæsaris, patria Ulyssis, &c.*

Opus and Usus.

IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

Est opus pecuniâ, There is need of money; *Usus viribus*, Need of strength.

Obf. 2. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. They sometimes also, although rarely, govern the genitive; as, *Lectiois opus est*, Quintil. 12, 3, 8. *Operæ usus est*, Liv. 26, 9.

Obf. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est*, we need a general, Cic. Fam. 2, 6. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*, Id. Att. 6, 9. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*, Id.

Obf. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturato*, need of haste; *Opus consulto*, need of deliberation; so *usus*; as, *quid factio usus est?* Ter. Ad. 3, 3, 75. *non usus factio est mihi*, Id. Hec. 3, 1, 47. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, it behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic. Att. 10, 4.

Obf. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri*, Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, agram ut te adsimules*, Plaut. *Sive opus est imperitare equis*, Horat. It is often placed *absolutely*, i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est*; *si opus sit*, &c.

II. GOVERNMENT of ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

Avidus gloriæ, Desirous of glory. *Ignarus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud. *Memor beneficiorum*, Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX; as, *capax, edax, ferax, tenax, pertinax*, &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans, appetens, cupiens, insolens, sciens; consultus, doctus, expertus, insuetus, insolitus*, &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind; 1. Desire; as, *avarus, cupidus, studiosus*, &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance and doubting; as, *callidus, certus, certior, conscius, gnarus, peritus, prudens*, &c. *Ignarus, incertus, inscius, imprudens, imperitus, immemor, rudis; ambiguus, dubius, suspensus*, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary: as, *anxius, curiosus, solicius, providus, diligens; incuriosus, securus, negligens*, &c. 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolosus, pavidus, timidus, trepidus; impavidus, interritus*,

tus, intrepidus. 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus; innoxius, innocens, insons.*

To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *ager animi; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erectus, falsus, felix, fissus, furens, ingens, integer, latus, præsians animi; modicus voti; integer vitæ; seri studiorum, Hor.* But we say *ager pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, præsians doctrinâ, modicus cultu; Latus negotio, de re, or propter rem, &c.* and never *ager pedum, &c.*

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algoris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem: doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar; *doctus grammaticam*, having been taught grammar.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction, as, *avidus in pecuniis, Cic.* *Avidior ad rem, Ter.* *Jure consultus & peritus, or juris, Cic.* *Rudis literarum, in jure civili, Cic.* *Rudis arte, ad mola, Ovid.* *Doctus Latine, Latinis literis, Cic.* *Assuetus labore, in omnia, Liv.* *mensa berili, Virg.* *Insuetus moribus Romanis, in the dat. Liv.* *Laboris, ad onera portanda, Cæsar.* *Defustus bella & triumphis, in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg.* *Anxius, sollicitus, securus, de re aliqua; diligens, in, ad, de, Cic.* *Negligens in aliquem, in or de re; Reus de vi, criminibus, Cic.* *Certior factus de re, rather than rei, Cic.*

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causâ, in re, or in negotio*, or some such word understood; as, *Cupidus laudis, i. e. causâ or in re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive; thus, *studiosus pecuniæ*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

<i>Aliquis philosophorum,</i>	Some one of the philosophers.
<i>Senior fratrum,</i>	The elder of the brothers.
<i>Doctissimus Romanorum,</i>	The most learned of the Romans.
<i>Quis nostrum?</i>	Which of us?
<i>Una musarum,</i>	One of the muses.
<i>Octavus sapientum.</i>	The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among*; as, *alius, nullus, solus, &c. quis* and *qui*, with their compounds, *quisque, quidam*: also *Comparatives, Superlatives,*

and some Numerals; as, *unus, duo, tres; primus, secundus, &c.* To these add *multi, pauci, plerique, medius.*

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the participle, &c. rather agrees with the former; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. N. D. 2, 52. Rarely with the latter; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimum*, Plin. 9, 8. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror* or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de, e, ex, or in*; as, *de tot modo fratribus unus*, Ov. ep. 14, 73. *acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus est sensus videndi*, Cic. Or. 2, 87. or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter*; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes*, for *omnium*, Virg. A. 7, 55. *Primus inter omnes*. Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*. Cic. *Maximus stirpis*, Liv. *Ultimos orbis Britannos*, Horat. o. l. i. 35, 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two; Superlatives, when we speak of more than two; as, *major fratrum*, the elder of the brothers, meaning *two*; *maximus fratrum*, the eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter*, are applied with regard to two; *quîs, unus, alius, nullus*, with regard to three or more: as, *uter vestrum*, whether or which of you *two*; *quis vestrum*, which of you *three*: but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative; as,

<i>Utilis bello,</i>	Profitable for War.
<i>Perniciosus republicæ,</i>	Hurtful to the commonwealth.
<i>Similis patri,</i>	Like to his father.

Or thus, *Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong;

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit; as, *Benignus, bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber.*—*Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer.*

2. Of pleasure or pain; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, latus, suavis.*—*Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis.*

3. Of friendship or hatred; as, *Addictus, æquus, amicus, benevölus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitiu.*—*Adversus, æmulus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, insidus, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux.*

4. Of clearness or obscurity; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus,*

manifestus, notus, perspicuus. — *Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus.*

5. Of nearness; as, *Finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus.*

6. Of fitness or unfitness; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus.* — *Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus inconueniens.*

7. Of ease or difficulty; as, *Facilis; levis, obuius, peruius.* — *Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculosus, inuius.* To these add such as signify propensity or readiness; as, *Pronus, procliuus, propensus, promptus, paratus.*

8. Of equality or inequality; as, *Æqualis, æquæuus, par, compar, superpar.* — *Inequalis, impar, dispar, discors.* Also of likeness or unlikeness; as, *Similis, æmulus, geminus.* — *Dissimilis, absonus, alienus, diversus, discolor.*

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *Cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consonus, conueniens, contiguus, continuus, continens, contiguous;* as, *Mari ac continens est, Cic. Nat. Dcor. 2, 45. huic fundo continentia quadam prædia mercatur, Id. Cæcin. 4.*

To these add many other Adjectives of various significations; as, *Obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, præsto, indecl. at hand; secundus, &c.* — particularly,

Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the dative; as,

Amandus vel amabilis omnibus, To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terribilis malis; Optabilis omnibus pax; Adhibenda est nobis diligentia, Cic. Semel omnibus calcanda est via leti, Hor. od. 1, 28, 16.* Also some participles of the perfect tense; as, *Bella motribus detestata,* hated by, *Hor. ib. 1, 25. mihi amatus, Ov. Pont. 4, 12, 22.*

Verbals in DUS are often construed with the prep. a; as, *Deus est venerandus & colendus a nobis, Cic.* Perfect participles are usually so; as, *mors Crassi est a multis defleta,* rather than, *multis defleta Cic. Or. 3, 3. A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus, &c. hardly ever tibi.*

Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other parts of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English, is often to be supplied; as, *similis patri,* like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *ille est pater, dux, vel filius mihi,* he is father, leader, or son to me: so, *præsidium reis, decus amicis, &c. Hor. exitium pecori, Virg. virtutibus hostis, Cic.*

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive; *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æqualis, contrarius,* and *adversus;* as, *similis tibi,*

tibi, or tui; superstes patri or patris; conscius facinori or facinoris. Consciis and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *mens sibi conscia recti.* We say, *similes, dissimiles, pares, dispares, æquales, communes, inter se: par & communis cum aliquo; civitas secum ipsa discors; discordes ad alia,* Liv.

Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

Utilis, inutilis, aptus, ineptus, accommodatus, idoneus, habilis, inhabilis, opportunus, conveniens, &c. alicui rei or ad aliquid. Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *Attentus quaesitis,* Hor. Sat. 2, 6, 82. *Attentus ad rem,* Ter. Ad. 5, 8, 31.

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one, I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabilis, arrogans, asper, carus, difficilis, fidelis, invisus, iratus, offensus, suspectus, ALICUI.* II. Some with the preposition IN and the accusative; as, *Acerbus, animatus, beneficus, gratesus, injuriosus, liberalis, mendax, misericors, officiosus, pius, impius, prolixus, severus, sordidus, torvus, vehemens, IN ALIQUEM.* III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition IN, ERGA, or ADVERSUS going before; as, *Contumax, criminiosus, durus, exitiabilis, gravis, hospitalis, implacabilis,* (and perhaps also *inexorabilis & intolerabilis, iniquus, savus, ALICUI or IN ALIQUEM.* *Benevolus, benignus, molestus, ALICUI or ERGA ALIQUEM.* *Mitis, comis IN, or ERGA ALIQUEM, and ALICUI.* *Percitorum ADVERSUS ALIQUEM.* *Crudelis IN ALIQUEM; seldom ALICUI.* *Amicus, amulus, insensus, infestus, ALICUI, seldom IN ALIQUEM.* *Gratus ALICUI, or IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS ALIQUEM.* We say *alienus alicui or alicujus;* but oftener *ab aliquo,* and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

AUDIENS is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat,* he was obedient to the king: not *regis;* *Dicto audiens fuit jussis magistratum,* Nep. 17, 4. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt,* not *dictis,* Cic. Verr. 5, 32.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in,* seldom the dative; as,

Pronus, propensus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram, or in iram.

Obs. 7. *Propior* and *proximus,* in imitation of their primitive *prope,* often govern the accusative; as; *propior montem,* scil. *ad,* Sallust. Jug. 49. *proximus finem,* Liv. *proximus Pompeium sedebam,* Cic. Att. 1, 14.

Obs. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti,* Hor. art. 467. *Jupiter omnibus idem,*

idem, Virg. A. 10, 112. *Eadem illis censemus*, Cic. Fam. 9, 6. But in prose we commonly find, *idem qui, et, ac, atque*, and also *ut, cum*; as, *Peripatetici quondam iidem erant qui Academici*, Cic. Off. 2, 4. *Est animus erga te, idem ac fuit*, Ter. Heaut, 2, 3, 24. *Dianam & Lunam eandem esse putant*, Cic. N. D. 2, 27. *Idem faciunt, ut, &c.* *In eodem loco mecum*, Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana*.

We likewise say, *alius ac, atque* or *et*; and so sometimes *familis & par*.

3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

XIII. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus, and fretus*; also *natus, satus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honore, Worthy of honour. *Captus oculis*, Blind. [strength. *Contentus parvo*, Content with little. *Fretus viribus*, Trusting to his *Præditus virtute*, Endued with virtue. *Ortus regibus*, Descended of kings.

So *generatus, creatus, cretus, prognatus, oriundus, procreatus regibus*.

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, Sallust. Jug. 5. *Editus de nympha*, Ovid. ep. 5, 9. *ab Ulixæ oriundus*, Liv.

Obs. 2. *Dignus, indignus, and contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *indignus avorum*, Virg. A. 12, 649. So *Macte esto*, or *macti estote virtutis*, or *virtute*, increase in virtue, or go on and prosper; *Fuberem macti virtute esse*, sc. *te*, Liv. ii. 12. In the last example *macti* seems to be used adverbially.

4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plenus iræ or *irâ*, Full of anger. *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So *Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi sumus*, Senec. *Lentulus non verbis inops*, Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*, Cic. *Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis*, Juv. 5, 66. *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor*, Ovid. ep. 1, 12. *Amor & melle & felle est facundissimus*, Plaut. *Facunda virorum paupertas fugitur*, Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus particeps*, Curt. *Homoratione particeps*, Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*, Id. *Vacuas cæcis habete manus*, Ovid. de art. am. 1, 642.

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, *Benignus, exors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus*.

2. With the ablative only: *Beatus, disertus, frugifer, mutilus, tentus, dissentus, tumidus, turgidus*.

3. With the genitive more frequently: *Compos, confors, egenus, exhaeres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parcus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis*.

4. With

4. With the ablative more frequently; *Abundans, cassus, extorris, satus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunos, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbis, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, and captus.*

5. With both promiscuously; *Copiosus, dives, facundus, ferax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, medicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satus, vacuus, uber.*

6. With a preposition; as, *Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus à re aliqua*; for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet, in, or with respect to any thing.* *Extorris ab solo patrio*, banished; *Orba ab optimatibus concio*. Liv. So *pauper, tenuis, facundus, medicus, parcus in re aliqua. Immunis, inanis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus o re aliqua. Potens ad rem, & in re.*

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 1. VERBS governing only one Case.

1. Verbs which govern the Genitive.

XV. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis, It belongs to the king; It is the part or property of a king.

So *Insipientis est dicere, non putâram*, It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est suo duci parere*, It is the part or duty of soldiers, &c. *Laudare se vani; vituperare stulti est*, Sen. *Hominis est errare; Arrogantis est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat*, Cic. *Pecus est Melibœi*, Virg. *Hac sunt hominis*, Ter. *Pauperis est numerare pecus*, Ovid. *Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis*, Cic.

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted; as,

Tuum est, It is your duty. *Scio tuum esse*, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis. Et facere et pati fortia, Romanum est*, Liv. 2, 12.

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus, &c.* which is sometimes expressed; as, *munus est principum; tuum est hoc munus*, Cic. *Neutiquam officium liberi esse hominis puto*, Ter. In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated; as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratris*. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these; *Ea sunt modo gloriosa, neque patrandi belli, scil. causâ or facta*, Sall. Jug. 88. *Nihil tam aquanda libertatis est, for ad aquandam libertatem pertinet*, Liv. 38, 50.

Obf. 3. We fay. *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui muneris*; *Somos est vel fui*, or *moris*, or *in more*, Cic. Verr. 1, 26.

XVI. *Misereor*, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive; as,

Miserere civium tuorum,

Pity your countrymen.

Satagit rerum suarum,

{ He has his hands full at home, or has
enough to do about his own affairs.

Obf. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind; as, *Angor*, *decipior*, *desipio*, *discrucior*, *excrucio*, *fallo* & *fallor*, *fastidio*, *invideo*, *lator*, *miror*, *pendeo*, *studeo*, *vereor*; as, *Ne angas te animi*, Plaut. *Laborum decipitur*, Hor. *Discrucior animi*, Ter. *Pendet mihi animus*, *pendeo animi vel animo*; but we always say, *Pendemus animis*, not *animorum*, are in suspense, Cic. *Iustitia prius mirer*, Virg. In like manner, *Abstineo*, *desino*, *desisto*, *quiesco*, *regno*: likewise, *adipiscor*, *condico*, *credo*, *frustror*, *furo*, *laudo*, *libero*, *levo*, *participo*, *prohibeo*: as, *Abstineto irarum*; *Desine querelarum*; *Regnavit populorum*, Hor. *Desistere pugna*, Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit*, Liv. 1, 32.

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed; thus, *Angor*, *desipio*, *discrucior*, *fallor*, *animo*. *Hoc animum meum excruciat*. *Fastidio*, *miror*, *vercor*, *aliquem vel aliquid*. *Lator aliquâ re*. Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, and the subjunctive.

In like manner we usually say, *Desino aliquid*, & *ab aliquo*, I give over; *Desisto incepto*, *de negotio*, *ob illa mente*; *Quiesco a labore*; *Regnare in equitibus*, *oppidis* sc. *in*, Cic. *Per urbes*, Virg. *Adipisci id*; *Frustrari in re*; *Furere de aliquo*, Cic.

Obf. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs: thus, *Misereor fratris*, scil. *causâ*; *Angor animi*, scil. *dolore*, or *anxietate*.

2. VERBS governing the Dative.

XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; as,

Finis venit imperio, An end is come to the empire, I. iv.

Animus redit hostibus, Courage returns to the enemy, Id.

Tibi feris, *tibi metis*, You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, Plaut.

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus*, Cic. *Multa malè eveniunt bonis*, Id. *Sol lucet etiam sceleratis*, Sen. *Haret lateri letbalis arundo*, Virg. A. 4, 73.

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English

English by *to* or *for*; and as these particles are not always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

I. *Sum*, and its compounds govern the dative; (except *possum*); as,

<i>Præfuit exercitui,</i>	He commanded the army.
<i>Adfuit precibus,</i>	He was present at prayers.

¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo*, *to have*, governs the dative of a person; as,

<i>Est mihi liber,</i>	A book is to me, <i>that is</i> , I have a book.
<i>Sunt mihi libri,</i>	Books are to me, <i>i. e.</i> I have books.
<i>Dico libros esse mihi,</i>	I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum*; *habeo libros*. In like manner *DEEST* instead of *careo*; as, *Liber deest mihi*, I want a book; *Libri defunt mihi*; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

II. Verbs compounded with *SATIS*, *BENE*, and *MALE*, govern the dative; as,

Satisfacio, fatifilo, benefacio, benedico, benevolo, malefacio, mole dico tibi, &c.

III. Many verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, *AD*, *ANTE*, *CON*, *IN*, *INTER*, *OB*, *PRÆ*, *SUB*, and *SUPER*, govern the dative; as,

1. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnato, adequito, adhæreo, adsto, adstipulor, advolvor, affulgeo, allabor, allaboro, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo*:—*Adspirat primo Fortuna labori*, Virg. A. 2, 385.

2. *Antecello, anteeo, antesto, anteverto*.—*virtus omnibus rebus anteit*, Plaut.

3. *Colludo, concino, consono, convivo*.—*puer gestit colludere paribus*, Hor.

4. *Incumbo, indormio, indubito, inbio, ingenisco, inhareo, infideo, infidior, insto, infesto, insudo, insulto, invigilo, illacrymo, illudo, imminco, immorior, immoror, impendo*.—*impendent hominibus multa*, Cic. Phil. 14, 13.

5. *Intervenio, intermico, intercedo, intercedo, interjaceo*.

6. *Obrepro, obluator, obrecto, obstrepro, obmurmuro, occumbo, occurro, occurse, obsto, obfesto, obvenio*.—*certæ occumbere morti*, Virg. A. 2, 62.

7. *Præcedo, præcurro, præco, præsidio, præluco, præniteo, præsto, prævaleo, præverto*.—*homo ceteris animantibus plurimum præstat*, Cic. Fin. 2, 33.

8. *Succedo, succumbo, sufficio, suffragor, subcreasco, suboleo, subjaceo, subrepro*.

9. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto*. But most verbs compounded with *SUPER* govern the accusative.

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

1. To profit or hurt; as,

Proficio,

Proficio, profum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo, for *proficio*. Likewise, *Noceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo, infidior*.

2. To favour or assist, and the contrary; as,

Faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, aduler, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, subparasitor. Likewise, *Auxilior, adimniculor, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, opitulor*. Likewise, *Derogo, detrabo, invidio, amulor*.

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

Impero, præcipio, mando, moderor, for modum adhibeo. Likewise *Paræo, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morem gero, morigeror, obsecundo*. Likewise, *Famulor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor*. Likewise, *Repugno, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refragor, adverfor*.

4. To threaten and to be angry; as,

Minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succensco alicui.

5. To trust; as, *Fido, confido, credo, diffido tibi*.

To these add *Nubo, excello, barco, supplico, cedo, despéro, operor, præstolor, prevaricor, recipio, to promise; renuncio; respondeo, to answer or satisfy; tempero, studeo, vaco, to apply; convicior*.

Exc. *Jubeo, juvo, lædo, and offendo*, govern the accusative.

Obf. 1. Verbs governing the dative only, are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obf. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only, have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as, *Levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, crucio, averfor, &c. aliquem, not alicui*.

Obf. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition; as,

Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. alicui, or aliquem, to go before, to excel.

Acquiescere rei, re, v. in re. Adequitate portæ; Syracusas.

Adjacere mari, v. mare, to lie near, l. iv. 26, 42. Nep. 13, 2.

Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, to swim to, Liv. 28, 36. Cæf. B. C. 2, 44

Adversari ei, rarely cum, to oppose, Cic. Or. 1, 18 f. Tac. H. 1, 1.

Advolvi genibus, genua, ad genua, to fall at one's knees.

Advolare ei, ad eum; rostra, to fly up to, Cic. Att. 2, 14.

Adflare rei v. homini; rem v. hominem; aliquid alicui, to breathe upon.

Adulari ei, v. cum, to flatter. Allabi oris; aures ejus, Virg. ad exta, Liv.

- Apparere consuli, *to attend*; ad folium Jovis: Res apparet mihi, *appears*.
 Appropinquare Britanniae, portam, ad portam, *to approach*.
 Dominari cunctis oris, Virg. in cætera animalia, *to rule over*, Ovid.
 Congruere alicui, cum re aliqua, ad aliquid, inter se, *to agree*.
 Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re; in re, *to trust to or in*.
 Ignoscere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam, *to pardon me or my fault*.
 Impendere alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, *to hang over*.
 Incessit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum v. in eum, *seized*.
 Incumbere toro; gladium, in gladium, *to fall upon*; labori, ad laudem, ad studia, in studium, curam, cogitationem, &c. *to apply to*.
 Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio ei vestitu, *to indulge in*, Ter. Ad. I, I, 38.
 Inhiare auro, bona ejus, *to gaze after*. Inpasci agris, in agris, *to grow in*.
 Inniti rei, re, in re; in aliquem, *to depend on*.
 Infultare rei & homini, v. hominem; fores, patientiam ejus, in miseriam ejus; bonos, *to insult over*.
 Latet res mihi, v. me, *is unknown to me*. Mederi ei; cupiditates, *to cure*.
 Ministrare ei, *to serve*; arma ei, *to furnish*.
 Moderari animo, gentibus; navim, omnia, *to rule*.
 Nocere ei, rarely cum, *to hurt*, Plaut.
 Nubere alicui; in familiam; nupta ei & cum eò, *to marry*, Cic. 1
 Obrepere ei & cum, *to creep upon*; in animos; ad honores.
 Obstreperere auribus & aures. Obrectare ei, laudibus ejus, *to detract from*.
 Obumbrat sibi vinea: solem nubes, shades. Palpari alicui & aliquem.
 Pacifici alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo, Sall. vitam pro laude, Virg.
 Præstolari alicui & aliquem, *to wait upon*, Cic. Att. 2, 15. Ter. Eun. 5, 6, 5.
 Procumbere terræ; genibus ejus, Ovid. ad genua, Liv. ad pedes, *to fall*.

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, govern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition; as, 1. *Contendo, certo, bello, pugno, concuro, coëo, congredior, alicui*, for *cum aliquo*; 2. *Distare, dissentire, discrepare, diffidere, differre rei alicui*, for *a re aliqua*. We also say, *Contendant, pugnant, distant, &c. inter se*; and *contendere, pugnare contra & adversus aliquem*.

Obs. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, *Timeo, metuo, formido, borreo tibi, de te, & pro te*, I am afraid for you, or for your safety; but *timeo, borreo te, v. a te*, I fear or dread you as an enemy: So *Consulo, prospicio, caveo tibi*, I consult or provide for your safety; but *consulo te*, I ask your advice; *prospicio hoc*, I foresee this: *Studere aliquid*, to desire; *alicui*, to favour; *alicui rei, rem, & in re*, to apply to a thing. So, *Æmulor tibi*, I envy; *te*, I imitate; *Ausculdo tibi*, I obey or listen to; *te*, I hear; *Cupio tibi*, I favour, *rem*, I desire; *Fanero, & -or tibi*, I lend you on interest; *abs te*, I borrow; *Metuisti, ne non tibi istuc faneraret*, should not return with interest, or bring usury, Ter. Adelph. 2, 2, 11. And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.

Obs. 5. Verbs signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing are construed with the preposition *ad*; as,

Eo, vado, curro, propero, festino, pergó, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c. ad locum, rem, v. hominem. Sometimes however in the poets they are con-
 structed with the dative; as, *Et clamor calo*, Virg. A. 5, 451.

3. *Verbs governing the accusative.*

XVIII. A Verb signifying actively governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God. *Reverere parentes*, Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own; as,

Ire iter or viam; Pugnare pugnam or prælium; Currere cursum; Canere cantilenam; Vivere vitam; Ludere ludum; Sequi sectam; Somniare somnium, &c. or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense; as, *Corydon ardebat Alexin*, scil. *propter*, i. e. *v. vehementer amabat*, Virg. E. 2, 1. *Currimus æquor*, scil. *per*, id. *So, comptos arsit adulteri crines*, Hor. od. 4, 9, 13. *Saltare Cylopa; olet hircum; Sulcos et viæta crepat mæra*, Hor. *Kox hominem finat; Sudare mella*, Virg. *Si Xerxes Hellesponto juncto, et Albone perfosso, maria ambulavisset, terramque navigasset*, sc. *per*, Cic. Fin. 2, 34. Or when they have a kind of active sense; as, *Clamare aliquem nomine*, Virg. *Callere jura; Merere mortem; Horret iratum mare*, Hor.

Sometimes instead of the accusative, neuter verbs have an ablative; as, *Ire itinera; dolere dolore, vicem ejus; gaudere gaudio; mori v. obire morte; vivere vitâ; ardet virgine*, Horat. *Ludere æstem, v. —â; manare, pluerè, vorare, stillare, sudare, aliquid vel aliquo. Erubescere jura*, Virg. *origine*, Tacit. *equo vebi*, Curt.

Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense; as,

Abhorrere famam, to dread infamy, Liv. a litibus; ab uxore ducendâ, to be averse from: Id. a meis moribus abhorret, is inconsistent with, Cic.

Abolere monumenta viri, to abolish, Virg. *lis cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboleverat*, was not effaced from, they had not forgotten, Liv. 9, 36.

Adolere penates, to burn, to sacrifice to, Virg. A. 1, 704.

Ætas adolevit; adolevit ad ætatem, Plaut.

Declinare ietum, to avoid; loco; agmen aliquò, to remove.

Degenerare animos, to weaken; patri, to degenerate from; a virtute majorum.

Durare adolentes labore, to harden; Res durat ad breve tempus, endures; In ædibus durare nequeo, stay or remain, Plaut.

Inclinare culpam in aliquem, to lay; Hos ut sequar inclinat animus, inclines; acies inclinat, vel inclinatur, gives way.

Laborare arma, to forge; morbo, a dolore, e renibus, to be ill; de re aliquâ, to be concerned.

Morari iter, to stop; in urbe, to stay

stay, Hoc nihil moror, *I do not mind*.
 Properare pecuniam hæredi, *Hor.*
 in urbem; ad unam sedem, *Ovid.*
 Quadrare acervum, *to square*, *Hor.*
 aliquid ad normam; alicui, in
 aliquem, ad multa, *to fit*.
 Suppeditare copiam dicendi, *to furnish*;
 Sumptus illi, *vel illi sumptibus*,
Terent. suppeditat ei ratio,
is afforded; Manubiæ in funda-
 menta vix suppeditârunt, *were*
sufficient, *Liv.* 1, 55.

Obf. 3. These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, &c.* are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id lacrumat, Id succenset, &c. propter, Ter.*

Obf. 4. The accusative is often understood. *Tum proxa avertit, &c. se, Virg. A* 1, 104. *Flumina præcipitant, &c. se, Id. Quòcunque intenderat, &c. se,* turned or directed himself, *Sallust.* *Obiit, &c. mortem, Ter. Cum faciam vitulâ, &c. sacra, Virg. E,* 3, 77. Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes videre decorum; for dulcem sermonem, decorum risum, Hor. Ep.* 1, 7, 27.

XIX. *Recordor, meminî, reminiscor, and obliviscor,* govern the accusative or genitive; as,

<i>Recordor lectionis</i> or <i>lectionem,</i>	I remember the lesson.
<i>Oliviscor injuriæ</i> or <i>injuriam,</i>	I forget an injury.

Obf. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, *Memini videre virginem, Ter. And.* 2, 5, 18. *Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset, Cic. Brut.* 60.

Obf. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies to *make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de*; as, *Memini alicujus, vel de aliquo.* So *recordor*, when it signifies to *recollect*; as, *Velim scire eequid de te recordere, Cic. Tusc.* 1, 6.

4. VERBS governing the ablative.

XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as,

<i>Abundat divitiis,</i>	He abounds in riches.
<i>Caret omni culpâ,</i>	He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, suppedito, scateo, &c.*; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destitutor, &c.*

Obf. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget aris, He needs money, Hor. Ep.* 1, 6, 49. *Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris, Cic. Or.* 1, 34.

Obf. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpâ,* he is free from fault; *ne quando a metu ac periculis vacarent, Liv.* 7, 1.

XXI. *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,* govern the ablative; as,

Utitur fraude, He uses deceit. *Abutitur libris,* He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victito, consto, labōro,* for *male me habeo,* to be ill; *pascor, epulor, nitor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *potiri urbis,* Sall. Cat. 47. And we always say *Potiri rerum,* to possess the chief command; never *rebus, imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor, and pascor,* sometimes have an accusative; as, *Potiri urbem,* Cic. Tusc. 1, 37. *Officia fungi,* Ter. Heaut. 1, 1, 14. *Munera fungi,* Tacit. Ann. 3, 2. *Pascuntur silvas,* Virg. G. 3, 314. And in ancient writers, *utor, abutor, and fruor;* as, *Uti consilium,* Plaut. *Operam abutitur,* Ter. And. prol. 5. *Depasceo and depascor* always take an accusative; as, *Depascitur artus.* Virg. G. 3, 458.

§ 2. VERBS governing two Cases.

1. Verbs governing two Datives.

XXII. *Sum* taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Est mihi voluptati, It is, or brings a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verto, relinquo, tribuo, fore, duco,* and some others; as,

Ducitur honori tibi, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio,* I am blamed for that. So, *Misit mihi muneri; Dedit mihi dono; Habet sibi laudi; Venire, occurrere auxilio alicui,* Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative; we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as, *Est exitium pecori,* for *exitio;* *Dare aliquid alicui donum, or dono; Dare filiam ei nuptum, or nuptui.* When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimini ei, sc. id.*

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, praesidio, usui, &c. scil. mihi, alicui, hominibus;* or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere pignori, sc. alicui,* to pledge. *Canere receptui, sc. suis militibus,* to sound a retreat; *Habere curae, quaestui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despiciatui, &c. sc. sibi.*

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro,* my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander;* or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri.*

2. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

<i>Arguit me furti,</i>	He accuses me of theft.
<i>Meipsum inertiae condemno,</i>	I condemn myself of laziness.
<i>Illum homicidii absolvunt,</i>	They acquit him of manslaughter.
<i>Monet me officii,</i>	He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accūso, ago, appello, arcesso, anquiro, arguo, defero, infimulo, postulo, alligo, astringo*; of condemning, *Damno, condemno, infamo, noto*; of acquitting, *Absolvo, libero, purgo*; of admonishing, *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio*.

Obf. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de*; as *Movere aliquem officii*, or *de officio*; *Accusare aliquem furti*, or *de furto*. So *de vi condemnati sunt*, Cic. Phil. 2, 2.

Obf. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnare, postulare, absolvere eum criminis, v. capitis*; & *crimine, v. capite*; also *Absolvo me peccato*, Liv. 2, 8. And we always say, *Plectere, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obf. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, traduco, vitupero, calumnior, criminor, excuso*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritia*. We sometimes also find *accuso, incuso*, &c. construed in this manner; as, *Accusare inertiam adolescentium, for adolescentes inertiae*, Cic. *Culpam arguo*, Liv. 1, 28. We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft, Cic. Mur. 17. Fam. 7, 22.

Obf. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa, pauca*, &c. as, *Monco, accuso te illud*. We seldom however find, *Errorem te moneo*, but *erroris*, or *de errore*; except in old writers; as, in Plautus, &c.

XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihili*; as,

<i>Æstimo te magni,</i>	I value you much.
-------------------------	-------------------

Verbs of valuing are, *Æstimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo*. They govern several other genitives;

as,

as, *tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, minoris, minimi, plurimi, maximi, nauci, pili, affis, nibili, teruncii, hujus.*

Obf. 1. *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstimo te magno, permagno, parvo*, scil. *pretio*: and also *nibilo*, Cic. Verr. 4, 7. Fin. 4, 23. We likewise say, *Pro nibilo habeo, puto, duco*, Cic. Dom. 15. Fin. 3, 8.

Obf. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo*, as, *Hoc consulo boni, æqui bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

Obf. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguere aliquem furti*, scil. *de crimine furti*; *Æstimo rem magni*, scil. *pretii*, or *pro re magni pretii*; *Consulo boni*, i. e. *statuo* or *censo esse factum*, or *munus boni viri*, or *animi*; *Monere aliquem officii*, i. e. *officii causâ*, or *de re* or *negotio officii*.

3. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Dative.

XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

Compāro Virgilium Homero,
Suum cuique tribuio,
Narras fabulam surdo,
Eripuit me morti,

I compare Virgil to Homer.
Give every one his own.
You tell a story to a deaf man.
He rescued me from death.

Or rather,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (*when, together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted*); as,

Legam lectionem tibi, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra boves*, Virg. *Paupertas saepe suadet mala hominibus*, advises men to do bad things, Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquibus*, to order them to furnish, *Cæsar*.

Obf. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum aliâ*, & *ad aliam*, or *comparare res inter se*: *Eripuit me morti*, *morte*, & or *ex morte*: *Mittere epistolam alicui*, or *ad aliquem*: *Intendere telum alicui*, or *in aliquem*: *Incidere ari*, *in as*, or *in ars*: and so in many others.

Obf. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

Circumdare mania oppido, or *oppidum manibus*, to surround a city with walls, Cic. Tusc. 5, 20. Fam. 15, 4.

Intercludere comæatum alicui, or *aliquem comæatu*, to intercept one's provisions, Plaut. Mül. 2, 2, 68. Cæf. B. G. 1, 48.

Donare, probibere rem alicui, or *aliquem re*, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

Mactare hostiam Deo, or *Deum hostiâ*, to sacrifice.

Impertire

Impertire salutem alicui, or aliquem salute, to salute one.

Interdixit Galliam Romanis, or Romanos Galliã, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

Induere, exuere vestem sibi, or se veste, to put on, to put off one's cloaths.

Levare dolorem alicui; dolorem alicujus; aliquem dolore, to ease one's distress.

Minari aliquid alicui, or sometimes alicui aliquo, Cic. to threaten one with any thing; Casari gladio, Sall. Cat. 49.

Gratulor tibi hanc rem, hac re, in, pro, & de hac re, I congratulate you on this. Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur, Liv. 1, 28.

Restituere alicui sanitatem, or aliquem sanitati, to restore to health.

Aspergere labem alicui or aliquem labe, to put an affront on one; agram sanguine. Litare Deum sacris, & sacra Deo, to sacrifice.

Excusare se alicui & apud aliquem, de re; valetudinem ei.

Exprobare vitium ei & in eo, to upbraid.

Occupare pecuniam alicui, & apud aliquem, i. e. pecuniam fanori locare, to place at interest, Cic. Flacc. 21. Verr. 1, 36.

Opponere se morti, & ad mortem. Renunciare id ei, & ad eum, to tell.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

Porto, fero, lægo, -as, præcipito, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito; also hortor, and invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, consermo, laceſſo; thus, Ad laudem milites hortatur; Ad prætorem hominem traxit, Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, Inferre Deos Latium, for in Latium, to introduce, Virg. A. 1, 6. Invitare aliquem hospitium, or in hospitium, Cic.

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui, scil. se; Cedere alicui, scil. locum; Detrabere alicui, scil. laudem; Ignoscere alicui, scil. culpam.* And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum, He gave me a book, for to me.*

4. VERBS governing two Accusatives.

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscimus te pacem,

We beg peace of thee.

Dedit me Grammaticam,

He taught me grammar.

I. Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, *Rogo, oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito, &c.* Of teaching, *Doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.*

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Cela-*
vit

vit me banc rem, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, celavit banc rem mihi, or celavit me de hac re.

Obf. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, Rogare rem ab aliquo; Docere aliquem de re, to inform; but we do not say, docere aliquem de grammaticâ, but grammaticam, to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, Peto, exigo a v. abs te; Percontor, scitor, sciscitor, ex or a te, or te without the preposition; Interrogo, consulto te de re; Ut facias te obsecro; Exorat pacem divûm, for divos, Virg. Instruo, instituo, formo, informo aliquem artibus, in the abl. without a prep. Imbuo cum artibus, in v. ab artibus. Also instruo ad rem, v. in re, ignorantiam alicujus. Erudire aliquem artes, de v. in re, ad rem. Formare ad studium, mentem studiis, studia ejus.

Obf. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by quod ad or secundum understood.

5. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

Onerat naves auro, He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, Onero, cumulo, premo, opprimo, obruo: Of unloading, levo, exonero, &c. Of binding, astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo, &c. Of loosing, solvo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio, &c. Of depriving, privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo: Of clothing, vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, coronô, & calceo: Of unclothing, exuo, discingo, &c.

Obf. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, Solvere aliquem ex catenis, Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, Complet naves, sc. viris, mans the ships, Virg. A. 11, 327.

Obf. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive; as, Adolescentem sua temeritatis implet, Liv. 1, 46. And also vary their construction; as, Induit, exuit se vestibus, or vestes sibi.

The CONSTRUCTION of PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case; as,

Accusor furti,	I am accused of theft.
Virgilius comparatur Homero,	Virgil is compared to Homer.
Docetor grammaticam,	I am taught grammar.
Navis oneratur auro,	The ship is loaded with gold.

So Scio homines accusatum iri furti; — Eos ereptum iri morti, morte a

vel ex morte; — *pueros doctum iri grammaticam*; — *rem celatum iri mihi* vel *me*; *me celatum iri de re*, &c.

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habetur ludibrio iis*; (see page 173.)

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a*; as,

Tu laudaris a me, which is equivalent to, *Ego laudo te*. *Virtus diligitur a nobis*; *Nos diligimus virtutem*. *Gaudeo meum factum probari a te*, or *te probare meum factum*: And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collucet*, Cic. *Phalaris non a paucis interiiit*, Id. So *Cadere ab hoste*; *Cessare a praeiis*; *Mori ab ense*; *Pati, furari, aliquid ab aliquo*, &c. Also *Venire ab hostibus*, to be sold; *Vapulare ab aliquo*, *Exulare ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere*, &c. *ab aliquo*.

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Deseror conjuge*, Ovid. *Desertus suis*, sc. *a*, Tacit. *Tabulâ distinguitur undâ, qui navigat*, sc. *ab unda*, is kept from the water by a plank, Juvenal. 14, 289.

The preposition PER is also used in the same sense with *A*; as, *Per me defensa est respublica*, or *a me*; *Per me restitutus*; *Per me v. a me factum est*, Cic. But PER commonly marks the instrument, and A the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agitur per creditores*, sc. *a rege vel a legato ejus*, Cic. Fam. i. 1.

Obs. 2. Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as,

Neque cernitur ulli, for *ab ullo*, Virg. *Vix audior ulli*, Ovid. *Scriberis Vario*, for, *a Vario*, Hor. od. 1, 6, 1. *Honestâ bonis viris quaruntur*, for *a viris*, Cic.—VIDEOR, to seem, always governs the dative; as, *Videris mihi*, You seem to me. But we commonly say, *Videris a me*, You are seen by me; although not always; as, *Nulla tuarum audita mihi, neque visa sororum*, for *a me*, Virg. A. 1, 326.

Obs. 3. *Induor, amicio, cingor, accingor*, also *exuor* and *discingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as, *Induitur vestem*, or *veste*.

Obs. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice; unless they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna pugnata est*, Cic. Mur. 16. *Bellum militabitur*, Horat. epod. 1, 23. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as *Satur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venitur*, &c. *a nobis, ab illis*, &c. We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me, vel ab aliquo*; i or any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optimè a Deo*; *Reclamatum est ab omnibus*, all cried out against it, Cic.

They also govern the same cases, as when used personally; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicum misereatur*, Cic. Inv. 1, 30. Except the accusative: For in these phrases, *Isur Athenus, pugnatum est biduum, dormitur totam noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the

the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems; Noctes vigilantur amaræ: Oceanus raris ab orbe nostro navibus aditur*, Tacit. de mor. German. 2.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. An impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

Expedit reipublicæ, It is profitable to the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

Favetur mihi, I am favoured, and not *Ego faveor*. So *Nocetur mihi, imperatur mihi, &c.* We find however, *Hæc ego procurare imperor; Ego cur invidior*, for *imperatur, invidetur mihi*, Hor. ep. 1, 5, 21. art. p. 56.

Obs. 1. These verbs, *Potest, capit, incipit, definit, debet, and solet*, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed; *Mihi non potest noceri*, I cannot be hurt; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute*, Cic. *Per virtutem potest iri ad astra. Aliorum laudi & gloriæ invideri solet*, The praise and glory of others use to be envied, Id. *Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo generi resisti posse*, Sallust. Jug. 67.

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res, vel de hac re, vel hujus rei, scilicet memoria*; This thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res, vel de hac re. Doleo vel dolet mihi, id factum esse.*

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains, it shines, &c.* And in Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to Impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Nobis non licet peccare*, the same with *peccatum*; *Omni-bus bonis expedit reipublicam esse salvam, i. e. Salus reipublica expedit omni-bus bonis*, Cic. *Accidit, evēnit, contigit, ut ibi essemus.* These nominatives, *hoc, illud, id, idem, quod, &c.* are sometimes joined to Impersonal verbs; as, *idem mihi licet*, Cic. Verr. 5, 70. *sed marito ista non eadem licent*, Catull. 60, 147.

EXC. I. *REFERT* and *INTEREST* require the genitive; as,

Refert patris, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium*, It is the interest of all.

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

Non mea refert, It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua, &c.* to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus interest*, and *quorum interest*; or *cuja interest*, from *cujus, -a, -um*.

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil, &c.* also with common nouns; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris*; as, *Hoc parvi refert*; *Illud mea magni interest*, Cic. Att. II, 22. *Usque aded magni refert studium*, Lucret. 4, 981. *Incessus in gravidâ refert*, Plin. 7, 6.

These verbs are frequently construed with the adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maxime, vehementer, minimè, &c.* as, *Faciâ, quod maxime reipublica interesse judicabo*, Cic. Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accusative with the prep. *ad*; as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant?* Of what importance is it, &c. Plaut. *Perf. 4, 3, 44. Magni ad bonorem nostrum interest*, Cic. rarely the dative; as, *Dic, quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi, &c.* Hor. S. I, 1, 49. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopere interest opprimi Dolobellam*, it is of great importance, Cic. *Permultum interest, qualis primus aditus sit, Id. Adedne est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quàm qui sim, magis referat*, Liv. 2, 7. *Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas*, Juv. 14, 74.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* likewise agree; as, *Interest Ciceronis, i. e. est inter negotia Ciceronis: Refert patris, i. e. refert se hæc res ad negotia patris: So interest mea, est inter negotia mea.*

EXC. II. These five, *MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, TÆDET, and PIGET*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; as,

Miseret me tui, I pity you.

Tædet me vitæ, I am weary of life.

Pœnitet me peccati, I repent of my sin.

Pudet me culpæ, I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui*, that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse, or quod peccaverim*. The accusative is frequently understood; as, *Scelerum sibi bene pœnitet, scil. nos, Horat. od. 3, 15, 50*.

Obs. 3. *Miseret, pœnitet, &c.* are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod, &c.* as, *Ipsæ sui miseret*, Lucr. 3, 894. *Nonne hæc te pudet*, Ter. Ad. 4, 7, 36. *Nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facias, for cujus te pœnitere possit, Cic.*

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedemi vicem miseret me, scil. secundum or quod ad, Ter. Heaut. 4, 5, 1*.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret, pudet, tædet, and piget*, when used

in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*, Ter. We likewise find *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*, Ter; *Miseretur te fratrum*; *Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*, Cic.

EXC. III. *DECET, DELECTAT, JUVAT*, and *OPORTET*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive; as,

Delectat me studere,
Non decet te vixari,

It delights me to study.
It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvum parva decent*, Hor. ep. 1, 7, 44. *Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiamsi liceat*, Cic. Balb. 3. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant*, Ter. Heaut. 3, 2, 25.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet*, Ter. Adel. 5, 8, 5.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mood, *ut* being understood; as,

Sibi quisque consulat oportet, Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit*; *mansum oportuit*; *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humoured, Ter. Adel. 2, 2, 6.

Obs. 4. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nullâ esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit*; *De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribere*, Cic. Att. 7, 18.

NOTE, *Attinet, pertinet, & spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari*, Cic. Att. 9, 11. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, Ter. Ad. 3, 3, 82. *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points, Cic. Fam. 14, 5.

The CONSTRUCTION of the INFINITIVE.

XXX. One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

Cupio discere.

I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Lyricorum Horatius, ferè solus est legi dignus*, Quintil. 10, 1, 96. And sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus equum fumantia solvere colla*, Virg. G. 2. f.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam*, scil. *decet*, or *par est*, Virg. A. 1, 37. *Videre est*, one may see; *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*, Horat. S. 1, 5, 87. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socratem fidibus docuit*, scil. *canere*, Cic. Fam. 9, 22. So *Discere, scire fidibus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, The name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own; and likewise supplies the place of a noun,

not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocinari, fraudare, turpe est*, Cic. *Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes, emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros*, Ovid. P. 2, 9, 47.—2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare*, for *cantandi*, or *cantus*, Virg. E. 10, 32.—3. In the dative, *Et vos servire magis, quam imperare, parati estis*, Sall. Cat. 20, l.—4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere*, for *artem fallendi*, Horat. ep. 1, 16, 61. *Quod faciam superest, præter amare, nihil*, Ovid. ep. 19, 16.—5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum, ut non sentientibus effluis!* for *vita nostra*.—6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari*, for *amore*, or *qui ametur*, Virg. E. 5, 89.

Obf. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of *doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping*; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubitatur ita facere*, or more frequently, *an, num, or utrum ita facturus sit*; *Dubitavit, an faceret necne*; *Non dubito, quin fecerit. Vis me facere, or ut faciam, Metuit tangi, or ne tangatur. Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut venias. Nunquam putavi fore, ut ad te supplex venirem*, Cic. Att. 16, 18. *Existimabant futurum fuisse, ut oppidum amitteretur*, Cæf. B. C. 3, 101.

Obf. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel*, and some others; as, *I bid him do it*: and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, *I am sent to complain, Mittor questum, or ut querar, &c.* Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum*; Time to read, *Tempus legendi*; Fit to swim, *Aptus natando*; Easy to say, *Facile dictu*; I am to write, *Scripturus sum*; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, *Domus locanda*; He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

To in English is often taken absolutely; as, *To confess the truth; To proceed; to conclude*; that is, *That I may confess the truth, &c.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, and SUPINES.

XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,

Amans virtutem, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude*, Wanting guile.

Obf. 1. Passive participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

Suspectus mihi, Suspected by me; *Suspectiores regibus*, Sall. Cat. 7. *Invisus mihi*; hated by me, or hateful to me; *Indies invisior*, Suet. Tib. 13. *Occulta, et maribus non invisa solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra*, unseen, Cic. Har. resp. 27.

EXOSUS, PEROSUS, and often also *PERTÆSUS*, govern the accusative; as, *Tedas exosa jugales*, Ovid. M. 1, 483. *Piebs consulum nomen baud secus quam regum perosa erat*. Liv. 3, 34. *Pertasus ignaviam suam; semet ipse*, displeased with, Suet. vitam, weary of, Justin 38, 9.

Verbals in *BUNDUS* govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ*, Just. 6, 8. *Vitandus castra hostium*, Liv. 25, 13. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus*, Cic. Leg. 1, 15. *Invidia consuli*, Sall. Cat. 32. *Domum reditionis spe sublata*, Cæf. B. G. 1, 5. *Quid tibi bonæ curatio est rem?* Plaut. Amph. 1, 3, 21. cf. Cæf. 2, 6, 54.

III. The Gerund in *DO* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

Charta utilis scribendo, Paper useful for writing.

So, *nullum semen ultra quadratum utile est ferendo*, Plin. 19, 11 f. 58. *Charta emporetica est inutilis scribendo*, Id. 13, 12 f. 23. *Rubens ferrum non est habile tundendo*, Id. 34, 15. f. 43.

Obf. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par*, or *habilis*, He is not able to pay, Cic. Fam. 3, 8. So, *cum solvendo civitates non essent*, Cic. Fam. 3, 8. *Alexandrinae ficus non sunt vescendo*, sc. *aptae*, are not fit for eating, Plin. 15, 18. So, *radix ejus est vescendo*, Id. 21, 16. 56. *Aqua bituminata et nitrosa bibendo atque purgationibus*, sc. *utilis*, Id. 31, 6.

Obf. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs; as, *Adesse scribendo*, Cic. Har. resp. 7. *Aptat habendo enses*, for wearing, Virg. A. 12, 83. *Is finis censendo factus est*, Liv. 1, 44.

IV. The Gerund in *DUM* of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as,

Promptus ad audiendum, Ready to hear.
Attentus inter docendum, Attentive in time of teaching.

Obf. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as, *Ante domandum*, Virg. G. 3, 206. *Pecuniam ab aliquo ob absolvendum accipere*, Cic. Verr. 2, 32. *Plus eloquentia circa movendum valet*, Quintil. 4, 5, 6. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood; as, *moriendum sibi potius, quam perpetiendum putant*, Cic. Verr. 1, 32.

V. The Gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

Pena a peccando auferret, Punishment frightens from sinning.

* Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

Memoria excolendo augetur, The memory is improved by exercising it.
Difessus sum ambulando, I am wearied with walking.

Obf. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere*: only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tifidium vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperaretur*, to receive orders, Sall. Jug. 62. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius; sic enim antiqui loquebantur*, i. e. *ut tibi imperetur*, Cic. Fam. 9, 25. *Urit videndo*, i. e. *dum videtur*, Virg. G. 3, 115.

The gerund in English becomes a substantive, by prefixing the article to it, and then it is always to be construed with the preposition *of*; as, *He is employed in writing letters*, or, *in the writing of letters*: but it is improper to say, *in the writing letters*, or *in writing of letters*.

Gerunds turned into participles in dus.

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund.

Petendum est mihi pacem,
Tempus petendi pacem,
Ad petendum pacem,
A petendo pacem;

By the Participle or Gerundive.

} or more frequently { *Pax est petenda mihi.*
 Tempus petendæ pacis.
 Ad petendam pacem.
 A petenda pace.

Obf. 1. In changing Gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the Gerund was; as,

Genitive; *Inita sunt consilia urbis delenda, civium trucidandorum, neminis Romani extinguendi, Cic. Muren. 37.*

Dat. *Perpetiundo labori idoneus, Colum. 1, 9, 3. Capessenda rei publicæ habilis, Tac. Area firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis, Liv. 2, 5. Oneri ferendo est, Sc. aptus v. habilis, Liv. 2, 9. Natus miseris ferendis, Ter. Litteris dandis vigilare, Cic. Locum oppidis condendo capere, Liv. Manubia, qua perducendo ad culmen operi destinata erant, Liv. 1, 55.*

Acc. and abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnanda Capua dures Romanos abstrahere, Liv. 27, 7. Orationem Laticam legendis assiris efficies pleniorum, Cic. Off. 1, 1.*

Obf. 2. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor, utor, abutor, fevor, fungor, and potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe, or petiunda urbis: justitiæ fruenda causa videntur olim bene morati reges constituti, Cic. Off. 2, 12. illa utas magis ad hæc utenda idonea est, Ter. Heaut. 1, 1, 81. Nos in omni munere fungendo summam adhibebimus diligentiam, Cic. Att. 1, 1.*—But we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*; &c.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. The Supine in *um*.

XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a Verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulatum,

He hath gone to walk.

So, *Ducere cohortes prædatum, Liv. Nunc venis irrisum dominum? Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitror, te id admonitum venio, Plaut.*

Obf. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *Il se perditum*, the same with *id agit, or operam dat, ut se perdat*, he is bent on his own destruction, *Ter. And. 1, 1, 107. Eo, dum paucis sceleratis parcunt, bonos omnes*

omnes perditum eunt, Sallust. Cat. 52, 12. *cf.* Id. Jug. 31, 27.—This supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive: as, *An credebas illam sine tuâ operâ iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved, *An credebas iri* (a te, vel ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum*, Did you think that she would be brought home into your bed-chamber, without any pains of your own? Ter. Adelph. 4, 5, 60.

Obf. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum*; *Cantatum provocemus*, Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam*; *Divisit copias biematum*, Nep.

Obf. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem*: or, 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis oranda*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*. 3. *Venit opi orande*. 4. *Venit opem oraturus*. 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opem oret*. 6. *Venit opem orare*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. The Supine in u.

XXXVIII. The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facile dictu,

Easy to tell, or to be told.

So *Nihil dictu sedum, visuque, hæc limina tuncat, intra quæ puer est*, Juv. 14, 43. *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus*; *Fas v. nefas est dictu*; *quod scitu opus est*, Cic. Inv. 1, 20. *ita dictu opus est*, Ter. Heaut. 5, 1, 68. *quodque nefas dictu, fieri nec posse putavi*, Ov. P. 1, 9, 3.

Obf. 1. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obsonatu redeo*, from getting provisions, Plaut. *Primus cubitu surgat* (villicus), from bed, *postremus cubitum eat*, Cato, c. 5.

Obf. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu, cognoscei*, or *ad cognoscendum*; *Res facilis ad credendum*, Cic.

Obf. 3. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

1. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

XXXIX. Adverbs are joined to Verbs and Participles, to adjectives, and to other adverbs; as,

Bene scribit, He writes well.

Fortiter pugnans, Fighting bravely.

Servus egregie fidelis, A slave remarkably faithful.

Satis bene, Well enough.

Obs. 1. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives; as,

Homerus planè orator; planè noster, verè Metellus, Cic. So, Hodie mane; cras mane, beri mane; hodie vespere, &c. tam mane, tam vespere.

Obs. 2. The adverb for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

*Nec non senserunt, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. et senserunt, and they did perceive; Non poteram non exanimari metu, Cic. So, non sum nescius, i. e. scio, Cic. Or. 1, 11. haud nihil est, i. e. est aliquid, Ter. Eun. 4, 2, 13. nonnulli, i. e. aliqui; nonnunquam, i. e. aliquando; non nemo, i. e. quidam; nemo non, i. e. quilibet, &c. Examples, however, of the contrary of this occur in good authors, both Latin and English. Thus, in imitation of the Greeks, two negatives sometimes make a stronger negation: *Neque ego haud committam, ut, si quid peccatum fiet, (te) fecisse dicas de meâ sententiâ, I will not cause, that &c. Plaut. Bacch. 4, 9, 114. Jura, te non nociturum homini hac de re nemini, for nulli homini, Id Mil. 5, 1, 18. cf. Epid. 4, 1, 6. & 5, 1, 57. — Nolle successum, non Patribus, non consulibus, they did wish success either to the Patricians, or the Consuls, Liv. 2, 45. So, nihil iste nec ausus, nec potuit. Virg. A. 9, 428. add. Virg. E. 4, 53. & 5, 53. Ter. Eun. 5, 9, 47. Heaut. 1, 1, 11. Nep. 25, 3.**

But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison, and the mood with which they are joined. 1. *Apprimè, admodum, vehementer, maximè, perquam, valdè, oppidò, &c.* and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admodum fecerit, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us, Cic. Amic. 4. perquam puerile, very childish; oppidò pauci, very few; perspicile est, &c.* In like manner, *Parum, enultum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum;* as, *In rebus apertissimis nimium longi sumus; parum firmus, multum bonus, Cic.* Adverbs in *um* are sometimes also joined to comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantum amplior humanâ, Liv. 1, 7.*

Quam is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses; as, *Quàm difficile est! How difficult it is! Quàm crudelis, or Ut crudelis est! How cruel he is! Flens quàm familiariter, very familiarly, Ter. So quàm severè, very severely, Cic. quàm latè very widely, Cæs. Tam multa, quàm, &c. as many things as, &c. Quàm maximas potest copias armis, as great as possible, Sall. Jug. 13. Quàm maximas gratias agit, quàm primum, quàm sapissime, Cic. Quàm quisque pessimè fecit, tam maximè tutus est, Sallust. Jug. 31, 14.*

Facile, for *haud dubiè*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to superlatives or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facilè doctissimus, facilè princeps, v. principus. Longè*, to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive; as, *Longè omnium eloquentissimus Plato, Cic. Or. 1, 10. Pedibus longè melior Lycus, Virg. A. 9, 556.*

2. *Cum*, when, is const. ued with the indicative or subjunctive, often-
er with the latter; *Dum*, whilst, or how long, with the indicative; as,

Dum hæc aguntur; Ægroto, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur, Cic. Att. 9, 12. *Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos*, Ovid. Tr. 1, 8, 5. DUM and DONEC, for *usquedum*, until, sometimes with the indicative and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, *Operior, dum ista cognosco*, Cic. Att. 10, 3. *Haud desinam, donec perfecero hoc*. Ter. Phor. 2, 3, 73. So QUOAD, for *quamdiu, quantum, quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe; Quoad tibi æquum videbitur; quoad posses, ut liceret; quoad progredi poterit amentia*, Cic. But QUOAD, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Thessalonica esse statueram, quoad aliquid ad me scriberes*, Cic. Att. 3, 13.—but not always; *Non scilicet finem rogandi, quoad nunciatum erit te fecisse*, Cic. ib. 16.—The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere* or *fieri* is elegantly added to *quoad*; as, *Quoad ejus facere poteris*, ib. 11, 12. *Quoad ejus fieri possit*, Cic. Fam. 5, 8. *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid* or some such word understood.—*Quoad corpus, quoad animam*, for *secundum*, or *quod attinet ad corpus vel animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. POSTQUAM or POSTEQUAM, after, is usually joined with the Indic. ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, before; SIMUL, SIMULAC, SIMUL ATQUE, SIMUL UT, as soon as; UBI, when, sometimes with the Ind. and sometimes with the Subj. as, *Antequam dico, or dicam*, Cic. *Simulac perfensit*, Virg. A. 4, 90. *Simul ut videro Curionem*, Cic. Att. 10, 4. *Hæc ubi dicta dedit*, Liv. 22, 50. Virg. A. 6, 628. *Ubi semel quis pejeraverit, ei credi postea non oportet*, Cic. Rabir. 13. So NE, truly; as, *Næ ego homo sum infel. x.* Ter. *Ne tu, si id fecisses, melius fama tua consulivisses*, Cic. Phil. 2, 2. But NE, not, with the Imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Ne jura*, Plaut. *Ne post conferas culpam in me*, Ter. *Ne tot annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis discrimen*, Liv. 30, 30.

4. QUASI, CEU, TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the Indicative; *Fuit olim, quasi ego sum, senex*, Plaut. *Adversè rupto ceu quondam turbine venti configunt*, Virg. A. 2, 416. *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur*, Cic. Or. 3, 56. But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laboretur*, Cic. Tusc. 2, 12.

5. UTINAM, Ô SI, UT for *utinam*, I wish, take the Subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit*, Cic. Fam. 14, 1. *O mibi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos*, Virg. A. 8, 560. *Ut illum dii deaque perdant*, Ter. Eun. 2, 3, 10.

6. UT, when or after, takes the indicative; as, *Ut discessit, venit*, &c. ¶ Also for *quam* or *quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet! Ut solus animi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. Capt. 2, 62. ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse*, Plaut. Rud. 4, 4, 55. ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, Cic. Or. 2, 65.

7. QUIN for CUR NON, takes the Indic. as, *Quin continetis vocem, indicem stultitiæ vestræ?* Cic. Rabir. perd. 6. ¶ For ISTO, nay or but, the Indic. or Imperat. as, *Quin est paratum argentum; quin tu hoc audi*, Ter. ¶ For UT NON, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD NON, or QUO MINUS, the Subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam faciliis res, quin difficilis fiet, quum invitus facias*, Ter. Heaut. 4, 6, 1. *Nemo est, quin malit; facere non possum, quin ad te mittam*, I cannot help sending; *Nihil absit, quin sim miserimus*, Cic. Att. 11, 15.

The GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

XL. Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

Pridie ejus diei,
Ubiq; gentium,
Satis est verborum,

The day before that day.
Every where.
There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are *Interea*, *postea*, *inde*, *tunc*; as *Interea loci*, in the mean time; *Postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quò*, with their compounds, *ubique*, *ubiqueque*, *ubivis*, *ubiubi*, &c. Also *Eò*, *huc*, *buccine*, *unde*, *usque*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *longe*, *ibidem*: as, *Ubi*, *quò*, *quovis*, &c. also *usquam*, *nusquam*, *unde terrarum*, vel *gentium*; *longè gentium*; *ibidem loci*, *èò audacia*, *vecordia*, *miseriarum*, &c. to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abundè*, *assètim*, *largiter*, *nimis*, *satis*, *parum*, *minimè*; as, *Abundè gloria*, *assètim divitiarum*, *largiter auri*, *satis loquentis*, *sapientia parum est illi*, vel *ille habet*, He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minimè gentium*, by no means.

Some add *ergò* and *instar*; as, *donari virtutis ergò*, for the sake of virtue, Cic. de Opt. gen. Orat. 7. *Instar montis equum—edificant*, like a mountain, Virg. A. 2, 15. But these are properly nouns. (See page 51.)

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentia gloriae abundè adeptus*, the same with *abundantium gloriae*; or *res*, *locus*, or *negotium* with a preposition may be understood; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, *loc in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridie*, *postridie ejus diei*, seldom *diem*; but *pridie*, *postridie Kalendas*, *Nonas*, *Idus*, *Judos Apollinares*, *natalem ejus*, *abolutionem ejus*, &c. rarely *Kalendurum*, &c.

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

En hostis, or *hostem*; *Ecce miserum hominem*, Cic. Fin. 2, 30. Sometimes a dative is added; *Ecce tibi Strato*, Cic. Acad. 2, 38. *Ecce duas* (scil. aras) *tibi*, *Daphni*, E. 2, 66. 2. *En tibi*, *inquit*, *ut sentias*, &c. Liv. 2, 12. In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce*; as *Hem tibi Davum*, Ter. And. 5, 2, 1. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

Omnium optimè loquitur,
Convenienter natura,
Venit obviam ei,
Proximè castris or castra,

He speaks the best of all.
Agreeably to Nature.
He came to meet him.
Next the camp.

The CONSTRUCTION of PREPOSITIONS.

1. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accusative.

AD Astra, *to the stars*; religari ad asserem, *to be bound to a plank*; ad diem veniam, solvam, &c. *at or on*; ad portam, ostium, fores, *at, before*; ad urbem, Tiberim, *near, at*; ad templa supplicatio, *in*; ad summum, *at most, or to the top*; ad summam, *on the whole*; Cic; ad ultimum, extremum, *at last, finally*; ad v. in speciem, *to appearance*; mentis ad omnia capacitas; annus fatalis ad interitum; lenius ad severitatem, *for, with respect to*, Cic.; ad vivum, *sc. corpus, to the quick*; ad judicem agere, *before*; nihil ad Cæsarem, *in comparison of*; numero ad duodecim, *to the number of*; omnes ad unum, *to a man*; ad hoc, *besides*; ad vulgi opinionem, *according to*; homo ad unguem factus, *an accomplished man*; herba ad lunam mellæ, *by the light of*, Virg. ad tempus venit, *at*; Ira brevis est & ad tempus, *for*; ad tempus consilium capiam, *according to*; Cic.; ad decem annos, *after*; annos ad quinquaginta natus, *about*; Cic. nebula erat ad multum diei, *for a great part of the day*; Liv.; ad pedes jacere, provolvi, procumbere, & ad genua; ad manus esse, *at*; ad manus venire, *to come to a close engagement*; ad libellam deberi, *to a suit, no more and no less*; ad amullum, *exactly*; ad hæc visa auditaque, *upon seeing and bearing these things*, Liv.

AD seems sometimes to be taken adverbially; as, Ad duo millia cæsa sunt; ad mille hominum amissum est; ad ducenti perierunt, *about*, Liv.

APUD forum, *at*; apud me cæna-bis, *at my house*; apud senatum,

judices, v. aliquem dicere, *before*; apud majores nostros, *among*; apud Xenophontem, *in the book of*; Est mihi fides, *vel valeo, apud illum, I have credit with him*; facio te apud illum deum, Ter.

ANTE diem, focum, &c. *before*.

ADVERSUS, v. -um; CONTRA hostes, *against*; adversus infimos justitia est servanda, *towards*; adversum hunc loqui, *to*, Ter. Lerina adversum Antipolim, *over against*, Plin.

CIS vel CÏTRA flumen, *on this side*; citra necessitatem, *without*; Ede citra cruditatem, bibe citra ebrietatem, Senec.

CIRCUM & CIRCA regem, *about*; Varia circa hæc opinio, Plin.

ERGA amicos, *towards*. EXTRA muros; Extra jocum, periculum, noxiam, sortem, *without*; nemo extra te, *besides*; extra conjurationem, *not concerned in*, Sall.

INFRA-tectum, *below the roof*.

INTER fratres, *among*; inter & super cænam, *during, in the time of*; inter hæc parata, *during these preparations*; Sall. Inter tot annos, *in*; Cic. Inter diem, *whence, interdiu, in the day time*; inter se amant, *they love one another*; Quasi non norimus nos inter nos, Ter.

INTRA privatos parietes, *intra paucos annos, within*; intra sanam est, *less than report*. Quint.

JUXTA macellum, *near the stables*.

OB lucrum, *for gain*; ob oculos, *before*; ob industriam *for de industria, on purpose*, Plaut.

PENES quem, or quem penes,

in the power of; Penes te es? Are you in your senses? Hor.

PER agros, *through; per vim, per scelus, by; per anni tempus, per ætatem licet, for, by reason of.*

PONE caput, *behind.*

POST hoc tempus, *after; post tergum, behind; post homines natos, post hominum memoriam, since the world began.*

PRÆTER te nemo, *no body besides, or except; præter casam fugere, beyond; præter legem, morem, æquum & bonum, spem, opinionem, &c. contrary to, against, beyond; præter cæteros excellere, lamentari, above; præter sipam ire, along, near; præter oculos, before, Cic.*

PROPTER virtutem, *for, on account of; propter aquæ rivum, near, hard by, Virg.*

SECUNDUM facta & virtutes tuas, *according to, Ter. secundum littus, secundum aurem vulnera-*

tus est, near to; in actione secundum vocem vultus plurimum valet; secundum patrem tu es proximus, after, next to; Prætor secundum me decrevit, sententiam dedit, for, in my favour, Cic.

SECUS viam, *by, along.*

SUPRA terram, *above.*

TRANS mare, *over, beyond.*

ULTRA oceanum, *beyond.*

To prepositions governing the accusative are commonly added **CIRCITER**, **PROPE**, **USQUE** & **VERSUS**; as, *Circiter meridiem, about mid-day; prope muros, near the walls; usque Puteolos, Tarsum usque, as far as; Orientem versus, towards the east.* But in these *ad* is understood; which we find sometimes expressed; as, *Prope ad annum, Ncp. Ab ovo usque ad mala, Hor. Ad oceanum versus, Cæs. In Italiam versus, Cic.*

PREPOSITIONS governing the Ablative.

A patre, ab omnibus, abs te, *by or from; a puero, vel pueria, a pueritia, incunabulis, teneris unguibus, &c. from a child, ever since childhood; ab ovo usque ad mala, from the beginning to the end of supper; a manu sc. scrvus, an amanuensis or clerk; ad manum, a waiting man; a pedibus, a footman; a latere principis, an attendant. So a secretis, rationibus, consiliis, cyathis, &c. a secretary, an accountant, &c.; fores a nobis, for nostræ. Injuria ab illo, for illius, Ter. a cæna, after; Secundus, tertius a Romulo; ictus ab latere, on or in; a senatu stare, for, in defence of; ab oculis doleo, Plaut. ab ingenio improbus, a pecunia & militibus imparatus, as to,*

with respect to, Cic. Est calor a sole; omissores ab re, too careless about money; a villâ mercenarium vidi, Ter.

ABSQUE causâ, *without; absque te esset, recte ego mihi vidissem, i. e. si tu non esses, v. nisi tu esses, but for you, had it not been for you, Ter. Absque is chiefly used by comic writers; sine, by orators.*

CLAM patre & patrem, *without the knowledge of.*

CORAM omnibus, *before, in presence of.*

CUM exercitu, *with; testis mecum est annulus, in my possession, Ter. cum primâ luce, at break of day; cum imperio esse, in; cum primis, in primis, in the first place; cum metu dicere, cum lætitiâ vivere, cum curâ, &c. Cic.*

Cic. *We say*, *metum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum; rarely cum me, cum te, &c. and quocum or cum quo, quibuscum or cum quibus.*

DE lanâ caprinâ rixantur, *about, concerning*; De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, *of*; de loco superiore, *from*; de die, *by day*; de nocte, *by night*; de integro, *anew, afresh*; de v. ex improvise, *unexpectedly*; de v. ex industria, *on purpose*; de meo, *at my expence*; Id de lucro putato esse, *clear gain*, Ter. de v. ex pacto agere, *by agreement*; de transverso, *cross wise, atwart*; de v. ex ejus sententiâ, consilio, *according to*; qua v. hac de causa, *for*; homo de plebe, templum de marmore, *of*; de scripto dicere, *to read a speech*; de filio emit, *from*, Cic. De servis fidelissimus; de ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit, Nep. Robur de exercitu, Liv. Adolescens de summo loco, Plaut. De procul aspicere, Id.

E foro, Ex ædibus, *from, out of*; e contrario, v. e contrariâ parte, *on the contrary*; e regione, *over against*; e republica, e re alicujus, *for the good of*; statim e somno, ex fuga, ex tanta proterantia, aliud ex alio malum, *from, after*; e vestigio, *out of hand, immediately*; poculum ex auro; ex equo pugnare, *on horseback*; facere pugnam ex commodo, *on advantageous ground*, Sall. diem ex die expectare, *from day to day, day after day*; ex ordine, *in order*; magna ex parte, *for the most part*; ex supervacuo, *superfluously*; ex tua dignitate v. virtute, ex decreto senatus, e natura, *according to*; se vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa assinat; ex v. de pro-

re, ad v. in morem alicujus: Ex animo, *from the heart*; Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, e via languere, ex doctrina nobilis, *on account of*; ex usu est tibi, *of advantage*; ex eo die, *since*; ex amicis certis certissimus, *of or among*; ex pedibus laborare, *to be ill of the gout*, Cic. E re nata, *as the matter stands*, Ter. Commienta mater est, esse ex alio viro, nescio quo, puerum natum, *by*, Id.

PRO gloria certare, *for*; Rati noctem pro se, *favourable to them*, Sall. Hoc est pro me, Cic. pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, *before*; pro sua dignitate, sapientia, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, *according to*; est pro prætore, pro te molam, comes facundus pro vehiculo est, *for, instead of*; pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro sua quisque parte v. facultate, *to one's ability or power*; Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, *in comparison of, considering*, Cic. pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, *as I deserve*; pro se quisque, uterque, &c. *for his own part*; pro rata parte, pro portione, *in proportion*; pro cive se gerit; agere pro victoribus; pro suo uti; pro rupto sædus habet, *for, as*; so pro certo, insecto, comperto, nihilo, concessio, &c. habeo, duco. Pro occiso relictus est, Cic.

PRÆ se pugionem tulit, *before*; speciem præ se boni viri fert, *pretends to be*, Ter. præ lacrymis non possum scribere, *for, because of*; illum præ me contempni, *in comparison of*: So the ado. præut; *as*, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit, Ter.

PALAM populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of*.

SINE labore, *without*; sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querela, impensa, &c.; homo sine re, fide, spe, fortunis, sede, &c. Cic.

Capulo TONUS, *up to the bill*. *Tonus* is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing.; as, *Cumarum tonus*, as far as *Cuma*: or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two; as, *Oculorum, aurium, narium, la-*

brorum, lumborum, crurum tonus, up to. We also find *Orcyrae tonus, & ostus tonus*, Liv. *Colchis tonus*, Flor. *Pectoribus tonus*, Ovid.

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added *PROCUL*; as, *Procul domo*, far from home; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patria*, Virg. *Procul ab ostentatione*. Quincil. *Culpa est procul a me*, Ter. Adel. 3, 2, 50.

3. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accus. and Abl.

XLIV. The prepositions *in, sub, super, and subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative; as,

IN urbem ire, into; amor *in patriam*, in te benignus, *towards*; in lucem, *until day*; in eam sententiam, *to that purpose, on that head*; in rem tuam est, *for your advantage*; in utramque partem disputare, *on both sides, for and against*; litura *in nomen*, on, Cic. potestas *in filium*, over; in aliquem dicere, *against*; mirum *in modum*, *after*; in pedes stare, *in aurem dormire*, on; in os laudare, *to, before*; in v. inter patres lectus, *into the number of*; in vulgus probari, spargere, &c. *among*; crescit *in dies*, in singulos dies, omnes in dies, *every day*; in diem posterum, proximum, decimum, *against*; in diem vivere, *to live from hand to mouth, not to think of to-morrow*; Est *in diem*, will

happen some time after, Ter. *Induciae in duos menses datae*, in hunc diem, annum, &c. *for*; Ternis assibus *in pedem*, v. *in singulos pedes*, transegit, *he bargained for three shillings a-foot, or for every foot*; So *in jugerum*, militem, capita, naves, &c. *In medimna singula*, H. S. quinos denos dedisti, Cic.

IN portu navigo, in tempore, *in*; esse *in potestate*, v. *in potestatem*, honore vel honorem, mente v. mentem: *in manu v. manibus esse*: habere, tenere, *in one's power, on hand*; in amicis, among; in oculis before: *Ocicifus est in provinciam*, for in provincia, Sall. Cat. 19. et ibi Cort. *In pueritia, adolescentia, senectute, absentia, for puer or pueri*

pueri, *when a boy or boys, &c.* Hoc in tempore, Nep. In loco fratris diligere, *for ut fratrem*, Ter.

SUB terras ibit imago, sub aspectum cadit, *under*; sub ipsum funus, *near, just before*. Hor. od. 2, 18, 18. sub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vesperam, brumam, *i. e.* incipiente luce, &c. *at the dawn of day, &c.*; sub idem tempus, *about*; sub eas literas recitatae sunt tuae, sub festos dies, *after*, Cic.

SUB muro, rege, pedibus, &c. un-

der; sub urbe, *near*, Ter. sub ea, conditione, *v. em, on or with*.

SUPER Numidiam, *above, beyond*; super ripas, *upon*; super hæc; super morbum etiam fames afflixit, *besides*, Liv. super arbore, fronde super viridi, *upon*; super hac re scribere, his accensa super, *concerning*; alii super ahos trucidantur, Liv. Super cœnam super vinum & epulas, *for inter, during*, Curt. Nec super ipse suâ molitur laude laborem, *for*, Virg.

SUBTER terram vel terrâ, *under*.

Obf. 1. Prepositions in English have always after them the accusative or objective case. And when prepositions in English or Latin do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *Antè, cirçà, clàm, coràm, contra, infrà, intrà, juxtà, palàm, ponè post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, *Longo post tempore venit*, *sc. post id tempus*. *Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum, & clam*, are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl. as, *Intus cellam*, *for intra*, Liv. *Intus templo divum*, *sc. in*, Virg. *Simul bis*, *sc. cum*, Hor.

Obf. 2. A and E are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

A patre, e regione: ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte: abs before q and t; as, *abs te, abs quòvis homine*, Ter. Some phrases are used only with e; as, *e longinquo, e regione, e vestigio, e re meâ est*, &c. Some only with ex; as, *Ex compoçto, ex tempore, magnâ ex parte*, &c.

Obf. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenère loco*, *scil. ad; It portis*, *sc. ex*, Virg. *Nunc id proçto*, *scil. ob vel propter*, Ter. *Moria aspera juro*, *scil. per*, Virg. *Ut se loco movere non possent*, *scil. e vel de*, Cæf. *Vina promens dolio*, *scil. ex*, Hor. *Quid illo fucias? Quid me fiet*, *sc. de*, Ter. And so in English, *Show me the book; Get me some paper*, that is, *to me, for me*. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordiæ*, *sc. ædem*, Sall. *Round St Paul's*, namely, *church*; *Campum Stellatæm divisit extra sortem ad viginti millibus civium*, *i. e. civium millibus ad viginti millia*, Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Exmittere servum*, *scil. manu*, Plaut. *Evomere virus*, *scil. ore*, Cic. *Educere copias*, *scil. castris*, Cæf.

XLV. A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

Adcamus scholam,
Exeamus scholâ,

Let us go to the school.
Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adire ad scholam*; *Exire e schola*; *Adgredi aliquid*, or *ad aliquid*; *ingredi orationem vel in orationem*; *inducere animum*, & *in animum*; *evadere undis* & *ex undis*; *decedere de suo jure*, *decedere viâ* vel *de via*; *expellere*, *ejicere*, *exterminare*, *extrudere*, *exturbare urbe*, & *ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari*, *alloqui*, *alabarè aliquem*, not *ad aliquem*. So *Alluere urbem*; *accipere flamen*; *circumvenire aliquem*; *prætere injuriam*; *abdicare se magistratu*, (also *abdicare magistratum*); *transducere exercitum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem*, *adhortari ad aliquid*, *incidere in morbum*, *avocare a studiis*, *avertere ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire, demigrare loco*; & *a, de, ex loco*; *abstrahere aliquem a, de, vel e conspectu*; *Desistere sententiâ, a vel de sententiâ*; *Excidere manibus, de vel e manibus*; &c.

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

Egredi urbe or *urbem*, sc. *extra*; *egredi extra vallum*, Nep. *Evadere infidiis* or *insidias*. *Patrios excedere muros*, Lucan. *Sceleratâ excedere terrâ*, Virg. *Elabi ex manibus*; *pugnam, vincula*, Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Alloquor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

O vir bonus or *bone*! *O good man*! *Heu me miserum*! *Ah wretched me*!

So, *O vir fortis atque amicus*! Ter. *Heu vanitas humana*! Plin. *Heu miserande puer*! Virg. *O præclarum custodem ovium* (ut aiunt) *lupum*! Cic.

XLVII. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

Hei mihi! *Ah me*!

Væ vobis! *Woe to you*?

Obs. 1. *Heus* and *obe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*, Ter. *Obedibile*! Martial. *Proh* or *pro, ab, vob, bem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh hominum fidem*! Ter. *Proh sancte Jupiter*! Cic. *Hem astutias*! Ter. And. 3, 4, 25.

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connection with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case

therefore is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely; thus, *Heu me miserum!* stands for *Heu! quàm me miserum sentio!* *Hei mihi!* for *malum est mihi!* *Proh dolor!* for *Proh! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing.* 2. The *Cause, Manner,* and *Instrument.* 3. *Place.* 4. *Measure and Distance.* 5. *Time.*

I. PRICE.

XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

<i>Emi librum duobus assibus,</i>	I bought a book for two shillings.
<i>Constitit talento,</i>	It cost a talent.

So *Assè carum est; vile viginti minis; auro venale, &c. Nocet emptæ dolore voluptas,* Hor. ep. 1, 2, 55. *Spem pretio non emam,* Ter. *Non emam vitiosâ nuce,* Plaut. Mil. 2, 3, 45. *Sextante sal et Roma et per totam Italianam erat,* Liv. 29, 37. *Plurimus auro vœnit bonos,* many a place of honour is sold for gold, Ovid. Art. Am. 2, 277.

¶ These genitives *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris,* are excepted; as,

Quanti constitit, How much cost it? *Assè et pluris,* A shilling and more.

So *emit homo cupidus tanti, quanti Pythius voluit,* Cic. Off. 3, 14. *Vendo meum non pluris quàm ceteri; fortasse etiam minoris,* lb. c. 12.

Obf. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendere,* Cic. *Domus referta vasu Corinthiis, in quibus est authepsa illa, quam tanto pretio nuper mercatus est,* Cic. S. Rosc. 46. *Pretio minore captivus redimere,* Liv. 22, 57.

Obf. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo,* are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constitit,* scil. *pretio,* Cic. *Heu quanto regnis nox stetit una tuis?* Ovid. Fast. ii. 812. We also say *Emi carè, carius, carissimè; bene, melius, optimè; malè, pejùs, vilùs, vilissimè; Valde carè aestimas: Emit domum prope dimidiò carius, quàm aestimabat,* Cic. Dom. 44.

Obf. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret,* Liv. 38, 11 f.

2. MANNER and CAUSE.

XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

<i>Palleo metu,</i>	I am pale for fear.
<i>Fecit suo more,</i>	He did it after his own way.
<i>Scrivo calamo,</i>	I write with a pen.

Sed Ardet dolorem; patisscens culpam; astuare dubitatione; gestisse voluptate vel secundis rebus: Confessus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissimo supplicio; insignis pietate; deterior licentia: Pietate filius, consiliis pater, amore frater; hence Rex Dei gratia. Paritur pax bello, Nep. Procedere lento gradu; Acceptor regio apparatus: Nullo sono convertitur annus, Juv. Jam veniet tacito curva senectia pede, Ovid. Art. Am. 2, 670. Percutere aliquem securi, defendere faxis, configere sagittis, &c.

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, 1. *Solito matrum de more locuta est, Virg. A. 7, 357. Magna cum metu; Hac de causa: Præ marore, formidine, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio, not cum gladio; unless among the poets who sometimes add a or ab; as, Trojellus ab ense, Ovid. F. 5, 709.*

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition *cum* usually added; as, 2. *Desinant obsidere cum gladiis curiam, Cic. Cat. 1, 13. ut Vestius in foro cum pugione, et item servi ejus comprehenderentur cum telis, Cic. Att. 2, 24: Ingressus est cum gladio, Id.*

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum, Liv. 6, 4. Floruit acumine ingenii, Cic. Acad. 4, 6. Pollet opibus, valet armis, viget memoria fama nobilis, &c. Aeger pedibus.* When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, *Templum de marmore, seldom marmoris; Poculum ex auro factum, Cic.*

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where, or in which.* 2. The place *whither, or to which.* 3. The place *whence, or from which.* 4. The place *by or through which.*

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place, in the ablative.

But these cases will be more exactly ascertained by reducing the circumstances of place to particular questions.

1. The Place WHERE.

L. When the question is made by *Ubi? Where?* the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

*Vixit Romæ,
Mortuus est Londini,*

He lived at Rome.
He died at London.

So *Romæ nutriti mibi contigit atque doceri*, Hor. Ep. 2, 2, 41. *Is habitat Miletî*, Ter. Ad. 4, 5, 20. *Dionysius tyrannus, Syracusis expulsus, Corinthi pueros docebat*, Cic. Tusc. 3, 12.

¶ But if the name of a town be of the third declension or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

*Habitat Carthagine,
Studuit Parisiis,*

He dwells at Carthage.
He studied at Paris.

So *Alexander paucis post diebus Babylone mortuus est*, Cic. Div. 1, 23. *Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis*, Id. Att. 9, 15. *Quoniam Delphis oracula cessant*, Juvenal, 6, 554.

Obs. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood or near it, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, *At* or near Troy.

Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed: thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebris*: but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*: or *in Româ celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner, we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi*? Thus, *At ego aio hoc fieri in Græcia, et Carthagini*, Plaut. Cas. Prol. 71. *Fuere Sicyoni jamdiu Dionysia*, the feasts of Bacchus were sometime ago celebrated at Sicyon, Id. Cist. 1, 3, 8. *cf Pl. 4, 2, 38. Neglectum Ancuri præsidium*, Liv. 5, 8. *Convento Antonio Tiburi*, having met with Anthony at Tibur, Cic. Att. 16, 3. *Nulla Lacedæmoni tam est nobilis vidua, quæ non ad scenam eat mercede conducta*, Nep. Præf. *Tiburi genitus*, Suet. Cal. 8. *add. Id. Claud. 34.—1.* Sometimes, though more rarely, names of towns in the first and second declension are found in the ablative; as, *Rex Tyro decedit*, for *Tyri*, Justin. 18, 4. *Eâtem die, qua in Italiâ pugnatum est, et Corintho, et Athenis, et Lacedæmone nunciata est victoria*, Id. 20, 3 f. *add. Vitruv. 3, 2, 7 Præf. 8, 3.*

2. The Place WHITHER.

LI. When the question is made by *Quo*? *Whither*? the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

*Venit Romam,
Profectus est Athenas,*

He came to Rome.
He went to Athens.

So *Regulus Carthaginem rediit*, Cic. Off. 3, 27. *Inde Capuam fecit iter*, Liv. 23, 2. *Epistolæ Catinam, Tauromenium, Syracusas commodius mittere potero*, Cic. Att. 16, 11.

Obs. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam*, Horat. Od. 4, 4, 69.

Obs. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciatum*, the report was carried to Rome, Cic. Fam. 11, 12. *Hæc nunciant domum Albani*, Liv. 1, 23. *Messanam literas dedit*, Cic. Verr. 1, 10. *Messique, qui Carthaginem gaudium ingens nunciarent*, Liv. 29, 32. *Quæ postquam Sumum sunt nunciata*, Id. 37, 18.

3. The Place WHENCE.

LII. When the question is made by *Unde?* Whence? or *Qua?* By or through what place? the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit Corintho,
Laodicæa iter faciebat,

He departed from Corinth.
He went through Laodicæa.

So *accepi Romam fasciculum literarum*, Cic. Att. 5, 17. *Servium discessisse Athenis molestè t. l.*, Id. Fam. 6, 4. — *quæsitis Sumo, Ilio, Erythris, per Africam etiam a Sicilia, et Italicas colonias, carminibus Sibyllæ*, the Sibylline vers's being searched for through or at Samos &c. Tacit. An. 6, 12.

When motion by or through a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used; as, *cum iter per Thebas faceret*, Nep. 16, 1. *Proconsul provinciam Baticam per Ticinum est petiturus*, Plin. ep. 7, 16, 3. cf. Liv. 31, 22.

LIII. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

Manet domi,
Domum revertitur,
Domo accessitus sum,
Vivit rure, or more frequently *ruri,*
Rediit rure,
Abiit rus,

He stays at home.
He returns home.
I am called from home.
He lives in the country.
He is returned from the country.
He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. *Humi, militiae,* and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

Domi et militiae, or *belli*, At home and abroad: *Unà semper militiae et domi fuimus*, Ter. Ad. 3, 4, 49. *qui legitis flores, et humi nascentia fraga*, and strawberries growing on the ground, Virg. E. 3, 92. *Facet bumi*, He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, *In domo paternâ*, not *domi paternæ*; So, *Ad domum paternam*: *Ex domo paternâ* Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, regius,* and *alienus*; as, *Domi mea vixit*, Cic. Tusc. 5, 39. 4. *Apud cum sic fui, tanquam domi mea*, Cic. Fam. 13, 63. *Nonne maris sine periculo domi tuæ esse, quàm cum periculo alienæ*, ib. 4, 7. *Me domo meâ expulsiis*, Cn. Pompeium domum suam compulsiis, Cic. Pis. 7. *Alius alium domos suas invitant*, Sall. Jug. 66. add. Liv. 2, 7. *Aurum atque argentum, et alia, quæ prima ducuntur, domum regiæ*

glam comportant, Sall. Jug. 76.—* *RUS* and *rure* in the sing. joined with an adj. are found without a preposition; as, *appropinquante vespere, equum conscendit, et rus urbanum contendit*, sc. *ad*. Justin. 31, 2. *quartumque apud lapidem suburbano rure subsisterat*, Tac. Ann. 15, 60.—but never *rura* in the plural; as, *ubi dilapsi domos, et in rura vestra eritis*, Liv. 39, 16.

Obf. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo, or, in domo Caesaris*, Cic. Att. 1, 12. & 2, 7.

LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

When the question is made by

Ubi? *Natus in Italia, in Latio, in urbe, &c.*

Quo? *Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in, or ad urbem, &c.*

Unde? *Rediit ex Italia, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.*

Quo? *Transit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &c.*

Obf. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns; as, *In Roma* for *Romæ*; *ad Romam, ex Româ, &c.*

PETO always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition; as *Ægyptum petere decrevit*, he resolved to go to Egypt, Curt. 4, 1, 27. *ab Europa petis Asiam*, Id. 7, 8, 13. 1. *Grues loca calidiora petentes maria transmittunt*, Cic. N. D. 2, 49.

Obf. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition like names of towns; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est*, Cæf. B. C. 3, 106. *Creta jussit consider: Apollo*, Virg. A. 3, 162. *Non Libyæ*, for *in Libyæ*; *non ante Tyro*, for *Tyri*, Id. Æn. iv. 36. *Venit Sardiniam*, Cic. Manil. 12. *Romæ, Numidiæque facinora ejus memorat*, for *et in Numidiâ*, Sall. Jug. 33.

4. MEASURE and DISTANCE.

LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,
Urbs distat triginta millia, vel
triginta millibus passuum,
Iter, vel itinere unus diei,

The wall is ten feet high.

The city is thirty miles distant;

One day's journey.

Obf. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus, and altus: Patet, porrigitur, eminent, &c.* The names of measure are *pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, a span, an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative

ative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *Eo, curro, absum, dislo, &c.* The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denum pedum*, *sc. denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative; or the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe confedit*, or *ad sex millia passuum*, Cæf. *Ad quintum milliarium v. milliare confedit*, Cic. *Sepultus est ad quintum lapidem*, Nep. 25, 22.

Obs. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative; as,

Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Toto vertice supra est, Virg. A. 7, 784. *Superat capite et cervicibus altis*, ib. 2, 219. *Britannia longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliariis superat.*

TIME.

VI. When the question is made by *Quando?* When? time is put in the ablative; as,

Venit hora tertia, He came at the third hour.

¶ When the question is made by *Quamdiu?* How long? time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative; as,

Mansit paucos dies, He staid a few days.
Sex mensibus absuit, He was away six months.

* *Or thus,* Time when is put in the ablative, time how long is put in the accusative.

Obs. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obs. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In presentia*, or *in presenti*, *scil. tempore*; *in vel ad presens*; *Per decem annos*; *Surgunt de nocte*; *ad horam destinatum*; *Intra annum*; *Per idem tempus*, *ad Kalendas soluturos ait*, Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, istud, etatis, tempori,* *hora,* &c. for *hæc etate*, *hoc tempore*, &c. And *ante* or some other word; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti*, *sc. ante*. *Siculi quotannis tributa conferunt*, *sc. tot annis, quot vel quotquot sunt*, Cic. Verr. 2, 53. *Prope diem*, *sc. ad*, soon; *Oppidum paucis diebus, quibus eò ventum est, expugnatum*,

pugnatum, sc. post eos dies, Cæf. B. G. 3, 23. Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accipi tuas literas, for die tertio ante, Cic. Fam. 4, 2. Qui dies futurus esset in ante diem octavarum Kalendas Novembris, Id. Cat. 1, 3. Ex ante diem quintum Kal. Octob. Liv. 45, 2. Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt, sc. quam pæv, Cic. Flacc. 26. We find, Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque sc. Gato, for septemdecim annos natu, seventeen years old, Nep. 24, 1.

Obf. 3. The adverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without preposition; as, *factum est ABHINC biennium*, It was done two years ago Plaut. Bacch. 3, 2, 4. *Horum pater abhinc duo et viginti annos est mortuus* Cic. Verr. 2, 9. *Quo tempore? abhinc annis quatuor*, Id. Q. Rosc. 13. *Qui abhinc sexaginta annis occisus foret*, Plaut. Most. 2, 2, 63.—So likewise *post* and *ante*; as, *Paucos ante mensis, i. e. ante id tempus*, a few months before, Suet. Cæf. 81. *Paucas post horas*, a few hours after, Liv. 31, 24.—*Perpaucis ante diebus dederam Q. Mucio literas ad te*, Cic. Fam. 4, 9. *Per lunia recuperata est multis post annis, sc. in*, Id. Flacc. 3.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *period*.

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects, and one attribute, or several attributes, and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes: That is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgement or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must therefore be in every sentence or period as many propositions, as there are verbs of a finite mood.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as

Happy is the man who loveth religion and practiseth virtue.

The CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Vir qui,</i>	The man who.	<i>Viri qui.</i>
<i>Femina quæ,</i>	The woman who.	<i>Femina quæ.</i>
<i>Neg. tium quod,</i>	The thing which.	<i>Negotia quæ.</i>
<i>Ego qui scribo,</i>	I who write.	<i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>
<i>Tu qui scribis,</i>	Thou who writest.	<i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>
<i>Vir qui scribit,</i>	The man who writes.	<i>Viri qui scribunt.</i>
<i>Mulier quæ scribit,</i>	The woman who writes.	<i>Mulieres quæ scribunt.</i>
<i>Animal quod currit,</i>	The animal which runs.	<i>Animalia quæ currunt.</i>
<i>Vir quem vidi,</i>	The man whom I saw.	<i>Viri quos vidi.</i>
<i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>	The woman whom I saw.	<i>Mulieres quas vidi.</i>
<i>Animal quod vidi.</i>	The animal which I saw.	<i>Animalia quæ vidi.</i>
<i>Vir cui paret,</i>	The man whom he obeys.	<i>Viri quibus paret.</i>
<i>Vir cui est similis,</i>	The man to whom he is like.	<i>Viri quibus est similis.</i>
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	The man by whom.	<i>Viri a quibus.</i>
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	The woman to whom.	<i>Mulieres ad quas.</i>
<i>Vir cujus opus est,</i>	The man whose work it is.	<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>
<i>Vir quem misæror,</i>	} The man whom I pity.	
<i>cujus misereor vel miseresco,</i>		
<i>cujus me miseret,</i>		
<i>cujus vel cujus interest, &c.</i>		whose interest it is, &c.
<i>Liber, quo utor, the book which I use;</i>		<i>libri, quibus utor.</i>
<i>Culpæ, cujus nos pænitet, the fault of which we repent; Culpæ quarum nos pænitet &c.</i>		

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb :

But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, use to govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax; and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

Obs. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

Vir qui (vir) legit; vir, quem (virum) amo: Sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quisque nârit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat,* Cic. Tusc. 1, 18. *Eunuchus, quem dedisti nobis, quasi turbas dedit,* sc. *Eunuchus,* Ter. Eun. 4, 3, 11. Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itinæribus domo exire possent,* Cæf. B. G. 1, 6. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos hoc genus minime juvat, for sunt homines, quos homines, &c.* Hor. Sat. 1, 4, 24.

Obs. 2. When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

Vultus quem dixere chaos, Ovid. M. 1, 6. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur*, Sall. Cat. 55. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem*, Cic. Leg. 1, 7. *Cogito id quod res est*, Ter. Ad. 2, 1, 52. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, *Pompeius se affixit, quod mihi est summo dolori*, scil. *Pompeium se affligere*, Cic. Att. 2, 19. *Concilia, catusque hominum jure sociati, quae civitates appellantur*, Cic. Somn. Scip. c. 3. *Civices, quae Lautumia vocantur*, Id. Verr. 5, 55. *Genus hominum, quod Helotes vocatur*, Nep. 4, 3.—Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied; as, *Scelus qui*, for *sceleratus*, Ter. And. 3, 5, 1. *Abundantia eorum rerum, quae mortales prima putant*, scil. *negotia*, Sall. Jug. 41. *Vel virtus tua me, vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitia puto, facit ut te moncam*, scil. *negotium*, Ter. Haut. 1, 1, 4. *In omni Africa, qui agebant*; for *in omnibus Africa*, Sallust Jug. 89. *Non diffidentia futuri, quae imperavisset*, for *quod*, Ib. 100. *Antea conjuravere pauci contra rempub. de qua sc. conjuratione*, Id. Cat. 18, 3.

Obf. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio*, scarcely *facit*.

In English it sometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man, who make, or makes*. But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence: thus it is proper to say, "I am the man, who takes care of your interest," but if I add, "at the expence of my own," it will be improper. It ought either to be, "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we may say, "I thank you, who gave, who did love, &c." But it is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave; who did love:" it should be, "who gavest, who didst love." In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obf. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem genatum tali ingenio praeditum, Ter. And. 1, 1, 7. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carnis pluit; quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur*; i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem*, &c. Liv. 3, 10. *Si tempus est ullum jure hominis necandi, quae multa sunt*, scil. *tempora*, Cic. Mil. 4.

Obf. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit: Tyrii tenuere coloni*, scil. *quam* or *eam*, Virg. A. 1, 1, cf. v. 159. & 530. Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Buccebus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus aduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerant, Romanos invidunt; sed quique in priore pugna non adfuerant*, Sall. Jug. 101.—In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, *the letter I wrote*, for *the letter which I wrote*; *the man I love*, for *the man whom*. But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obf. 6.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuisti*, for *quæ consuisti agere*, or *quorum aliquid agere consuisti*, Cic. Fam. 5, 14. So *rap- tim quibus quisque poterat elatis, exhibant*, Liv. 1, 29. cf. 4, 69. *Restitue in quem me accepisti locum*, for *in locum, in quo*, Ter. And. iv. 1. 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is*, and *idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui*; as, *Liber ejus*, His or her book; *Vita eorum*, Their life, when applied to men; *Vita earum*, Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantus, quotus, &c.* are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse fororum*, Ovid. M. 2, 13. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitudo, quantam urbs capere potest*: and are often applied to different substantives; as, *Quales sunt summi civitatis viri, talis est civitas*, Cic. Leg. 3, 14.

Obs. 9. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons; as, *Our Father which art in heaven*: and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*; as, *This is what he wanted*; that is, *the thing which he wanted*.

Obs. 10. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita esset*, When that was so; not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse?* Who do they say that I am? not whom. *Quem dicunt adventare?* Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read: *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you (*actually or in fact*) have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

Qui vocare? Geta, sc. vocor. Quid queris? Librum, sc. quero. Quotâ horâ venisti? Sextâ. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber? Meus, vel mei. Quanti emptus est? Decem assibus. Damna usne es furti? Imo alio crimine.* Often the answer is made by other parts of

speech than nouns; as, *Quid agitur? Statur, sc. a me, a nobis. Quis fecit? Nescio: Aiunt Petrum fecisse. Quomodo vales? Bene, male. Scripsistine? Scripsi, ita, etiam, immo, &c. An vidisti? Non vidi, non, minime, &c. Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? Factum. Et eâ est indutus? Factum, Ter. Eun. 4, 4, 39. Most of the rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. The conjunctions *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel*, and some others, couple like cases and moods; as,

*Honora patrem et matrem,
Nec legit nec scribit,*

Honour father and mother.
He neither reads nor writes.

Obf. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise, *quàm, nisi, præterquam, an*; and also adverbs of likeness, as, *ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut, &c.* as,

Nullum præmium a vobis postulo, præterquam hujus dii memoriam, Cic. Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur, Id.

Obf. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and moods may be coupled together;

Interest mea et reipublica, Cic. Fam. 2, 19. C. nstitit esse et pluris; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epiro, Cic. Att. 5, 18. Deius cum se devoveret, et equo admissa in mediam aciem irruerat, Cic. Fin. 2, 19. Vir magni ingenii summæque industriâ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis, Sall. Tecum habita, & nôris, quam sit tibi curta supellix, Perſ. 4 f.

Obf. 3. When *et, aut, vel, sive, or nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise*; *aut* or *vel*, by *either*; the first *sive*, by *whether*; and the first *nec*, by *neither*; as,

Et legit, et scribit: So tum legit, tum scribit; or cum legit, tum scribit. He both reads and writes; Sive legit, sive scribit, Whether he reads or writes: Jacere quâ vera, quâ falsa; Incepere quâ consules ipsos, quâ exercitum, to upbraid both the consuls and the army, Liv. 2, 45.

LIX. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as, *et, ac, atque, &c.*) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti, Peter and John who are learned.

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, *Cic. Fam. 14, 5*.

So *egregiam vixit laudem et spolia ampla refertis tuque puerque tuus*, *Virg. A. 4, 93*. *Errastis, Rulle, vehementer et tu, et nonnulli collega tui*, *Cic. Rull. 1, 7*.—Sometimes the verb agrees in person with the nearest substantive; as, *Mibi magna cura est, ut tu ipse, tuique omnes, scire possint, me tibi esse amicissimum*, *Cic. Fam. 3, 5*.—In English the person speaking usually puts himself last; thus, *You and I read*; *Cicero and I are well*; but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first; thus, *Ego et tu legimus*; not *tu et ego*. This however is not always the case; as, *Pater, ego, fratresque mei,—terrâ marique pro vobis arma tulimus*, *Liv. 37, 53*. ad fin.

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural agrees with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt*, *Ter. Eun. 3, 3, 11*. *Mulcibëris capti Marsque Venusque dolis*, *Ovid. art. am. 2, 562*. But this rule is applicable only to living things.

So also if one or more of the substantives be plural; as, *Domus, uxor, liberi inventi, invito patre*, *Ter. And. 3, 3, 20*. *Decem ingenui, decem virgines, patrimi omnes matrimique, ad id sacrificium addibiti*, *Liv. 37, 3*. *Add. Virg. A. 7, 574*.—The person is sometimes implied; as, *Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c. Propter summam doctioris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c.* *Cic. Off. 1, 1*. Where *Athena & urbs* are put for the learned men of Athens. So in substantives; as, *Ad Ptolemaum Cleopatramque reges legati missi*, i. e. the king and queen, *Liv. 27, 4*. *Soceri tibi Marsque Venusque contigerant*, for *focer et focrus*, *Ov. Met. 3, 130*. *Marem feminamque filios dicimus*, *Quinctilian, 9, 3, 63*. *Add. Tac. Ann. 11, 38, 12, 4*.

Obs. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural is usually put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt*, *Cat. 20, 14*.

So *etiam atque divitiæ, quæ prima mortales putant*, *ib. 39*. *Add. Id. Jug. 38*. *Favere pietati fidemque deos, per quæ populus Romanus ad tantum fastigii venerit*, *Liv. 44, 1*. *Add. Id. 26, 21*. *Cic. Fam. 7, 20*. *Fin. 5, 12*. *N. D. 3, 24*.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to

some certain class under which they may be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*; thus, *serpens, sitis, ardor, arena, dulcia virtuti*, Lucan, 9, 402. *Crede qua jubeant, locus est, et nomen, et index*, Ov. Art. 3, 719. *Jura, fidem, superos, unâ calcata ruinâ*, Stat. Achil. 1, 403. *Deleabatur (C. Duilius) crebro funali et tibicine, quæ sibi nullo exemplo privatus sumpserat*, Cic. Senect. 13. *Leporem et gallinam, et anserem gustare fas non putant (Britanni:) hæc (animalia) tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causâ*, Cæf. B. G. 5, 12. *So mollia sunt loligo, sepia, polypus, et cetera ejus generis*, Plin. 9, 28 f. 44.—*Atque hæc sc. munera, (nempe Eunuchum et ancillam) qui misit*, &c. Ter. Eun. 3, 2, 27. *Adl. Sil. 2, 689.*— Sometimes in inanimate things, the adjective or participle plural agrees in gender with the substantives singular; as, *grammaticæ quondam et musicæ junctæ fuerunt*. Quinctil. 1, 10, 17. *Miseriordia in eo (Philippo) ac perfidia pari jure dilecta*, Justin. 9, 8.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit, Cic. Att. 4, 17. *So. iis et rege recepto*, Virg. A. 1, 553, f. 583. *Et ego in culpa sum, et tu*, Both I am in the fault, and you; or, *Et ego et tu et in culpa*, Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmina defunt*; or, *nihil hic deest, nisi carmina*, Virg. E. 8, 67. *Omnia, quibus turbari solita erat civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum*; *Duo millia et quadringenti cæsi*, Liv. This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est*, Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men, Cic. Sen. 19. *Quibus ipse meique ante Laræm proprium vestior*, for *vestimur*, Horat. S. 2, 6, 65.

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Virg. 1, 292. The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *Dum atas, metus, magister prohibebant*, Ter. And. 1, 1, 27. *Frons, oculi, vultus sæpe mentiuntur*, Cic.

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*, or *Zengma*.

LX. The conjunctions *ut, quò, licet, ne, utinam*, and *dummodo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mood; as,

<i>Lego ut discam,</i>	I read that I may learn.
<i>Utinam superes,</i>	I wish you were wile.

Obs. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mood.

Whether

Whether they be adjectives; as, *quantus, qualis, quotus, quotuplex, uter*; Pronouns, as, *quis & cujus*; Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quò, unde, qua, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdiudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, num, utrum, quomodo, qui, ut, quàm, quantoscùmque*; or Conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anne, annon*: Thus, *Quis est? Who is it? Nescio quis sit*; I do not know who it is. *An venturus est? Nescio, dubito, an venturus sit. Viden' ut altà stet nive candidum Soracile?* Hor. Od. 1, 9, 1. But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ago*, Plaut. Bacch. 1, 2, 45. *Haud scio an amat*, Ter. Adel. 4, 5, 3. *Vide avaritia quid facit*, Id. Phor. 2, 3, 11. *Vidis quam turpe est*, Cic. Att. 10, 12.

¶ In like manner the relative *QUI* in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Cic. Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTE*; *Nique Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui sequeretur*, &c. Sall. Cat. 57. But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the Indicative. So *Est qui, sunt qui, est quando, v. ubi*, &c. are joined with the indicative or subjunctive.

NOTE, *Haud scio an rectè dixerim*, is the same with *dico, affirmo*, Cic. Fin. 5, 3. Or. 60 & 62. 2, 17. Acad. 4, 25. Leg. 1, 6.

So in English, *if, though, unless, except, whatever, whether, or*; also *so, before, ere, till, &c.* have after them the subjunctive mood; as, *If thou let this man go; If thou be the Son of God; Although my house be not so; Though he slay me; Though he fall, &c. Unless he wash his feet; I will not let thee go, except thou bless me; Except it were given from above; Whether it were I or they; Whosoever he be; Whatever be our fate, &c.* So likewise *that*, expressing the motive or end; *lest*, and *that* annexed to a command preceding; and *if* with *but* following it; as, *Let him that standeth take heed lest he fall; Beware that thou bring not my son thither; If he do but touch the hills, they shall smoke.*

The nominative case following the verb sometimes supplies the place of *if, or though*; as, "Had he done this, he had escaped," i. e. if he had done this: "Charm he never so wisely," or rather, ever so wisely, i. e. *how wisely soever*, for, *though* he charm, &c.

Obs. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but when a more absolute or determinate sense is expressed, with the indicative mood; as, *If he is to do it; Although he was rich, &c.*

Obs. 3. *ETSI*, *FAMETSI*, and *TAMENETSI*, *QUANQUAM*, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative; but elsewhere, they also take the subjunctive: *ETIAMSI* and *QUAMVIS* commonly have the subjunctive, and *UT*, although, always has it; as, *Ut quaras, non reperies*, Cic. *QUONIAM*, *QUANDO*, *QUANDOQUIDEM*, are usually construed with the indicative; *SI*, *SIN*, *NE*, *NISI*, *SIQUEIDEM*; *QUOD*, and *QUIA*, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. *DUM*, for *dummōdo*, provided, has always the subjunctive; as, *Oderint dum metuant*, Cic. Off. 1, 28. And *QUIPPE*, for *nam*, always the indic.; as, *Quippe vector satis*, Virg. A. 1, 39.

Obs. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former: thus, when *etsi*, *tametsi*, or *quamvis*, though or although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet, or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam—quam*; *Adē* or *ita—ut*: in English, *As.—as* or *so*; as, *Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *prius* or *ante,—quam*. In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo*, *nolo*, *malō*, *rogo*, *precor*, *cenſco*, *ſuadeo*, *licet*, *oportet*, *neceſſe eſt*, and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine*, *fac*, or *facio*; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem*; *Nolo mentiare*; *Fac cogites*, Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave*; as, *Cave facias*, Cic. *Peſt* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Die octavo, quam creatus erat*, Liv. iv. 47. ſcil. *poſt*. And ſo in English, *See you do it*; *I beg you would come to me*, ſc. *that*.

Obs. 6. *Ut* and *quod* are thus diſtinguiſhed: *ut* denotes the final cauſe, and is commonly uſed with regard to ſomething future; *quod* marks the efficient or impulſive cauſe, and is generally uſed concerning the event or thing done; as, *Lego ut diſcam*, I read that I may learn; *Suadeo quod legi*, I am glad that or becauſe I have read. *Ut* is likewise uſed after theſe intensive words, as they are called, *Adē*, *ita*, *ſic*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *tot*, &c.

Obs. 7. After the verbs *timeo*, *vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative ſenſe for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative ſenſe; as,

Timeo ne faciat, I fear he will do it; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not do it. *Id paves, ne ducas tu illum, tu autem ut ducas*, Ter. And. 2, 2, 12.

Ut sis vitalis, metuo, Hor. Sat. 2, 1, 60. *Timeo ut frater vivat*, will not;—*ne frater moriatur*, will. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative; as,

Dulcior melle, sweeter than honey. *Prestantior auro*, better than gold.

So *visius est argentum auro, virtutibus aurum*, Hor. Epist. 1, 1, 52. *Nervine Galatæa, thymo mihi dulcior Hyblæ, candidior cygnis, bederâ formosior albâ*, Virg. E. 7. 37.—

Obs. 1. The sign of the ablative in English is *than*. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *O luce magis dilecta sorori*, Virg. A. 4, 31.

So *purâque magis pellucida gemmâ*, sc. *cornua*, Ov. M. 2, 856.—In like manner MINUS; as, *Hoc nemo fuit minus ineptus*, Ter. Eun. 2, 1, 20. *Novella quoque vetustis minus odorata*, Plin. 21, 7 l. 18.—Sometimes the comparative, and the positive with *magis*, occur in the same sentence; *Quid magis est durum saxo, quid mollius undâ*, Ovid Art. 1. 475. *Itaque et vena muscis odoratiora, et Silvestria magis omnia sativis*, Plin. *Ibid.*—* The ablative after comparatives is governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; *fortior præ ceteris*, Apulci. Met. 8. p. 252.—The comparative is construed also with *ante* and *præter*; as, *Pygmalion, scelere ante alios immanior omnes*, Virg. A. 1, 347. *Multo præter ceteras altiorem crucem statui jussit*, Suet. Galb. 9.—* We sometimes find a comparison made by these prepositions joined with the positive; as, *Non tu quidem vacuus molestus, sed beatus præ nobis*, Cic. Fam. 4, 4. *Formâque ante omnes pulcher Julius*, Virg. A. 5, 570. *Ut Argonautas præter omnes candidum Medæa mirata est duces*, Hor. Epod. 3, 9.

Obs. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quàm*, and then instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

Dulcior quam mel, scil. *est*. *Amo te magis quam illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quàm amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quam ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quàm ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quam illo*, sc. *ab*. So *melior tutiorque est certa pax quàm sperata victoria*, Liv. 30, 30. *Ego hominem callidiorum vidi neminem quàm Phormionem*, Ter. Phor. 4, 2, 1.

Obs. 3. The conjunction *quàm* is often elegantly suppressed after *ampliùs* and *plùs*; as,

Vulnerantur

Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti, Cæf. fcil. quam. Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows, Ter. Ad. 2, 1, 46. Castra ab urbe haud plus quinque millia passuum locant, sc. quam, Liv. Capta plus quinque millia hominum, Liv. 40, 33. Romani sociique paulo plus sexcenti ceciderunt, Liv. 39, 31. Animalibus, quibus plus quaterni pedes, sanguis nullus, Plin. 11, 38. Paulo plus viginti millium alius exercitus fuit, Liv. 10, 38. Ut decem haud amplius dierum frumentum in borreis fuerit, Tac. H. 4, 52. Cum non amplius octingentos equites haberent, Cæf. B. G. 4, 12. Capta quatuor millia et octingenti cum equis plus quingentis, Liv. 40, 32. Add. 24, 17.

Quàm is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

Triumphos clarior quàm gratior, Liv. 5, 23. Or the prep. pro is added; as, Prælium atrocius, quàm pro numero pugnantium editur, Liv. 21, 19.

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opinione, spe, æquo, justo, dicto*; as,

*Credibili, opinione major, Cic. Brut. 1. Credibili fortior, Ovid. Fast. iii. 612. Gravius æquo, Sall. Cat. 51, 11. Dicto citius, Virg. A. 1, 142. Majora credibili tulimus, Liv. They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivebat, sc. justo, too freely, Nepos, 2, 1.**

Nihil is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli*; as,

*Nihil vidi quidquam latius, for neminem, Ter. Ad. 3, 3, 12. Crasso nihil perfectius, Cic. Brut. 38. Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum, Claudian. Eutrop. 1, 181. Intolerabilius nihil est quàm femina dives, Juv. 6, 458. So quid nobis laboriosius, for quis, &c. Cic. Mil. 2. We say, *inferior patre nullâ re, or quàm pater. The comparative is sometimes repeated or joined with an adverb; as, Magis magisque, plus plusque, minus minusque, carior coriorque; Quotidie plus, indies magis, semper candidior candidiorque, &c.**

Obs. 4. In English, the relative *who* after *than* is always put in the accusative case; as, He is a man, *than whom* there is none better; but here if we substitute a pronoun in place of the relative, the pronoun must be put in the nominative; as, There is none better than *he*; not, than *him*. In like manner, it is improper to say, He is better than *me*, than *us*, than *her*, than *them*, &c. It should be, He is better than *I*, than *we*, than *she*, than *they*, &c. the auxiliary verb being understood to each of them.

Obs. 5. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed in English by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quàm ego, He is as learned as I. Animus erga te idem est ac fuit. Ac and atque are sometimes, though more rarely, used.*

used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc*, Ter. And. 4, 2, 15.

Obs. 6. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (*or more shortly*, the difference of measure is put in the ablative); as,

Est decem digitis altior quàm frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. *Altero tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, He is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. *Sesquipede minor*, a foot and a half less; *Sesquipede est quàm tu longior*, Plaut. Trin. 4, 2, 58. *Altero tanto*, aut *sesquimajor*, as great again, or a half greater, Cic. Or. 56. *Ter tanto peior est*; *Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quàm prius*, Plaut. *Quinquies tanto amplius, quàm quantum licitum sit civitatibus imperavit*, five times more, Cic. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio, &c.*; thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*, The better, the happier. *Quo difficilius, hoc pœclarius*, Cic. Off. I, 19. *Quanto superiores sumus, tanto nos geramus summissius*, lb. c. 26. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam cum laboremus*, Sall. *Multoque id maximum fuit*, Liv.

The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Substantive with a participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ, { The sun rising, or while the sun rises,
darkness flies away,
Opere peractò, ludemus, { Our work being finished, or when our
work is finished, we will play.

So, *Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus est locus*, Cic. Sen. 12. *Nihil amicitia præstabilius est, excepta virtute; Oppressâ libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speremus amplius; Nobilium vitâ victuque mutato, mores mutari civitatum puto*, Cic. Leg. 3, 14. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerebantur, pugnam inituris; et dictatore arcem Romanam respiciente, ut ab auribus, simul aves vite admisissent, ex composito tolleretur signum*, Liv. 4, 18. *Hellice, depositis clypeo paulisper et basâ, Mæri, ades*, Ovid. Fast. iii. 1.

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb. or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place: the ablative absolute

is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milites, hostibus victis, redierunt*, The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered*; 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered*; 3. *By conquering the enemy*; 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.*

Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus hac confedit*, never *bis locutis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romani, adepti libertatem, floruerunt*; or *Romani, libertate adepti, floruerunt*. But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore find them rarely used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce, scilicet existente*, Cæsar being general, or under the conduct of Cæsar: *His consulibus, scilicet existentibus*, in their consulship: *Saturno rege*, in the reign of Saturn, *Juv. 6, 1*. *Invitâ Minervâ, i. e. adversante, et repugnante naturâ*, *Cic. Off. 1, 31*. *Magistrâ ac duce naturâ; vivis fratribus; te hortatore; Cæsare impulsore, &c.* Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent, i. e. cum nondum compertum esset*, *Liv. 31, 39*. *Tum demum palam facto, sc. negotio*, *Id. Excepto, quod non simul esses, cætera lætus*, *Hor. ep. 1, 10, 50*. *Parto quod avebas*, *Id. S. 1, 1, 94*. In such examples *negotium* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell, *Ovid*.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis presente*, *Plaut. Amph. 2, 2, 194*. *Absente nobis*, *Ter. Eun. 4, 3, 7*. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *Me duce, ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*, *Ovid. Amor. ii. 12, 12*. *Lætos fecit, se consule, fastos*, *Lucan. v. 384*. *Populo spectante, fieri credam, quicquid, me conscio, faciam*, *Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20*. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs.

Obs. 5. The ablative called absolute is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis bene juvantibus arma capite*, Liv. 21, 43: The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciosâ libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas naturæ accusatur*, Sallust. Jug. 1.

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnabat*, Cic. Tusc. 1, 16. *Opere peractò*, is the same with *Post opus peractum* or *Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently on the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

APPENDIX to SYNTAX.

I. Various Signification and Construction of VERBS.

[The verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

FIRST CONJUGATION.

A SPIRARE ad gloriam & laudem, *to aim at*; in curiam, *to desire to be admitted*, Cic.; equis Achillis, *to wish for*; labori ejus, *to favour*; amorem dictis, *sc. ei, to infuse*, Virg.

DESPERARE sibi, *de se*; salutem, *saluti, de salute, to despair of*.

LEGARE aliquem ad alium, *to send as an ambassador*; aliquem sibi, *to make his lieutenant*; pecuniam alicui, *i. e. testamento relinquere*. *N. B.* Publice legantur homines; qui inde legati dicuntur: privatim allegantur; unde allegati.

DELEGARE res alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay*; laborem alteri, *to lay upon*; aliquid ad aliquem, *i. e. in eum transferre*, Cic.

LEVARE metum ejus & ei, *eum metu, to ease*.

MUTARE locum, solum, *to be banished*; aliquid aliquâ re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange*; vestem, *i. e. sordidam togam induere*, Liv. vestem cum aliquo, Ter. fidem, *to break faith, to change sides*.

OBNUNCIARE comitiis vel concilio, *i. e. comitia auspiciis impedire, to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words*, ALIODIE: Consuli v. Magistratui; *i. e. prohibere ne cum populo agat*, Cic. (vid. R. A. p. 89)

PRONUNCIARE pecuniam pro reo, *to promise*; aliquid edicto, *to order*; sententias, *to sum up the opinions of the senators*, Cic. (A. 16.)

RENUNCIARE aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell*; consulem, *to declare, to name*; vitæ, amicitiam ei, *to give up*; muneri, hospitio, *to refuse*; repudium ei, *to divorce*.

OCCUPARE aliquem, *to seize*; se in aliquo negotio, *to be employed*; se ad negotium, Plaut. pecuniam alicui, v. apud aliquem grandi fœnore, *to give at interest*, Cic. occupat. facere bellum, transire in agrum hostium, *begins first, anticipates*, Liv. I, 30.

PRÆOCCUPARE saltum, portas Ciliciæ, *to seize before hand*, Nep.

PRÆJUDICARE aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial*. Cic.

ROGARE aliquem id, & de ea re; id ab eo; salutem, & pro salute, Cic. legem, *to propose*; benec, UTI ROGAS, dicere, *to pass it*: militem sacramento, *to administer the military oath*; Roget quis? *if any one should ask*. Comitia rogandis consulibus, *for electing*, Liv.

ABROGARE legem, *seldom legi, to disannul a law, to repeal, or to change in part*; multam, *to take off a fine*; imperium ei, *to take from*.

ADROGARE id sibi, *to claim*.

DEROGARE aliquid legi, v. de lege, *to repeal or take away some clause of a law*; lex derogatur, Cic. fidem ei, v. de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit*; ex æquitate; sibi, alicui, *to derogate or take from*.

EROGARE pecuniam, in classicis, in vestes, *to lay out money, &c.*

IRROGARE multam ei, *to impose.*

OBROGARE legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old.*

PROROGARE imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong*; diem ei ad solvendum, *to put off.*

SUBROGARE aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute*; legi, *to add a new clause, or to put one in place of another.*

SPECTARE orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards*; aliquem ex censu, animum alicujus ex suo, *to judge of.*

SUPERARE hostes, *to overcome*; montes, *to pass*; superat pars coepti, *sc. operis, remains*; Captæ superavimus tibi, *survived*, Virg.

TEMPERARE iras, ventos, *to moderate*; orbem, *to rule*; mihi, sibi, *to restrain, to forbear*; alicui, *to spare*; cœdibus, a lacrymis, *to abstain from.*

VACARE curâ, culpâ, morbo, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from*; animo, *sc. in, to be at ease*; philosophiâ, in v. ad rem, *to apply to*; vacat locus, *is empty*; si vacas, v. vacat tibi, *if you are at leisure.*

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge*; ab interitu, exercitum fame, *to free*; id sibi, & ad se, *to claim*; libertatem ejus, *to defend*; se in libertatem, *to set at liberty.*

DARE animam, *to die*; animos, *to encourage*; manus, *to yield*; manum ei, *to shake hands*, Plaut. jura, *to prescribe laws*; literas alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another*; terga, fugam, v. se in fugam, in pedes, *to flee or fly*; hostes in fugam, *to put to flight*; operam, *to endeavour*; operam philosophiæ, literis, patriæ, *to apply to*; operam honoribus, *to seek*, Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his request*, Ter.

gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, can- tus, ruinam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace, sing, fall, &c.* cognitores honestos, *to give good vouchers for one's character*, Cic. aliquid mutuam v. utendum, *to lend*; pecuniam fœnori, & collocare, *to place at interest*; se alicui ad docendum, Cic. multum suo ingenio, *to think much of*; se ad aliquid, *to apply to*; se auctoritati senatûs, *to yield*; fabulam, scrip- ta foras, *to publish*; Cic. effectum, *to perform*; senatum, *to give a bearing of the senate*; actionem, *to grant leave to prosecute*; præcipi- tem, *to tumble headlong*; aliquid paternum, *to act like one's father*; lectos faciendos, *to bespeak*, Ter. litem secundum aliquem, *to deter- mine a law-suit in favour of one*; aliquem exitio, morti, neci, le- tho, rarely lethum alicui, *to kill*; aliquid alicui dono v. muneri, *to make a present*; crimini, vitio, lau- di, *to accuse, blame, praise*; pœnas, *to suffer*; nomen militiæ, v. in militiam, *to list one's self to be a sol- dier*; se alicui, *to be familiar with*, Ter. Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me*, Id. aures, *to listen*; obli- vioni, *to forget*; civitatem ei, *to make one free of the City*; dicta, *to speak*; verba alicui, *to impose on, to cheat*; se in viam, *to enter on a journey*; viam ei, *to give place*; jus gratiæ, *to sacrifice justice to interest*; se turpiter, *to make a shabby appear- ance*; fundum, vel domum alicui, mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to*; Vitæque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu, Luer. servos in questionem, *to give up slaves to be tortured*; pri- mas, secundas, &c. (*sc. partes*) actioni, *to ascribe every thing to ac- tivity*, Cic. Dat ei hibere, Ter. comas diffundere ventis, *to let them blow loose*, Virg. Da mihi v. nobis,

tell us, Cic. Ut res dant se, as matters go; solertem dabo, I'll warrant him expert, Ter.

SATISDARE judicatum solvi, to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid, Cic.

STARĒ contra aliquem; ab, cum, v. pro aliquo, to side with; to be of the same party; iudicio ejus, to follow; in sententia; pacto, conditionibus, conventis, to stand to; to make good an agreement; re iudicatâ, to keep to what has been determined; stare v. constare animo, to be in his senses: Non stat per me, quo minus pecunia solvatur, It is not owing to me that, &c. multorum sanguine ea Pænis victoria stetit, cost, Liv. Mihi stat alere morbum desinere, I am resolved, Nep.

ADSTARE mensæ, to stand by; ad mensam, in conspectu.

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, to consist of; fecum, to be consistent with, Cic. liber constitit v. stetit mihi duobus assibus, cost me; non constat ei color, his colour comes and goes; auri ratio constat, the sum is right. Constat, imperf. It is evident, certain, or agreed on; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

EXTARE aquis, to be above, Ovid. ad memoriam posteritatis, to remain, Cic. sepulchra extant, Liv.

INTARE victis, to press on the vanquished; rectam viam, to be in

the right way; currum Marti, to make speedily, Virg.; instat factum, insists that it was done, Ter.

OBSTARE ei, to hinder.

PRESTARE multa, to perform; alicui, v. aliquem virtute, to excel; silentium ei, to give; auxilium, to grant, Juv. impensas, to defray; iter tutum, to procure; se incolumem, to preserve; se virum, i. e. præbere, exhibere; amorem, v. benevolentiam alicui, to shew; culpam v. damnum, i. e. in se transferre, to take on one's self; præstabo de me; cum facturum, I will be answerable. In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipi sunt, in periculum iudicii præstare debet, qui se nexu obligavit, In recovering, or in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial, Cic. N.B. Those things were called, Res mancipi, (contracted for mancipii, i. e. quas emptor manu caperet,) the property of which might be transferred from one Roman Citizen to another; as, houses, lands, slaves, &c.

Præstat, imperf. i. e. it is better; Præsto esse alicui, adv. to be present, to assist; Libri prostant venales, the books are exposed to sale.

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, to recline near; apud aliquem. Incubare ovis & ova, to sit upon; stratis & super strata.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Verbs in BEO.

HABERE spem, febriam, sinem, bonum exitum, tempus, consuetudinem, voluntatem notendi, opus in manibus, v. inter manus, to have; gratiam & gratum, to have a grateful sense of a favour; iudicium, to hold a trial; honorem ei, to honour; in oculis, to be fond of, Ter.: fidem alicui, to trust or be-

lieve; curam de v. pro eo; rationem alicujus, to pay regard to, to allow one to stand candidate for an office; rationem v. rem cum aliquo, to have business with; satis, to be satisfied; orationem, concionem ad populum, to make a speech; aliquem odio, in odium, to hate; ludibrio, to mock; in religioni, to
have

have a scruple about it: *So*, habere aliquid quæstui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. *se. sibi*; to reckon as gain, as an honour, &c. *se bene v. graviter*, to be well or ill; *se parcè & duriter*, to live, Ter. aliquid compertum, cognitum, persectum, exploratum, certum *v. pro certo*, to know for certain; aliquem contemptui, despiciatui, -um, *v. in despiciatum*, to despise; excusatum, to excuse; *susque deque*, to scorn, to slight; *Ut res se habet, standi, is*; rebus ita se habentibus, *in this state of affairs*; *Hæc habeo, v. habui dicere de*, &c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid fiam factururus, Cic. *Habe tibi tuas res, a form of divorce.* (A. 469.)

ADHIBERE diligentiam; celeritatem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, to use; in convivium *v. consilium*, to admit; remedium vulneri, curationem morbo, to apply; vinum ægrotis, to give; aures versibus, to bear with taste; cukum & preces diis, to offer, Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, to cause trouble.

JUBERE legem, to vote for, to pass; regem, to skuse; aliquem salvere, to wish one health: esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere iussit, divorced, Cic.

CEO, DEO, and LEO.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hac re. Doctus, *adj.* utriusque lingua; Latinis & Græcis literis; Latinè & Græcè; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid; vinum aquâ. Plin. cuncta sanguine, Tacit. sacra profanis, pacem duello, Hor. humane divinis, Liv.

VIDERE rem *v. de re*; sibi, de isthoc, to take care of, Ter. plus, to be more wise, Cic. De hoc tu videris, consider, be unfavorable for, Cic. Videor videre, *metbinks I see*; visus sum audire, *metbought I heard*; mihi visus est dicere, *be*

seemd; Quid tibi videtur? *What think you?* Si tibi videtur, *if you please*; videtur fecisse; *guilty.* &c.

INVIDERE honorem ei, *v. honori ejus*; ei *vel eum*, to envy.

PROVIDERE & prospicere id, to foresee; ei, to provide for; in posterum; rei frumentaria, rem *v. de re*.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo, to ride; toga bene sedet, *fits*; Sedet hoc animo mihi, *is fixed*, Virg.

ASSIDERE ei; Adherbarem, to sit by, Sal. Affidet insano, *is near or like to*, Hor.

DISSIDERE cum aliquo, to disagree; toga dissidet impar, *does not fit*, Hor.

INSIDERE equo, & in equo, to sit upon; locum, Liv. in animo, memoria, to be fixed.

PRÆSIDERE urbi, imperio, to command, Cic. exercitum, Italiam, Tacit.

SUPERSEDERE labore, litibus; pugna, loqui, to forbear, to give over.

PENDERE premis, ab *v. ex* aliquo, to depend; de, ex, ab & in arbore; Opera pendent interrupta, *are suspended*, Virg.

IMPENDET malum nobis, nos, *v. in nos*, throtens.

SPONDERE & despondere filiam alicui, to betroth.

RESPONDERE donnum alicujus sibi, to be sure of; Cic. animo & -is, to promise, to hope; animum & -qs, to despair; Liv.

RESPONDERE ei, literis ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, to answer; votis ejus, to satisfy his wishes; ad spem.

SUADERE ei pacem, *v. de pace*; legem, to speak in favour of.

DOLERE casum ejus, de, ab, ex, in, pro re; dolet mihi cor, *v. hoc dolet cordi meo*; caput dolet a sole.

VALERE gratiâ apud aliquem, to be in favour with one; lex valet

is in force; quid verbum valeat, non video, *signifies*; valet decem talenta, or ostener talentis, *is worth*; vale vel valcas, *farewell*; or ironically, *away with you*.

NEO, REO, and VEO.

EMINERE aliqua re vel in aliqua re, inter omnes; super cætera, Liv. super utrumque. Hor. *to be eminent, to excel*; ex aqua, v. aquam, super undas, *to be above*. Imminere alicui, *to hang over, to threaten*; in occasionem, exitio alicujus, *to seek, to watch for*.

TENERE promissum; se domi, oppido, castris, *se in, to keep*; modum, ordinem, *to observe*; rem, iuncta, lectionem, *to understand, to remember*; linguam, *but not suam, silentium, se in silentio, to be silent*; cra, *to keep the countenance fixed*; secundum locum imperii, *to hold*, Nep. jura civium, *to enjoy*, Cic. causam, *to gain*; mare, *to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of*; terram, portum, metam, montes, *to reach*; risum, lacrymas, *to refrain*; se ab accusando, quin accuset, Cic. Ventus tenet, *blows*; teneri legibus, jurejurando, &c. *to be bound by*; leges tenent eum, *bind*; teneri in manifesto furto, *to be seized*; tunc fama, *prevails*.

ABSTINERE maledictis, v. a, *to abstain*; publico, *to live retired*, Tacit. animum a scelere, ægrum a cibo, *to keep from*; jus belli ab aliquo, *not to treat rigorously*, Liv. Id ad me, ad religionem, &c. pertinet, *concerns me*; crimen ad te pertinet, Cic. But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratrem pertinet, *for meus, fratris est, belongs to*; venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinent, *resorb*.

SUSTINERE personam judicis, nomen consulatus, *to bear the character*; assensionem, v. se ab assensu, *to withhold assent*; rem in nocentem, *to defer*.

MANERE apud aliquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiâ, in sententia, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, *to expect*, Liv. promissis, *to stand to, to keep*, Virg. Omnes una manent nox, *awaits*, Horat. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium & industria. Cic. Munera vobis certa manent, Virg.

MERERE laudem; bene, malè de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, *to serve as a soldier*; fustuarium, *to be beaten to death*.

HÆRERE lateri; tergis v. in terga hostium, Liv. curru, Virg. alicui in visceribus, Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, *I am in doubt*; Vide, ne hæreas, *lest you be at a loss*, Cic.

ADHÆRERE & adhærescere justitiæ; ad turrin; in me. Inhærere rei, & in re.

MOVERE castra, *to decamp*; bella, *to raise*; aliquem tribu, *to remove a Roman Citizen from a more honourable to a less honourable tribe*; e senatu, *to degrade a senator*; risum vel jocum alicui, *to cause laughter*; stomachum ei, *to trouble*, Cic.

FAVETE ore, vel linguis, se. mihi, *attend in silence, or abstain from words of a bad omen*.

CAVERE aliquid, aliquem, vel ab aliquo, *to guard against, to avoid*; alicui, *to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client*; aliquid alicui, Cic. sibi ab aliquo vel per aliquem de re aliqua, *to get security on*; mihi prædibus & chirographo cautum est, *I have got security by bail and bond*; veteranis cautum esse volumus, Cic. Cave facias, se. ne, *see you don't do it*; mihi cavendum, vel mea cautio est, *I must take care*.

CONNIVERE ad fulgura, Suet. *to wink*; in hominum sceleribus, *to take no notice of*, Cic.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in IO.

FACERE initium, finem, paup-
sam, finem vitæ; pacem, amicitiam;
testamentum, nomen, solum, solum,
portem in flumine, in Tiberim,
to make; divortium cum uxore,
Cic. bellum regi, Nep. se hilarem,
to show, Ter. se divitem, miserum,
pauperem, to pretend, Cic. æs alienum,
v. contrahere, conflare, to contract debt;
animos, to encourage; damaum, detrimen-
tum, jacturam, to lose; naufragium,
to suffer; sumptum, to spend; gratum
alicui, to oblige; gratiam delicti,
to pardon a fault, gratiam legis,
to dispense with; justa vel funus
alicui, to perform one's funeral rites;
rem, to make an estate; pecuniam,
divitias ex metallis; fædus,
v. inire, icere, ferire, percutere,
jungere, sancire, firmare, &c.
to make a league; moram alicui,
to delay; verba, to speak; audientiam
sibi, Cic. negotium, et facessere,
to trouble; aliquid missum, to pass
over; aliquem missum, to dismiss or
excuse; ad aliquid, rarely alicui,
to be fit or useful; ratum, to ratify;
planum, to explain; palam fuis, to
make known; Nep. stipendium
pedibus, v. equo, & merere, to
serve in the army; sacra, sacrificium,
v. rem divinam, to sacrifice; reum,
to impeach; fabulam, carmen, versus,
&c. to write a play; &c. copiam
consilii ei, to offer advice; copiam
vel potestatem dicendi legatis,
to grant leave; eadem, to procure
or give credit; periculum, to make
trial; potestatem sui, to expose
himself, Nep. aliquem loquentem,
v. loqui, to suppose or represent,
Cic. piraticam, sc. rem to be a
pirate; argentariam, medicinam,
mercaturam, &c. to be an

usurer, a physician, &c. versuram,
to contract a new debt to discharge
an old one, to borrow money at
great interest, Cic. cum v. ab aliquo,
to side with; contra v. adversus,
to oppose; nomen v. nomina, to
borrow money, and also, to settle
accounts, i. e. rationes acceptarum,
sc. pecuniarum et expensarum
inter se censerre; nomen in litura,
to write it where something was
before, Cic. pedem v. pedes, to trim
the sails, Virg. Fac ita esse,
suppose it is so; obvius fieri
alicui, to meet; ne longum,
v. longa faciam, ut breve faciam,
not to be tedious; equus non
facit, will not move, Cic. Fac
velle, sc. me, suppose me to be
willing, Virg. Æn. iv, 540.

AFFICERE aliquem laude, honore,
præmio, & ignominia, pœnâ,
morte, lætæ, &c. to praise, honour,
&c. to disgrace, punish, &c. Affectus
ætatæ, morbo, weakness.

CONFICERE bellum, to finish;
orationes, to compose; Nep. cibum,
to chew; argentum, to raise, to get;
also to spend, Cic.; cum aliquo
de re, to conclude a bargain; exercitus
hostium, to destroy; alterum
Curiatium, to kill, i. v. Qui
stipendiis confectis erant, i. e.
emeriti, had served out their
time, Cic.

DEFICERE animo, to faint; ab
aliquo, to revolt; tempus deficit
mihi vel me, fails; Defici viribus,
ratione, &c. to be deprived of.

INFICERE se vitro, to stain; In-
fectus, part. stained; infectus,
adj. not done. Inficior, -atus,
-ari, to deny.

OFFICERE alicui, to hinder or
hurt; Diogeni apricanti, to stand
betwixt him and the sun; auribus,
visui, to stop or obstruct; Umbratæ
foli officiens noctem efficit, Cic.

PRÆFICERE aliquem exercitiū, *to set over*. Proficere alicui, *to profit, to do good*; in philosophia, & progressus facere, *to make progress*.

REPERIRE niros, templa, ades, rates, res, *to repair*; animum, vires, sanctos, sc. jumenta, *to refresh, to recover*.

SUFFICERE laboribus, lētibūs, *to be able to bear*; arma v. vires alicui, *to afford*; Valerius in locum Collatini successus est, *was substituted*, Liv. Filius patri successus, Tacit. Oculos successi sanguine & igne, sc. secundum, *having their eyes red and inflamed*, Virg.

SATISFACERE alicui, in v. de aliqua re, *to justify*; fidei, promisso, *to perform*.

JACERE aliquem in præcep̄s; contumelias in eum, *to throw*; fundamenta, & ponere, *to lay*; talos, *to play at dice*; anchoram, *to cast*.

ADJICERE, *to add*; oculos alicui rei, *to covet*; animum studiis, *to apply*; sacerdotibus creandis, Liv.

CONJICERE se in pedēs, v. fugam, *to fly*; ætera, *to conjecture*.

INJICERE manus ei, *to lay on*; spem, ardorem, suspensionem, pavorem, alicui, *to inspire*; admirationem sui cuivis ipso aspectu, Nep.

OBJICERE se hostibus, in v. ad omnes casus, *to oppose or expose*; crimen ei, *to lay to one's charge*.

REJICERE tela in hostes, *to throw back*; iudices, mala, *to reject*; rem ad senatum, Romam, *to refer*; rem ad Idus Febr. *to delay*, Cic.

SUBJICERE ova gallinæ, *to set a hen*; se imperio alicujus, *to submit*; testamenta, *to forge*; testes, *to suborn*; partes v. species generibus, ex quibus emanant, *to put or class under*; aliquid ei, *to suggest*; libellum ei, s. e. in manu:

dare: odio civium, *to expose*; bona Pompeii, v. fortunas hastæ, vel voci et sub voce præconis, *to expose to public sale*, Cic. sub hasta venire, *to be sold*, Liv.

TRAJICERE copias v. exercitum, fluvium, Hellespontum, vel trans fluvium, *to transport*: Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajecit v. trajectus est, *passed or sailed over*. Trajectus ferro, *pierced*.

CAPERE conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, fugam, specimen, spem, sedem, &c. *to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, sit, &c.* augurium, v. auspiciū, & agere, *to take an omen*: exemplum de aliquo: locum castris: terram, *to alight*: insulam, summa sc. loca, *to reach*: spolia ex nobilitate, *to gain*, Sall. de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magistratum, *to receive or enjoy*: virginem Vestalem, *to chuse*: animentiam, spiritus, superbiam alicujus, *to bear, to contain*: aliquem consilio, perfidiâ, *to catch*: Nec te Troja capit, Virg. Ædes vix nos capiunt, *the house hardly contains us*: Alctro-oculo capitur, *blind of one eye*: capitur locus, *he is delighted with*, Virg.

ACCIPERE pecuniam, vulnue, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, *to receive*: Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, *two copies of the same letter*, Cic. clamorem, de Socrate, *to bear*: id in bonam partem, *to take in good part, to understand in a good sense*: organa ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorum ac, atque, Ter. rudem, v. rude donari, *to be discharged as a gladiator*; aliquem bene v. male, *to treat*: eum male acceptum in Mediam hiematum coegit redire, *roughly handled*, Nep. rogationem, *to approve the bill*.

bill; nomen, i. e. ad petendum admittere, *to allow to stand candidate*; omen, *to esteem good*; satisfactionem v. excusationem, Cæs. Acceptus plebi, apud plebem, *popular*.

CONCIPERE verba juramenti, *to prescribe the form of an oath*; conceptis verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, *to bear enmity to one*; aquam, *to gather; to form the head of an aqueduct*, Frontinus.

EXCIPERE eum hospitio, *to entertain*; fugientes, *to catch*; extremum spiritum cognatorum: sanguinem paterâ, *to keep or gather*; notis, & scribere, *to write in short hand*; motus futuros, *to perceive*; Hos homines excipio, *I except*; virtutem excipit immortalitas; turbulentior annus excepit, *succeeded*; sic excipit regia Juno, *replied*, Virg.

INCIPERE, occipere, *to begin*. Percipere fructus, *to reap*.

PŒCIPERE futura, *to foresee*; gaudia, spem victoriæ, *to anticipate*; pecuniam mutuam, *to take before the time*, Cæs. lac, *to dry up*, Virg. alicui id, v. de ea re, *to order*; artem ei, *to teach*.

RECIPERE aliquid, *to receive*; urbem, *to recover*; eum tectis, *to entertain*; se v. pedem, *to retreat*; se domum, *to return*; se, mentem, animum, *to come to one's self again, to recover spirits*; in se, *to take charge*; alicui, *to promise*; se ad frugem, *to amend*; senem sessum, *to give a seat to*, Cic.

RAPERÉ vel trahere in pejorem partem, *to take a thing in the worst sense*; in jus, *to bring before a judge*; partes inter se, *to share*, Liv. Sub divum, *to reveal*, Horat.

UO.

EXUERE vestes sibi, se vestibus; jugum sibi, se jugo, *to cast off*; fidem, sacramentum, *to break*; mentem, *to change*, Virg. hostem castris, *to beat from*.

RUERE ad interitum, in ferrum: cæteros, Ter. spumas, *to drive or toss*, Virg.

LUERE pœnas capitis, *to suffer*; æs alienum, *to pay*, Curt. culpam suam vel alterius, morte, sanguine, *to expiate, to atone or suffer for*.

ELUERE amicitias remissione usûs, *to drop gradually*, Cic.

STATUERE stipendium iis de publico, *to appoint*; exemplum in hominem, vel -ne, *to make one a public example*; aliquem capite in terram, *to set or place*, Ter.

CONSTITUERE coloniam, *to settle*; agmen paulisper, *to make to stop or halt*, Sall. in digitis, *to count on one's fingers*, Cic. urbem, *to build*, Ovid.

Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum, *appointed, resolved*, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam constituit, tollet eadem, *makes, constitutes*, Cic. Corpus bene constitutum, *a good constitution*, Id.

DESTITUERE aliquem, *to forsake*; spem, *to deceive*; propositum, *to give over*, Ovid. deos pactâ mercede, *to defraud*, Hor.

INSTITUERE aliquem secundum hæredem filio, *to appoint*, Cic. collegium fabrorum, sacra, *to institute, to found*, Plin. aliquem doctrinâ, Græcis literis, *to instruct*; naves, *to build*, Cæs. sermonem, *to enter upon*, Id. animum ad cogitandum, *to settle*; antequam pro Murena dicere instituo, *I begin*, Cic.

PŒSTITUERE petitori, qua actione illum uti oporteat, *to prescribe to the prosecutor what form of process he should use*, Cic. tempus ei, *to determine*.

RESTITUERE exules; virginem suis, *to restore*; oppida vicisque, *to repair*; aciem inclinatam, *to rally*; prælium, *to renew*, Liv.

SUBSTITUERE aliquem in locum ejus, pro altero, *to substitute or put in the place of*, Cic.

STRUERE

STRUERE epulas, *to prepare*; infidias, mendacium, *to contrive*; odium, crimen alicui, *vel in aliquem, to raise against*.

BO.

SCRIBERE suâ manu, bene, velociter, epistolam alicui, *v. ad aliquem*; bellum, *v. de bello*; milites, *to enlist*; supplementum militibus, *to recruit them*; hæredem, *to make one his heir*; dicam ei, *to raise an action against one*; nummos, *to give a bill of exchange*; de rebus suis scribi cupivit, Cic. Decemvir legibus scribendis, Liv.

ASCRIBERE aliquem civitati, in civitatem, *v. -e, to make free*.

DESCRIBERE aliquem, *to describe and not to name*; partes Italicæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, *to distribute, to divide*; vectigal civitatibus, *i. e. imperare*; jura, *i. e. dare v. constituere*; censores binos in singulas civitates, *i. e. facere*, Cic.

INSCRIBERE literas alicui, *to direct a letter*; librum, *to entitle or name*; ædes mercede, *to put a ticket on one's house to let*, Ter.

PROSCRIBERE bona alicujus, ædes suas, auctionem, *to publish to be sold, to set to sale*; aliquem, *to banish, to outlaw*.

RESCRIBERE alicujus literis *v. ad literas, alicui ad aliquid, to write an answer*; pecuniam, *to pay money by bill*; legionem ad equum, *to set foot soldiers on horseback*, Cæsar.

SUBSCRIBERE exemplum literarum, *to write below*; causæ, *to join or take part in an accusation*; Cæsaris iræ, *to favour*, Ovid.

CO.

DICERE aliquid, *v. de aliqua re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad v. apud aliquem*; in aliquem, *against*; ad aliquid, *in answer to*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; jus, *to ad-*

minister justice, to pronounce sentence; multam ei, *to amerce or fine*; diem ei, *to appoint a day for his trial before the people*; prodicere, *to put it off*; causam, *to plead*; testimonium, *to give evidence*; non idem loqui est ac dicere, *to borrow*, Cic. sacramento, *seldom sacramentum, to take the military oath*.

ADDICERE aliquid ei, *to call out at an auction, to sell*; servituti, *v. in servitutum, to sentence or adjudge to bondage*; bona, *to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor*; se alicui, *to devote himself to one's service*: aves non addixerunt, *v. addixerunt, the birds did not give a favourable omen*; pretio addictam habere fidem, *to be corrupt*, Cic.

CONDICERE operam alicui, *to promise assistance*; cœnam alicui, *v. ad cœnam, to propose supping with one without invitation*.

EDICERE alicui, *to order*; delectum, *to appoint a levy*; prædam militibus, *to promise by an edict*; justitiam, diem comitiis, *vel comitia consulibus creandis, to appoint*.

INDICERE bellum, justitiam, *to proclaim war*; legem sibi, *to appoint*, Cic. cœtus in domos tribunorum, *to summon*, Liv.—Indicare, *to show*; Indictus, *an adj. not said*; causâ indictâ, *v. non cognitâ condemnari, to be condemned without being heard*; me indicente, hæc non fiunt, *not telling*, Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui aliquid, *v. aliqua re*; sceminis usum purpuræ, *to forbid or debar from*; ei aquâ & igne, *v. aquam et ignem, to banish*; malè rem gerentibus bonis paternis interdici solet, Cic. interdici non poterat focero gener, *discharged the company of*, Nep.

PRÆDICERE alicui aliquid, *de aliqua re, id in hac re, to foretell, to forewarn*.

DUCERE in carcerem *v.* vincula, to lead; exercitum, to command; spiritum, animam, vitam, to breathe, to live; fossam, murum, fulcum, to make or draw; bellum, to prolong, also to carry on. Virg. ætatem, diem, to spend; uxorem, to take a wife; in jus, to summon before a judge; aliquem, & vultum alicujus, ære, ex ære, de auro, marmore, &c. to make a statue; genus, nomen ab *v.* ex aliquo, to derive; omnia pro nihilo, infra se; id ei laudi, laudem, *v.* in laudem, oftener the first, to reckon it a praise to him; in conscientiam, to impute to a consciousness of guilt; in gloria, Plin. in crimen, Tacit. centesimas se. usuras, vel fœnus centesimis, to compute interest at one for the hundred a month; or at 12 per cent per annum; binis centesimis fœnerari, to take 24 per cent. per annum, Cic. ducere longas voces in sctam, to draw out, Virg. ordines, to be a Centurion, Liv. ilia, to pant like a broken-winded horse, Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in judicium, ad arbitrium meum, to bring to a trial; in suspicionem regi, Nep. arcum, to draw in; habenas, to straiten the reins.

CONDUCERE aliquem ex loco, to convey; navem, domum, coquos, to hire; columnam faciendam, to engage to make at a certain price: Conducit hoc tuz laudi, in *v.* ad rem, it of advantage.

DEDUCERE naves, to launch; classem in prælium, to bring, Nep. equites, to make to alight, Liv. eum domum, to accompany, to carry home; de sententia, Cic. coloniam, to transplant; lacum, to drain.

EDUCERE gladium e vagina, to draw; florem Italix, to lead out; copias in aciem, Cic. filium, to educate, oftener educare; in astra, to extol, Hor. cælo, Virg.

INDUCERE tenebras clarissimis rebus, to bring on, Cic. animum, *v.* in animum, to persuade himself; scuta pellibus, to cover, Cæf. solcas pedibus, *v.* in pedes, to put on; colorem picturæ, to varnish, Plin. nomina, to cancel or raise, to rub out.

OBducERE exercitum, to lead against; callum dolori, to blunt it; sepulchrum sentibus, to cover.

REDUCERE aliquem in memoriam alicujus, vel alicui aliquid in memoriam, to bring back to one's remembrance; in gratiam cum aliquo, to reconcile: Vallis reducra, retired or low.

PRODUCERE testes, to bring out; funus, to attend; sermonem in noctem, to prolong, to continue; rem in hiemem, to defer; servos vendendos, to bring to market.

SUBducERE ie a custodibus, to steal away; naves, to draw up on shore; cibum ei & deducere, to take from; summam, rationes, to reckon, to cast up accounts.

PARCERE sibi, labore, to spare, &c. a credibus, to forbear; aurum natis, Virg.

ASSUESCERE rei alicui, *v.* re aliqua, in *v.* ad hoc, to be accustomed; mentem pluribus & assuefacere, Hor. Animis bella, Virg. to accustom. Sæ insuesco rei *v.* re; insuevit hoc me pater, Hor.

SCISCERE legem, to vote, to decree: beneq. plebiscitum.

ASCISCERE regium nomen, to assume; socios sibi, ad societatem sceleris, to associate; ritus peregrinos, to adopt.

CONscISCERE mortem *v.* necem sibi, to kill one's self; fugam sibi, to flee, Liv.

DISCERE aliquid ab aliquo, *v.* apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, or without ex: Deducere, to forget what he hath learned; Ediscere, to get by heart.

D O.

DESCENDERE de palatio, præfidio, ædibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, *to have recourse to*, Cic.

LUDERE aleâ, v. -am, *to play at dice*; par impar, *at even and odd*; operam, *to lose one's labour*.

ALLUDERE alicui, ad aliquem: Colludere ei, cum eo; illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock*.

EVADERE insidias -iis, vel ex, *to escape*; in murum, *to mount*: Hæc quorundam evadant, nescio, *to what they will turn out*: Clarus evasit, *became*.

CEDERE multa multis de suo jure, Cic. Bona creditoribus, *to yield, whence cessio bonorum*; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, ð. locum, *to give place*; vitâ, e vita decedere, *to die*; foro, *to turn bankrupt*; Hæreditas cedit mihi, *falls to*; Cedit in proverbium, *becomes*.

ACCEDERE oppidum, -do, ad v. in oppidum, *to approach*; ad conditiones, *to agree to*; Ciceroni, sententiæ, v. ad sententiam ejus, *to agree with*; ad Ciceronem, *to go to*; ad rempublicam, *to bear the questorship, or the first public office*; ad amicitiam Philippi, *to gain the friendship of*, Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, *is added*, Ter. Robur accessit ætati, Cic. Animi accessere hosti, Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona accesserant, Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc, eo, accedit quod, *is added*.

ANTECEDERE alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely alicui, to excel*.

CONCEDERE ei aliquid & de aliquo; paulum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant*; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, *to retire, to go*; fato, naturæ, vitâ, *to die*; in sententiam ejus, *to come*

into one's measures; in conditiones, *to agree to*, Liv.

DISCEDERE transversum, & latum unguem, v. digitum a re, *to depart in the least*.

INTERCEDERE legi, *to give a negative against, to oppose a law*; pecuniam pro aliquo, *to become surety*: Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia vel inter nos, *there is, &c.*

SUCCEEDERE ei, in locum ejus, *to succeed*; muro, v. murum; ad urbem; sub primam aciem; in pugnam, *to come up to*.

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall*; causâ, formulâ, in judicio, & litem perdere, *to lose one's cause, to be cast*; in v. sub sensum, oculos, potestatem, &c. in morbum, & incidere, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, *is incapable of*, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quasi puero, gaudio, Ter.

ACCIDERE genibus, v. ad genua, *to fall at*; auribus v. ad aures, *to come to*; alicui, casu, præter opinionem, *to happen*; accidit in te istud verbum, *applies*, Ter.

TENDERE vela, *to stretch*; insidias, retia, plagas, &c. *to lay snares*; arcum, *to bend*; iter, cursum, *to direct*; ad altiora, in cœlum, *to aim at*; extra vallum, sc. tabernaculum, *to pitch a tent*: Manibus tendit divellere nodos, *tries*, Virg.

ATTENDO te, Cic. tibi, Plin. de hac re, ad hanc rem, *to take heed*; animum ad rem; res hostium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, *to exert one's self*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to ask earnestly*; inter se: amori, poet. *for cum amore, to strive*: causas, sc. inter se, *to compare*, Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, & alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, *to understand*: rem pluribus &

& luculentioribus verbis, to express; aliquem humanitate, amicitia, to gain; rem fictam, to discover.

INTENDERE animum rei, ad v. in rem, to apply: Intendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, nervos, to exert; arcum, to bend; actionem v. litem alicui vel in aliquem, alfo impingere, to raise a law-suit against one; telum ei, v. in eum, to shoot at; manum v. digitam in aliquid, to point at: aliquo sc. ire, to go to; officia, to overdo, to do more than is required, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, v. rem velo, to cover, to veil.

PENDERE pecuniam, to pay; pœnas, to suffer; id parvi, to value it little.

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, v. ex arbore, to hang; expectatione, vel suspensum detinere, to keep in suspense; ædificium, to arch a house; naso adunco, to sneer at, Horat.

ABDERE se literis, in literas, to hide or shut up one's self among books, se domum, rus, &c. domo, Virg. in silvas, tenebras, &c.

CONDERE urbem, to build; fructus, to lay up; in carcerem, to imprison; carmen, to compose; lumina, to close, Ovid. jura, to establish; terrâ, sepulchro, in sepulchro, to bury.

DENERE se alicui, in ditionem alicujus, ad aliquem, to surrender; Deditus præceptoris, & studiis. find of; vino epulisque, engaged in, Nep. deditâ operâ. on purpose.

EDERE librum, et in lucem, to publish; ovum, to lay; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, hinnitum, pugnam, stragem, to sound, sing, &c. munus gladiatorum, to exhibit a show of gladiators; nomen, to mention; factus, to bring forth; extremum spiritum, to die; exempla cruciatûs in aliquem, to inflict exemplary torture.

ORDERE pectus foribus, to bolt the door

PRODERE artem hostibus, to betray; aliquid posteris, v. memoria, to hand down; genus ab aliquo, to derive; flaminem, interregem, to appoint; aliquot dies nuptiis, to put off, Ter. exemplum, to give to posterity, Liv.

REDDERE animum, se sibi, to revive; animam v. vitam, to die; Latine, verbum verbo, to translate; matrem, i. e. referre, to resemble; epistolam alicui, to deliver.

SUBDERE calcas equo, to spur; spiritus alicui, to encourage.

CREDERE rem; homini, to believe; aliquid alicui, to trust; pecuniam ei per syngrapham, to lend on bond or bill; rumoribus credi non oportet: Itaque credo si, &c. I suppose, Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, to pour out; hostes, to rout.

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, to produce; ararium, to spend; odium, i. e. demittere, to drop, gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere: omnia, quæ tacuerat, to tell.

G O.

JUNGERE se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem, dextram dextræ: equos curru: amicum ponte, to make a bridge.

ADJUNGERE accessionem ædibus, to build an addition to one's house: animum ad studia, to apply.

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, enseni, to draw: frondes, to lop off: glandes, baccas, to beat down: rem, to waste one's fortune, Hor. litus, to touch, to brush or graze upon, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, to hit the nail on the head.

ATTINGERE Britanniam navibus, to reach: reges, res summas, to mention, Nep. Aliquem cognatione,

cognitione, affinitate, *to be related to*: forum, *to reach manhood*, Cic. Res non te attingit, *concerns*.

FINGERE orationem, *to polish*: oratorem, *to form*: se ad arbitrium alterius, *to adapt*: Vultus a mente fingitur; lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam. Nep.

FRANGERE nucem, *to break*: navem, *to suffer shipwreck*: foedus, fidem, *to violate*: sententiam ejus, *to refute*, Cic. hostem, *to subdue*.

AGERE gratias, *to give thanks*: vitam, *to live*: praedas, *to plunder*: fabulam, *to act a play*: triumphum de aliquo, *ex aliqua re, to triumph*: nugas, *to trifle*: ambages, *to beat about the bush*: stationem, *custodiam urbis, to be on guard*: rimas, *to chink, to leak, to be rent*: causam, *to plead*: de re, *to speak*: radices, *to take root*: cuniculos, *to undermine*: undam, *to raise a steam*: animam, *to be at the last gasp*: alias res, *to be inattentive*: iestum diem, natalem, serias, &c. *to keep, to observe*: actum, *v. rem actam, to labour in vain*: censum, & habere, *to make a review of the people, their estates, &c.* forum, *to hold a court to try causes*: lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, *to go to law with one*: hence actor, *a plaintiff*: in hereditatem, *to claim*: cum populo, *to treat with, to lay before*: decimum agit annum, *he is ten years old*: id agitur, *that is the question*: libertas agitur, *v. de libertate, is at stake*: actum est de libertate, *is lost*: actum est de pace, *was treated about*: cum illo bene actum est, *he has been lucky or well used*: hoc age, *mind what you are about*. Civitas lata agere, *for erat*, Sallust.

ADIGERE milites sacramento, *ad v. in iusjurandum, in sua verba, per. iusjurandum, to force to*

enlist: arbitrum, *i. e. agere v. cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, to force to submit to an arbitration*, Cic.

COGERE copias, *to bring together*: ad militiam, *to force to enlist*: senatum, *to assemble*: in senatum, *sc. minis, pignoribus captis, &c. to force to attend*: agmen, *to rally, to bring up*: lac, *to curdle*: jus civile diffusum & dissipatum, *in certa genera cogere, to digest, to arrange*.

EXIGERE foras, *to drive out, to divorce*: aliquid ab aliquo, *to require*: facta teſta *sc. et, i. e. facta et teſta, ut sint bene reparata, to require that the public works be kept in good reparation*, Cic. supplicium, *de aliquo, to inflict*: sua nomina, *to demand or call in one's debts*: ævum, vitam, annos, *to spend*: aliquid ad normam, *to try or examine*: columnam ad perpendiculum, *to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight*: monumentum, *to finish*, Hor. tempus & modum, *to settle*, Virg. comœdiam, *to disapprove, to hiss off*, Ter.

REDIGERE aliquid in memoriam alicujus, *to bring back*: pecuniam ex bonis venditis, *to raise money*: hostes sub imperium, *to reduce*.

LEGERE oram, littus, *to coast along*: vela, *to furl the sails*: halitum, *to catch one's breath*: milites, *to enlist*: aliquem in senatum, *in Patres, to choose*: sacra, *to steal, to commit sacrilege*: Hor.

H O

TRAHERE obſidionem, bellum, *to prolong*: purpuras, *to spin*: aliquid in religionem, *to scruple*: navem remulco, *to tow*.

DETRAHERE aliquem, *to draw down*: alicui, *v. de aliquo, de fama, to detract from, to lessen one's fame*: aliquid alicui, *to take by force*: laudem, *v. de laudibus*: novem

novem partes multæ, *to take from the firt*, Nep. 13, 4.

EXTRAHERE diem, *to spin out, to spend*; certamen, bellum, judicium, *to prolong*.

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, invehctus curru, quadrigis, &c. *riding in a chariot*; invehî in portum ex alto, *to enter*; in aliquem, *to inveigh against*; provehi longius, *sc. æquus to proceed too far*.

LO.

CONSULERE rem v. de re, *to consult about*; eum, *to ask his advice*; ei, *to consult for his good*; de salute suâ; gravius in aliquem, *to pass a severe sentence against*; in commune, publicum, medium, *to provide for the common good*; verba boni, *to take in good part*; ego consulor, *I am consulted*, i. e. *my advice is asked*; mihi consultitur, *my good is consulted*; mihi consultum ac provisum est. *for a me, I have taken care*, Cic.

APPELLERE classe in Italiam, *vel classem, to land on*; se aliquo, Ter. *ad villam nostram navis appelletur*, Cic. *animum ad philosophiam, to apply*.

ANTECELLERE ei, *rarely eum: to excel, to surpass*; excellere aliis, super, inter, præter alios aliquâ re, v. in re, *to excel*.

TOLLERE animos suos, *to take courage*; animos alicui, *to encourage*; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, *to extol*; inducias, *to break a truce*; clamores, *to cry*; filium, *to educate*; de vel e medio, *to kill*.

MO.

ADIMERE claves uxori, *to take away the keys from a wife*, i. e. *to divorce*; anulum v. equum equiti, *to take away from a knight the ring or the horse given him by the public, to degrade*.

DIRIMERE litem, controversiam, *to determine*.

EXIMERE aliquem servitio, noxæ, e vinculis, a culpa, de numero pro-

scriptorum, obsidione, *to free*; de dolio, *to draw out*; diem dicendo, *to waste in speaking*.

INTERIMERE se, *to kill*.

REDIMERE captivos, *to ransom*; pecuaria de censoribus, *to take or farm the public pastures*.

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex v. de eo, *to take*; pœnas, supplicium de aliquo, *to punish*; pecunias mutuas, *to borrow*; togam virilem, *to put on the dress of a man*; sibi inimicitias, *to get ill will*; operam in re, *vel in rem infumere, to bestow pains*: sumo tantum, *vel hoc mihi, I take this upon me*.

PRÆMERE caseum, *to make cheese*; vocem, *to be silent*; dolorem corde, *to conceal*; vestigia ejus, *to follow*; littus, *to come near*; pollicem, *to save a gladiator by pressing down the thumb*; librum in nonum annum, *to delay publishing*, Hor.

EXPRIMERE succum, *to press out*; risum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, *to force from*; effigiem, *to draw to the life*; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. *to translate word for word*.

IMPRIMERE aliquid animo, in animo, v. in animum, *to imprint*.

REPRIMERE se, & reprehendere eum retinere, *to check*.

NO.

PONERE spem in homine v. re, & habere; castra, *to pitch*; vitem, *to plant*; vitam, *to die*; ova, *to lay*; insidias alicui; panem convivis, *not ante*; personam amici, *to lay aside the character of a friend*; præmia, *to propose*; pocula, *to shake or lay*; studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, *to employ, to bestow*: aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, *to reckon*: scrocia corda, *to lay aside*:
U
aliquem

aliquem in gratiam v. gratia, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, Cic.: ventos, to calm; hominem coloribus, saxo, to paint, to engrave; Hor. pecuniam in senore, to lay out at interest; templa, to build. Virg. Venti posuere sc. se, are bust'd, Virg. Pone esse victum eum, Ter. Positum sit, suppose, grant, Cic.

COMPONERE carmen, literas, &c. to compose; lites, to settle; bellum, to finish by treaty; parva magnis, dicta cum factis, to compare; manus manibus, to join, Virg.

DEPONERE v. ponere togam praetextam, to lay aside the dress of a boy; imperium, & demittere, to lay down a command.

EXPONERE rem, to set forth or explain; frumentum, to expose to sale, Cic. pueros, factus, to leave to perish, Liv. exercitum sc. ex navibus in terram, to land.

IMPONERE onus alicui v. in aliquem; aliquem in equum, to set upon; personam v. partes duriores ei, to lay a task or duty on one; alicui, to impose on, to deceive, Nep. honorem ei, to confer; vadimonium ei, to force to give bail, Nep. manum summam v. extremam rei alicui, in aliqua re, to put the last hand to a thing, to finish; pontem flumini, to make a bridge, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, to insert, Nep.

OPPONERE se periculis, & ad pericula, to expose; pignori, to pledge; manum fronti, ante oculos, to put, Ovid.

PROPONERE aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, to propose; to set before; edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publicè legenda affigere: congiarium, to promise a largess, a gift of corn or money.

SUPPONERE ova gallinae, to set a hen; testamentum, v. subjicere, to forge.

CANERE aliquem, to praise;

signa, classicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, to sound an alarm, to give the signal for battle; receptui, rarely -um, to sound a retreat; tibià, to play on the pipe: ad tibiàm, to sing to it; palinodiam, to utter a recantation.

STERNERE lectos, to spread or cover the couches; equos, to harness; viam, to pave; aequora, to calm. Virg.

PO.

CARPERE agmen, to cut off the rear; somnos, quietem, to sleep; viam, iter, to go; Virg. opera alterius, to censure; labores, virtutes, to diminish or obscure, Hor.

RUMPERE fidem, foedus, amicitiam, to violate; vocem v. silentium, to speak, Virg.

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, castris, &c. se portis, to break out; stomachum in aliquem, to vent passion; nubem, to break, Virg.

RO.

QUERERE bonam gratiam sibi, to seek or gain, Cic. sermonem, to beat about for conversation, Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, to make a fortune by merchandize; ex aliquo, & in aliquem, de re aliqua per tormenta, to put to the rack; in dominum de servo quaeri noluerunt Romani, forbade a slave to be examined by torture against his master, Cic.

ANQUIRERE aliquid, to search after; aliquem capitis, v. -te, to accuse or try for a capital crime.

GERERE res, to perform; negotium malè, to manage: consulationem, to bear, to manage; se bene vel malè, to behave; exercitum to conduct, Sallust. morem ei, vel morigerari, to humour; civem, se pro cive, personam alicujus, to pass for, to bear the character of; inimicitias vel similitatem cum aliquo, to be at enmity or variance with.

INGERERE.

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, *to inveigh against.*

SUGGERERE aliquid ei, *to suggest, to hint*; sumptus his rebus, *to supply or afford*: Horatium Bruto, *to abuse in place of, to put after*, Liv.

SERERE crimina in eum, *to raise, to spread accusations.*

CONSERERE manus, manu, certamen, pugnam, cum hostibus, inter se, *to engage.*

ASSERERE aliquid, *to affirm*; aliquem manu, ab injuria, in libertatem, *to free*; in servitutem, *to reduce*; divinam majestatem, *to claim.*

T O.

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ab eo, *rarely eum*; in beneficii gratiaque loco, Cic. *to ask*; urbem Romanam, murum, montes, *to go to, to make for*; aliquem sagittâ, lapide, *to aim at*; consulatum, *to seek*, pœnas ab aliquo, & repetere, *to punish.*

COMPETERE animo, *to be in one's senses*; in eum competit actio, *an action lies against him*; Cic.

REPETERE res, *to demand restitution*; bona lege, v. prosequi lite, *to recover by law*; castra, oppidum, huc, *to return to*; aliquid memoriâ, *to call to mind*; alitè, *to trace from the beginning*. Mihi nihil suppetit, multa suppetunt, *I have*; si vita suppetet, *if life shall remain*, Cic.

MITTERE alicui, v. ad aliquem; in suffragia, *to send the people to vote*; aulæum, mappam, *to drop the curtain*; talos, *to throw the dice*; senatum, *to dismiss*; timorem, *to lay aside*; in acta, *to register, to record*; sanguinem, vel emittere, *to let blood*; noxam, *to forgive*; signa timoris, *to strew*; vocem, *to utter, to speak*; habenas, v. remittere, *to slacken*; manu, et emittere, *to free a slave*; filium emancipare, *to free a son from the power of his father*; sub jugum, *to make to pass under the yoke*; inferias ma-

nibus diis, *to sacrifice to the infernal Gods*; rem, v. de re, *to omit*: mitto rem, *I say nothing of fortune*, Ter. in possessionem bonorum, *to give the possession of the debtor's effects*; misit orare, ut venirem; i. e. aliquem ad orandum, Ter.

AMITTERE licem, v. causam; vitam, fidem, lumina, aspectum, *to lose*, Cic.

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, *to admit*; equum immittere, & permittere, *to gallop*; delictum in se, *to commit a fault*; avus non admisserunt, *have not given a favourable omen*, Liv.

COMMITTERE facinus, *to commit*; se alicui, v. in fidem alicujus, *to entrust*; praelium, *to engage*; exercitum pugnae, rem in calum accipitis eventus praelii, *to risk a battle*, Liv. iv. 27. aliquem cum aliquo, homines inter se, *to set at variance, or by the ears*; rem eò, *to bring to that pass*; gladiatores, pugiles Graecos cum Latinis, *to match or pair*; committere, ut, *to cause*; incommoda sua legibus & judiciis, *to seek redress by law.*

COMPROMITTERE. Candidati compromiserunt, H. S. quingenis in singulos apud M. Catonem depositis, petere ejus arbitratus, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo contemneretur, *made a compromise or agreement*, &c.

DMITTERE exercitum, *to disband*; uxorem, & repudiare, nuntium, v. repudium ad eam remittere, *to divorce.*

PROMITTERE id ei, *to promise*; capillum, barbam, *to let grow*, Liv.

PERMITTERE alicui, *to allow*; divis caetera, *to leave*, Horat. se in fidem v. fidel ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem; rem suffragiis populi, *to let the people decide*; tribunatum vexandis consulibus, *to give up, to employ*, Liv.

REMITTERE

REMITTERE animum, *to ease*; calces, tela, *to throw back*; ex pecunia, de supplicio, tributo, &c. *to abate*; debitum, iras alicui, *to give up, to forgive*; iustitiam, *to discontinue*; pugnam, *to slacken*; remittit explorare, *neglects*, Sallust.

SUBMITTERE falces populo, *to lower*; se v. animum, *to submit, to humble*; percussores alicui, *to suborn assassins*.

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, *reht. to pass over*.

VERTERE in fugam, *to put to flight*; terga, *to fly*; ab imo, *to overthrow*; solum, *to go into banishment*; id ei vitio, v. crimini, & in erimen, *to blame*; in superbiam, *to impute*; Platonem, Latine Graeca, Graeca vel ex Graecis in Latinum, *to translate*; pollicem, *to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb*; terram, *to plough*; crateram, *to empty*, Virg. stilum, *to correct*, Horat. (A. 508.) Salus vel causa in eo vertitur, *depends*; fortuna verterat, *sc. se, had changed* Liv. Annus vertens, *a whole year*, Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, *prosper*.

ANIMADVERTERE id, *to observe*; in eum verberibus, morte, &c. *to punish*.

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, *to bring up to*, Virg. oras, *to arrive at*; aures, mentes, animum v. animo ad aliquid, monitis, *to attend to*; in aliquem, ostener animadvertere, *to punish*.

ANTEVERTERE ei, *to come before*; damnationem veneno, *to prevent*; rem rei, *to prefer*, Plaut.

INTERVERTERE pecuniam alicujus, & aliquem pecuniâ, *to embezzle, to cheat*; candelabrum, *to steal, to pilfer*; promissum & receptum *sc. Dolobellæ consulatum, intervertit, ad seque transfudit, treacherously with-held*, Cic.

PRÆVERTERE, & -ti, dep. ventos cursu, *to outstrip*; desiderium plebis, *to prevent*; metum supplicii morte voluntariâ, Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, *to put before*, Id.

SISTERE vadimonium; se in iudicio, *to appear in Court at one's trial*; nec sisti posse, *nor could the state be saved*, Liv.

ASSISTERE ei, *to stand by*; ad fores; contra, superæum.

CONSISTERE in digitos, *to stand on tiptoe*; in anchoris, ad anchoram, *to ride at anchor*; frigore, *to be frozen*; Ovid. Spes in velis consistebat, *depended on*; virtus in actione consistit, Cic.

INSISTERE jacentibus, *to stand upon*; vestigiis ejus; viam, v. viâ; in re aliqua, in rem, v. rei; in dolos, negotium, Plaut. *to insist upon, to urge*.

OBSISTERE ei, *to stop, to oppose*.

RESISTERE ei, *to resist*.

SUBSISTERE, *to stand still*; sumptui, *to bear*.

V O.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay*; versuram, *to pay debt by borrowing from another*, Ter. Fidem, *to break a promise, or according to others, to perform*, Ter. And. IV. l. 19. liteni aestimatam, *to pay the fine imposed on him*, Nep. Votum, *to discharge*; obsidionem urbis, v. urbem obsidione, *to raise a siege*; navem, e portu, *to set sail*; epistolam, v. resignare, *to break open*; aliquem legibus, legum vinculis, *to free from*; solvitur in somnos, Virg. Oratio soluta, i. e. libera, numeris non astricta & devincta, *prose*; solve metus, *dismisi*, Virg. A. I, 457.

DISSOLVERE societatem, *to break*.

RESOLVERE vocem, v. ora, *to break silence*, Virg. jura, *to violate*; vestigal, *to take off taxes*, Tacit. in pulverem, *to reduce to*.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex v. ab aliquo, *to hear from one*; de aliquo, *about one, also from one*; *as, sæpe hoc audiui de patre, for ex patre, Cic. Audire bene v. malè apud socios, ab omnibus, to be well spoken of, to have a good character*; *rexque paterque audisti, you have been called, Hor. Antigonus credit de suo adventu esse auditum, Nep.*

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pacationem, certamen, manus, nihilum, &c. in suspicionem, odium, gratiam, &c. in jus, *to go to law, Liv. in circulum, into a company, Nep. Hæreditas ei venit, he has succeeded to an estate; ei usu venit, happened, Nep. Quod in buccam venerit, scribitur, occurs, Cic.*

ADVENIRE et adventare ei, urbem, ad urbem, *to come to.*

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, & antevertere, Sall. rei, Plaut. tempus, consilia & itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium; fratrem, *to meet with, to speak to*; ego et frater convenimus, copiarum convenient, *will meet together*; convenit mihi cum fratre de hac re,

inter me et fratrem, inter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt, I and my brother are agreed; lævis inter se convenit urbis, Juv. ipsi secum non convenit, vel ipse, he is inconsistent; pax convenit, vel conventa est, is agreed upon; rem conventuram putamus, Cic. conditiones non convenerunt; mores conveniunt, agree; calcei pedibus, v. ad pedes conveniunt, fit, suit; hoc illum convenit: Catilinam interfectum esse convenit, ought to have been slain, Cic. Convenire in manum, to come into the power of a husband; the usual form of marriage, named Coemptor; whereby women were called matres familias. (A. 460.)

SËNTIRE sonorem, colorem, &c. *to perceive*; cum aliquo, *to be of one's opinion*; bene vel malè de eo, *to think well or ill of him.*

CONSENTIRE tibi, tecum, inter se; alicui rei, de v. in aliqua re; ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree*; So dissentire; et ab aliquo, *to disagree*; ne vita orationi dissentiat, Senec.

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to profess, to teach publicly*; se candidatum, *to declare himself a candidate for an office*; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud censores, *to give an account of, to declare how much one has*; indicium, *to promise to make a discovery, Sallust.*

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se; *sometimes alicui, ad v. apud aliquem; aliquid, de aliqua re, to speak.*

SEQUI feras; sectam Cæsaris, *to be of his party, Cic. Assequi, consequi, to overtake; gloriam, to*

attain Consequi hereditatem, to get, Cic.

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, ludibus, &c. *to love, praise, &c.*

NITI hastâ; in cubitum, *to lean*; ejus consilio, in eo, *to depend on*; ad gloriam, ad v. in summa, *to aim at*; in vetitum, in adversum, contra aliquem, pro aliquo, *to strive; gradibus, to ascend.*

UTI eo familiariter, *to be familiar with one*; ventis adversis, *to have cross winds*; honore usus, *one who has enjoyed a post of honour.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni roboris, v. -no, v. e; ejus opinionis, v. eâ opinionione; in maxima spe; in timore, luctu, opinionione, itinere, &c. cum tulo, in vel cum imperio; magno periculo, v. in periculo; in tuto; apud se, in his sensus; sui juris, v. mancipii, sui potens, v. in sua potestate; to be at his own disposal: Res est in vado, is safe, Ter. Est animus sc. mihi, I have a mind, Virg. Est in animo, Liv. Est ut, cur, quantum, quod, quin, &c. There is cause; bene, male est mihi, with me; nihil est mihi tecum, I have nothing to do with you; Quid est tibi, sc. rei, What is the matter with you? Terent. Cernere erat, one might see; religio est mihi id facere, I scruple to do it; si est, ut facere velit, ut facturus sit, ut admiserit, &c. for si velit, &c. Ter. Est ut viro vir latius ordinet arbuta fulcis, it happens, Hor. Certum est facere, sc. mihi, I am resolved, Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, I am uncertain, Id. Cassius querere solebat, Cui bono fuerit: Omnibus bono fuit, It was of advantage, Cic.

ADDESSE pugne, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, to be present; alicui, to favour, to assist; scribendo, v. esse ad scribendum, to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate, Cic. consilio utrique, to be a counsellor to, Nep.

ABESSE domo, urbe, a domo, ab signis, to be absent; alicui, v. desesse, to be wanting, not to assist; a sole, to stand out of the sun; sumptus funeri defuit, he had not money to bury him, Liv. abesse a persona principis, to be inconsistent with the character, Nep. paulum v. parum absuit quin verbum caperent, quin occideretur,

&c. they were near taking, &c. Tantum abest ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. is so far from being, &c. Cic. Tantum absuit a cupiditate pecunie, a societate sceleris, &c. Nep.

INTERESSE convivio, v. in convivio, to be at a feast; anni decem interfuerunt, intervened; stulto intelligens quid interest, Ter. Hoc dominus et pater interest, Id. Inter hominem et belluam hoc interest, Cic. differ in tibi, tibi is the difference; multum interest, utrum, it is of great importance. Pons inter eos interest, is betw. en, Cic.

PRÆESSE exercitui, to command; comitiis, judicio, quaestioni, to preside in or at.

OBESSE ei, to hurt, to hinder.

SUPERESSE, to be over and above; alicui, to survive; modo vita superest sc. mihi, if I live; superest, ut, it remains, that.

IRE ad arma, ad saga, to go to war; in jus, to go to law; pedibus in sententiam alicujus, to agree with; viam v. viâ; res bene eunt, Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis it, passes.

ABIIRE magistratu, to lay down an office; a conspectu, to retire from company; in ora hominum, to be in every body's mouth; ab emptione, to retract his bargain; decem menses abierunt, have pass, Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abibit, i. e. non feres hoc impune, Ter. Abi in malam rem, go to the mischief, a form of imprecation.

ADIRE periculum capitis, to run the hazard of one's life.

EXIRE vitâ, e. v. de vita, to die; ire alieno, Cic. Verbum exit ex ore, Id. tela, to avoid, Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Veienti populo exierat, had expired, Liv.

INIIRE magistratum; suffragium,

giam, rationem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. to enter upon, to begin; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum vel ab eo, to gain his favour: Ineunte aetate, vere, anno, &c. in the beginning-of; but we seldom say, incunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte aetate, from our early years.

OBIRE diem edicti, vel auctio- nis, judicium, vadimonium, to be present at; provinciam, domos nostras, to visit, to go through, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, sacra, to perform; pugnas, Virg. mortem, vel morte; diem fupremum, v. diem, to die.

PRÆIRE alicui, to go before; verba, carmen, vel sacramentum alicui, to repeat or read over before; alicui voce, quid judicet, to prescribe or direct by crying, Cic.

PRŌDIRE in publicum, to go abroad; non praeterit te, you are not ignorant, Cic. Dies induciarum praeteriit, is past, Nep.

REDIRE in gratiam cum aliquo, to become friends again; ad se, to come to himself, to recover his senses.

SUBIRE murum, vel -o, ad montes, to come up to; laborem vel -i, onus, pœnam, periculum, crimen, to undergo; spes, timor subiit animum, came into.

VELLE aliquem sc. alloqui vel conuentum, to desire to speak with; alicui, ejus causâ, to wish one's good; tibi consultum volo; nihil tibi negatum volo, I wish to deny, or refuse, Liv. Quid sibi vult? What does he mean? Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri; si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo sc. esse, I will admonish them again and again, Cic. nollem factum, I am sorry it was done; nollem huc exitum sc. esse a me, I wish I had not come out here, Ter.

FERRE legem, to propose or make; privilegium de aliquo, to

propose or pass an act of impeachment against one, Cic. rogationem ad populum, to bring in a bill; conditiones ei, to offer terms; suffragium, to vote; sententiam, to give an opinion; centuriam, tribum, to gain the vote of; perdere, to lose it; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, to gain all the votes; repulsam, to be rejected; fructum, hoc fructi, to reap, Ter. laetitiam de re, to rejoice; prae se, to pretend or declare openly; alienam personam, to disguise one's self; in oculis, to be fond of, Ter. manus in praelia, to engage, Virg. acceptum et expensum, to mark down as received and spent or lent, as Dr and Cr, Cic. animus, opinio fert, inclines; tempus, res, causa fert, allows, requires.

CONFERRE benevolentiam alicui, in vel erga aliquem, to bestow; beneficia, culpam in eum, to confer, to lay; operam, tempus, studium ad vel in rem, & impendere, to apply; capita inter se, consilia sua, to lay their heads together, to consult; signa, arma, manus, to engage; omne bellum circa Coriathum, Nep. pedem, to set foot to foot; rationes, to cast up accounts; castra castris, to encamp over against one another; se in, vel ad urbem, to go to; tributa, to pay; se alicui, vel cum aliquo, to compare; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Haec conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, serve, are useful to, Quintil.

DEFERRE situlam vel sitellam, to bring the ballot-box; aliquid ad aliquem, to carry word. to tell; rarely alicui; causam ad patronos; honores ei; gubernacula reipublicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, to confer: in beneficiis ad aetarium, to recommend for a public service, Cic. aliquem ambitus, de ambitu,

ambitu, nomen alicujus ad praetorem, apud magistratum, *to accuse of bribery*: primas sc. partes ei, *to give him the preference*, Cic.

DIFFERRE vel transferre rem in annum; post bellum, diem solutionis, *to put off*; rumores, *to spread*; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se, moribus, *to differ in character*; amore, cupiditate, doloribus differri, *to be distracted or torn asunder*, Cic. & Ter.

EFFERRE fruges, *to produce*; verba, *to utter*; verbum de verbo expressum, *to translate*, Ter. pedem domo, *to go out*; corpus amplo funere, & cum funere, *to bury*; ad honorem, ad caelum laudibus, *to raise, to extol*; foras peccatum, *to divulge*.

INFERRERE bellum patriae; vim, manus, necem alicui, *to bring upon*; signa, sc. pedem, *to advance*; litem, vel periculum capitis alicui, vel in aliquem, *to bring one to a trial for his life*.

OFFERRE se morti, ad mortem, in discrimen, *to expose, to present*.

PERFERRE legem, *to carry through, to pass it*.

PRÆFERRE facem ei, *to carry before*; salutem reipublicae suis commodis, & anteferre, antepone, *to prefer*. Praelatus equo, *riding before*,

PROFERRE imperium, pomæri-

um, terminos, *to enlarge*; in medium, in apertum, in lucem, *to publish*; nuptias, diem, *to delay*; diem illo, *to defer the destruction of*, Hor.

REFERRE alicui, *to answer*; se, gradum v. pedem, *to retreat*; gratiam alicui, *to make a requital*; par pari, Ter. victoriam ab, vel ex aliquo, et reportare, *to gain*; institutum, *to renew*; judicia ad equestrem ordinem, *to restore to the Equites the right of judging*; aliquid, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad populum, *to lay before*; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, album, commentarium, &c. *to mark down*; aliquid acceptum alicui, & in acceptum, *to acknowledge one's self indebted*; pecunias acceptas & expensas, nomina vel summas in codicem accepti et expensi, *to mark down accounts*; alienos mores ad suos, *to judge of by*; in v. inter aerarios, *to reduce to the lowest class*; in numerum deorum, in vel inter deos, & reponere, *to rank among*; pugnas, res gestas, *to relate*; patrem ore, *to resemble*; amissos colores, *to regain*, Horat. od. 3, 5, 27.

TRANSFERRE rationes in tabulas, *to pass one's books, to state accounts*; in Latinam linguam, *to translate*; verba, *to use metaphorically*; culpam in eum, & rejicere, *to lay the blame on him*.

II. FIGURES of SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbāton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence, the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

1. ELLIPSIS.

ELLIPSIS is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense, as, *Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent*, scil. *homines: Dic mihi Damæta, cujum pecus*; that is, *Dic (tu) mihi, Damæta, (eam hominem) cujum pecus (est hoc (pecus))*, Virg. E. 3, 1. *Aberant bidui*, sc. *iter vel itinere*. *Decies sestertium*, sc. *centena millia*. *Quid multa?* sc. *dicam*. *Antiquum obtines*, sc. *morem, v. institutum*, Ter. And. 4, 5, 22. *Hodie in ludum occæpi ire literarium, ternas jam scio*, sc. *litteras, i. e. AMO*, Plaut. Merc. 2, 2, 33. *Triduo abs te nullas acceperam*, sc. *litteras, i. e. epistolarum*, Cic. *Brevi dicam*, sc. *sermone*: So *Complecti, respondere, &c. brevi*. *Dii meliora*, sc. *faciant*: *Rhodum volo, inde Athenas*, sc. *ire*, Id. *Bellicum, v. classicum canere*, sc. *signum*, Liv. *Civicā donatus*, sc. *coronā*; So *obsidionalem, muralem adeptus, &c.* Id. *Epistola librarii manu est*, sc. *scripta*, Cic. So in English, "The twelve," i. e. apostles; "the elect," i. e. persons.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called *ASYNDETON*; as, *Deus optimus maximus*, sc. *et*; *Sartum tectum conservare*, i. e. *sartum et tectum*; So *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit*, Cic. Cat. 2, 1. *Ferte citi flammās, date vela, impellite remos*, Virg. A. 4, 694. *Velis nolis*, sc. *seu*: *plus minus*, for *plus minusve*.

When by a Greek construction, instead of the ablative, an accusative is put after a passive verb, a participle or an adjective, with (*κατα*) *secundum* or *quod ad*, understood, it is called *SYNECDŌCHE*; as, *expleri mentem nequit*, Virg. A. 1, 713. *Deiphobum videt lacerum crudeliter ora*, ib. 6, 495. *flores inscripti nomina regum*, Id. E. 4. 106. *Adversum femur tragulā graviter ictus*, Liv. 21, 7. *qui purgor bilem sub verni temporis boram*, Hor. Art. 302. (see page 159.) The joining of two different substantives in the same case is by some reckoned a kind of *ellipsis*; having the unusual participle *ENS*, being, or the like understood: which by

the ancients was called ΕΡΕΧΕΓΕΣΙΣ. i. e. *de-claratio*, and by later grammarians, ΑΠΟΣΙΤΙΟ; as, *Anna soror, arbor laurus, Taurus mons, Homerus poeta, Socrates vir sapientissimus, &c. Tulliola, deliciola nostræ tuum munusculum flagitat, Cic. Att. 1, 8. Tungri, civitas Galliæ, fontem habet insignem, Plin. 31, 2, Corioli oppidum captum, Liv. 2, 33. Celtiberi, novus miles, diffugerunt, Id. 28, 2. Annibal peto pacem, Id. 30, 30. prope fin. Audi tu populus Albanus, (al. populus, for popule; see p. 28.) Id. 1, 24. &c.*

To the figure ELLIPSIS may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of ENALLAGE, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; ANTIPTOSIS, i. e. the putting of one case for another; HELLENISM or GRÆCISM, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; SYNESIS, i. e. referring the construction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c.—thus, *Samnitium duo millia cæsi, is, Duo millia (hominum) Samnitium (fuerunt homines) cæsi, Liv. So Servitia immemores, Liv. Monstrum quæ, scil. mulier, Hor. Od. 1, 87, 21. Scelus qui, sc. homo, Ter. Omnia Mercurio similis, scil. secundum, Virg. Missi magnis de rebus uterque, legati; i. e. Missi legati (et) uterque (legatus missus) de magnis rebus, Horat. S. 1, 5, 28. Servitia repudiabat, cujus, scil. servitii, Sall. Cat. 51. Familia nostra, quorum, &c. sc. hominum, Id. Jug. 14, 5. Concursus populi, mirantium, Liv. Illum ut vivant optant, for ut ille vivat, Ter. Populum late regem, for regnantem, Virg. Expediti militum, for milites; Classis stabat Rbegii, for ad Rbegium, Liv. Latiun Capuaque agro multati, sc. homines, Id. Utraque formosæ, sc. mulieres, Ovid. Aperite aliquis ostium, Ter. Sensit delapsus, for delapsum, sc. se esse, Virg. A. 2, 377. Vestras quisque redite domos, Ov. ep. 13, 130.*

Under the ELLIPSIS are comprehended the figures called *Zeugma*, *Syllepsis*, and *Prolepsis*.—I. ZEUGMA is, when an adjective or verb, applied to different substantives, agrees with the nearest, and is supplied to the rest; as, *et genus, et virtus, nisi cum re, vilior algæ est, Hor. S. 2, 5, 8. Utinam aut hic surdus, aut hæc muta facta sit, Ter. And. 3, 4, 5. cf. Eun. 3, 4, 3.—huc ades, ô Melibæ; coper tibi salvus, et hædi, Virg. E. 7, 9. Hic illius arma, hic currus fuit, Id. A. 1, 16. cf. 5, 343. Pene ille timore, ego risu corruï, C. Q. fr. 2, 10. Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candidus esses, Virg. E. 2. 16. Clinia servulum misit, et ego unâ nostrum Syrum, Ter. Heaut. 1, 2, 17.—SYLLEPSIS (i. e. *conceptio seu comprehensio*) is, when an adjective or verb, added to different substantives, agrees with that which is the more worthy; that is, with the masculine gender, rather than the feminine*

feminine; with the first person, rather than the second, &c. and with the plural, rather than the singular as, *Attoniti novitate pavent, manibusque supinis concipiunt Baucisque preces timidisque Philemon*, Ov. M. 8, 683. *ut templi tetigere gradus, procumbit uterque pronus bumi*, i. e. Deucalion et Pyrrha, Ov. M. 1, 375; *miscuimus lacrimas mastus, uterque suas*, i. e. CEnone et Paris, Ov. ep. 5, 46. *in magnis læsi rebus uterque sumus*, i. e. Phædra et Hippolytus, ib. 4, 114. *una dolo divum si femina vitia duorum est*, i. e. Veneris et Cupidinis, Virg. A. 4, 95. *Sustulimus manus et ego et Balbus*, Cic. Fam. 7, 5. *ipse cum fratre Capuam ad Consules adesse jussi sumus*, Cic. Att. 7, 18. (see page 208).—*Zeugma*, by some grammarians is included under *Syllepsis*.—3. PROLEPSIS is, when the parts are subjoined to the whole, in different numbers or persons from the whole, without the verb or adjective being repeated; as, *principes utrinque pugnam ciebant; ab Sabinis Mettius Curtius, ab Romanis Hostus Hostilius*, Liv. 1, 12. *exercitus hostium duo, unus ab urbe, alter a Galliâ, obsant*, Sall. Cat. 58, 6. *ego vapulando, ille verberando, usque ambo defessi sumus*, Ter. Ad. 2, 2, 5. *boni quoniam convenimus ambo, tu calamos inflare lever, ego dicere versus*, Virg. E. 5, 1. *add. Liv. 9, 27. Virg. E, 7, 2. Ter. Ad. 1, 2, 50. Ov. Ep. 13, 130.*

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

2. PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video oculis*, I see with my eyes; *Sic ore locuta est; adest præsens: Nusquam gentium; vivere vitam; servire servitutem; Quid mihi Celsus agit?* Hor. ep. 3, 15. *Fac me ut sciam, &c.* Ter. Heaut. 1, 1, 32. *Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo*, Id. Ad. 5, 8, 35. *Suo sibi succo vivunt*, Plaut.

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called POLYSYNDETON; as, *Una Eurusque Notusque ruunt*, Virg. A. 1, 85. *add. Cic. Manil. 6.*

When that which is in reality one, is expressed as if there were two, it is called HENDIADYS (*ἢ διὰ δύοιν*); as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, for *aureis pateris*, Virg. G. 2, 192.

When several words are used to express one thing, it is called PERIPHRAÏSIS; as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja*, Virg. A. 1, 565. So *urbs Patavî*, for *Patavium*, ib. 247. *Res voluptatum*, for *voluptates*, Plaut. *Usus purpurarum*, for *purpura*, Hor. od. 3, 1, 42. *genus piscium*, for *pisces*, ib. 1, 2, 9. *cum flore rosarum*, for *cum rosis*, ib. 3, 29, 3.

The annexing of a syllable or particle to pronouns, verbs, or adverbs, without adding any thing to their signification, unless perhaps a certain emphasis, is called PARELCON; as, *egomet, tute, bujusce; agedum, adesdum; agesit, videsit, capsit; quisnam, ubinam, numnam, numne, &c.*

3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are, *Anaströphè, Hystèron protèron, Hypallägè, Synchësis, Tmesis, and Parenthësis.*

1. ANASTROPHE is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra; His accensa super; Spemque metumque inter dubii;* for *contra Italiam, super his, inter spem, &c.* Virg. *Terram qol facit are, for arefacit, Lucret. 6, 962.*

2. HYSTÈRON PROTÈRON is when that is put in the former part of the sentence, which according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit, for vivit atque valet, Ter. Heaut. 3, 1, 21. add. Virg. A. 2, 353. 3, 662.*

3. HYPALLÄGE is the exchanging of cases; as, *Dare classibus austros, for dare classes austris, Virg. A. 3, 61. add. E. 3, 43.*

4. SYNCHËSIS is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus Aras; for quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus, Itali vocant Aras, Virg. A. 1, 109.* This occurs particularly in violent passion; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruorem, Ovid. Fast. ii. 841. Per vos liberos atque parentes, scil. oro vos per liberos, &c. Sallust, Jug. 14 ad fin.*

5. TMESIS is the division of a compound word, and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem subjecta trioni gens, for Septentrioni, Virg. G. 3, 381. Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere, for quæcunque, Ter. And. 1, 5, 28. Quem sors dierum cunque dabit, lucro appone, for quemcunque, Horat. od. 1, 9, 14.*

6. PARENTHËSIS is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense,

nor at all affects the construction; as, *Tityre, dum redeo,* (brevis est via), *pasce capellas,* Virg. E. 9. 23. *add.* Hor. S. 1, 1, 13.

III. ANALYSIS and TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus, in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium,* or *Darium vicit Alexander,* or *Alexander Darium vicit,* or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius.* This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd,* Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you.* But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorical*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another according to the natural order of syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorical* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order therefore to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next*, the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence: supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere, Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences; 1. *Igitur, mi (filii) Cicero, (tu) vale*, 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipsum) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mihi*: 3. *sed (tu) persuade tibi (ipsum) te fore (filium) cariorem (mihi in) multo (negotium)* 4. *si (tu) lætabere talibus monumentis*, 5. *et (si tu lætabere talibus) præceptis*.

1. Fare (*you*) well then, my (*son*) Cicero, 2. and assure (*you*) yourself that you are indeed (*a son*) very dear to me; 3. but (*assure you yourself that you*) shall be (*a son*) much dearer (*to me*), 4. if you shall take delight in such writings, 5. and (*if you shall take delight in such*) instructions.

In translating from Latin into English, the learner at first must be taught to construe the words in their natural order; but after he has made some progress, he should be accustomed to retain the arrangement of the author, unless when some difficulty or obscurity occurs.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis* as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igitur, &c.* thus,

Vale, scil. *tu*; Fare (*thou*) well: Second person singular of the imperative mood, active voice, from the neuter verb, *Valeo, valui, valitum, valere*,

valere, to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third rule of syntax.

Igitur, then, therefore, a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

Mi, voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus*, -a, -um, my; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicero*, by Rule 2. *Cicero*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicero*, -onis, a proper noun of the third declension.

Et, and, a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuade* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 60. We turn *que* into *et*, because *que* never stands by itself.

Persuade, scil. *tu*, persuade thou, second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persua-deo*, -si, -sum, -dere, to persuade; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *sua-deo*, -si, -sum, to advise: used impersonally in the passive; thus, *Persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say however in the third person, *Hoc persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

Tibi, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuade*, according to Rule 17. *Te*, accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

Esse, present of the infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum*, *sui*, *esse*, to be.

Quidem, Indeed, an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

Carissimum, accusative sing. masc. from *carissimus*, -a, -um, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus*, -a, -um, dear: Comparative degree *carior*, *carior*, *carius*, dearer, more dear: agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 2. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

Mihi, to me, dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I; governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 12.

Sed, but, an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

Fore, the same with *esse futurum*, to be, or, to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *forem*, -res, -rit, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 4. or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 60.

Multo scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus*, -a, -um, much, put in the ablative, according to observation 6. Rule 61. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

Cariorem, accus. sing. masc. from *carior*, -or, -us, the comparative of *carus*, as before: agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2. or Rule 5.

Si, if, a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mood, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60. obs. 2.

Latabere, Thou shalt rejoice, second person singular of the future of the indicative, from the deponent verb *latur*, *latus*, *latari*, to rejoice: Future, *lat-abor*, -aberis or -abere, abitur, &c.

Talibus, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis, talis, tale*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum, -ti*, neut. a monument or writing; of the second declension; derived from *moneo, -xi, -itum, ēre*, to admonish; here put in the ablative, according to Rule 49. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

Præceptis, a substantive noun in the ablative plural from the nominative *præceptum, -ti*, neut. a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, -cipere*, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *cāpio, cēpi, captum, capere*, to take. The *a* of the simple verb *capio* is changed into *i* short; thus, *præcipio, præcipis, &c.*

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflexion of nouns and verbs, in the form of questions, such as these; Of Cicero? *Cicero-nis*. With Cicero? *Cicerōne*. A dear son? *Carus filius*. Of a dear son? *Cari filii*. O my dear son? *Mi* or *meus care fili*. Of dearer sons? *Cariorum filiorum, &c.*

Of thee? or of you? *Tui*. With thee or you, *te*: Of you? *Vestrum* or *vestri*. With you? *Vobis*.

They shall persuade? *Persuadebunt*. I can persuade? *Persuadeam*, or much more frequently *possum persuadere*. They are persuaded? *Persuadetur*, or *persuasum est illis*, according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasurus*. He will be persuaded? *Persuadebitur*, or *persuasum erit illi*. He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuaderi illi*. I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi*;—that he will be persuaded? *Ei persuasum iri, &c.*

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

IV.- Different Kinds of STYLE.

The kinds of Style (*genera dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three; the low, (*humile, submissum, tenue*); the middle, (*medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum*); and the sublime, (*sublime, grande*).

But besides these, there are various other characters of style, as, the *diffuse* and *concise*; the *feeble* and *nervous*; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular assemblies; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner*; as, the style of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, of Tacitus, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity, or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to superfluity of words, or a *loose style*.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity*: 2. *Unity* and *Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected, intricate, and feeble* sentence: 3. *Harmony*, or a musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*), are distinguished by various names;

1. A BARBARISM is when a foreign or strange word.

word is made use of; as, *crostus*, for *agellus*; *rigorosus*, for *rigidus* or *severus*; *alterare*, for *mutare*, &c. Or when the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody are transgressed; as, *charus*, for *carus*; *stavi*, for *steti*; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*.

2. A SOLECISM is when the rules of Syntax are transgressed; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri*: *We was walking*, for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An IDIOTISM is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribere*, for *ego sum scripturus*; It is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum*: Or a *Latinism*, in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, for than I; *Quem dicunt me esse?* Whom do they say that I am? for *who*, &c.

4. TAUTOLOGY is when we either uselessly repeat the same words, or repeat the same sense in different words.

5. BOMBAST is when high sounding words are used without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. AMPHIBOLOGY is when by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse*. But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

V. FIGURES of RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figuræ* or *schemata*) are of two kinds; figures of words, (*figuræ verborum*), and figures of thought, (*figuræ sententiarum*). The former are properly called *Tropes*; and if the word be changed, the figure is lost.

1. TROPES OR FIGURES of WORDS.

A *Trope* (*conversio*), is an elegant turning of a word from its proper signification

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdöche*, and *Irony*.

1. METAPHOR (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is applied only from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard* heart; a *soft* temper; he *bridles* his anger; a *joyful* crop; *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we say *the morning or spring-time of life*; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an ALLEGORY. An example of this we have in Horace, book I. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

An ALLEGORY is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of Æsop. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs* (*Proverbia* v. *Adagia*); thus, *In sylvam ligna ferre*, Horat. S. 1, 10, 34.

Metaphors are improper, when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the

the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, it is called *Catachrēsis* (*abusio*); as, *a leaf of paper, of gold, &c.* the empire flourished; *parricida*, for any murderer; *Vir gregis ipse caper*, Virg. E. 7, 7. *Altum ædificat caput*, Juv. 6, 502. *Hunc vobis deridendum propino*, for *trado*, Ter. Eun. 5, 9, 57. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*, Hor. od. 4, 4, 43.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper, and the other metaphorical, it is called *Syllepsis* (*Comprehensio*); as, *Galatēa thymo mihi dulcior Hyblæ*, Virg. E. 7, 37. *imò ego Sardois videar tibi amarior herbis*, ib. 41.

2. METONYMY (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes; but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars;—1. When the cause is put for the effect; or the inventor, for the thing invented; or the author, for his works; as, *Boum labores*, for *corn*; *Mars*, for *war*; thus, *Æquo Marte pugnatum est*, with equal advantage, Liv. *Ceres*, for *grain or bread*; *Bacchus*, for *wine*; *Venus*, for *love*; *Vulcanus*, for *fire*; thus, *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*, Ter. *Furit Vulcanus*, Virg. So a *general* is put for his *army*; *Cicero*, *Virgil*, and *Horace*, for their *works*; *Moses* and the *prophets*, for their *books*; a beautiful *Raphael*, *Titian*, *Guido Rheni*, *Rembrant*, *Rubens*, *Vandyke*, &c. for their *pictures*.—2. When the effect is put for the cause; as, *Pallida mors*, *pale death*, because it makes pale; *atra curâ*, &c.—3. The container, for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary; as, *Hausit pateram*, for *vinum*, Virg. *He loves his bottle*, for *drink*: *Secundam mensam servis dispertit*, i. e. *fercula in mensa*, Nep. So *Roma*, for *Romani*; *Europe* for *the Europeans*; *Heaven*, for the *Supreme Being*; *Secernit Europen ab Afro*, for *Africa*; *In arduos tollor Sabinos*, for *in agrum Sabinorum*; *Incolumi Jove*, for *Capitolio*; *Janus*, for the temple of *Janus*, Hor. *Proximus ardet Ucalëgon*, for *domus Ucalëgontis*, Virg. So *Sergestus*, for *his ship*, Id. Æn. v. 272. ---4. The sign, for the thing signified; as, the *crown*, for *royal*

royal authority; *palma* or *laurus*, for *victory*; *cedant arma togæ*, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concedat paci*. *Ferri togæque consilia*, consultations about war and peace, *Stat. Sylv.* v. 1. 82.—5. An abstract, for the concrete; as, *Scelus* for *scelestus*, Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*, Cic. *Custodia*, for *custodes*, Virg. *Servitus*, for *servi*; *nobilitas*, for *nobiles*; *juventus*, for *juvenes*; *vicinia*, for *vicini*; *vires*, for *strong men*, Hor. *Furta*, for *stolen oxen*, Ovid. *Fast.* i. 560—6. The parts of the body, for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them; thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address*; as, *babet cor*:—*vir cordatus*, a man of sense, *Plaut.* But with us the *heart* is put for courage or affection, and the *head* for wisdom; thus, *a stout heart*; *a warm heart*; *a sound head*, &c. So, *to have a well hung tongue*, for *to speak fluently* or *with ease*, &c.

When we put what follows, to express what goes before, or the contrary, it is called *Metalepsis*, (*transmutatio*); thus, *desiderari*, to be desired or regretted, for *to be dead*, *lost*, or *absent*: So *Fuimus Troes*, & *ingens gloria Dardania*, i. e. are no more. *Virg. Æn.* ii. 225.

2. SYNECDOCHE (*Comprehensio* or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense; as,—1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary; thus, *Mortales*, for *homines*; *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arboris*: *priusquam pabula gustassent Trojæ*, *Xanibumque bilissent*, for *partem pabuli*, & *fluminis Xanibi*, *Virg. A.* 1, 473. *Natat uncta carina*, for *navis*; *ib.* 4, 398. *centum puppes*, a hundred sail, for a hundred ships; *tectum*, the roof, for the whole house; *capita* or *animæ*, for *homines*; *ungula*, for *equus* or *equi*, *Horat. Sat.* 1. 1. 114; the door or even the threshold, for the house or temple, *tum foribus divæ*, for *in templo divæ*, *Virg. A.* 1, 505. *Tempe*, for any beautiful vale, &c.—2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary; thus, *Hostis*, *miles*, *pedes*, *eques*, for *hostes*, &c. *It is written in the prophets*, for in a book of some one of the prophets; *millies*, a thousand times, for many times.—3. When the materials are put for the things

things made of them ; as, *Æs*, or *argentum*, for money ; *cera*, for vases of brass, trumpets, arms, &c. *ferrum*, for a sword ; *taurus*, for a bull's hide, Virg. *Dust thou art*, i. e. made of dust, &c.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, it is called *Antonomasia*, (*pronominatio*) ; as, the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle* ; the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero* ; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil* ; the *Wise-man*, for *Solomon* ; *Astu*, for *Athens* ; *Urbs*, the city or town, for the capital of any country ; *Pænus*, for *Hannibal* ; a *Nero*, for a cruel prince ; *Mæcenas*, for a patron of learning ; as, *Sint Mæcenates, non deerunt, Flacce, Marones, i. e. sint munifici patroni, non deerunt boni poetæ*, Martial. viii. 56. 5.

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrasis* ; as, *Peiöpis parens*, for *Tantalus* ; *Anÿti reus*, for *Socrates* ; *Trojani belli scriptor*, for *Homer* ; *Chironis alumnus*, for *Achilles* ; *Potor Rhodäni*, for *Gallus* ; *Jubæ tellus*, for *Mauritania*, Horat. &c. or by a patronymic noun ; as *Anchisiädes*, for *Æneas* ; *Tyndäris, -idis*, for *Helena*, &c. or by an epithet ; as, *Impius reliquit*, for *Æneas*, Virg. A. 4, 496. sometimes with the noun added ; as, *Fatälis et incestus judex, famosus hospes*, for *Paris*, Hor. Od. 3, 3, 19.

4. IRONY is when one means the contrary of what is said ; as, when we say of a bad poet, *he is a Virgil* ; or of a profligate person, *Tertius e cælo cecidit Cato*, Juv. 2, 40.

When any thing is said by way of bitter railery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a *SARCASM* ; as, *Satia te sanguine, quem sülsti*, Justin, 1, 8. *Hesperiam metire jacens*, Virg. A. 12, 360.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called *LITÖTES* as, *He is no fool*, for *he is a man of sense* ; *Non humilis mulier*, for *nobilis*, or *superba* ; *non indecoro pulvere*, for *decoro*, Horat. When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, it is called *Anti-phrasis* ; as, *auri sacra fames*, for *excecrabilis*, Virg. A. 3,

56. *Pontus Euxini falso nomine dictus, i. e. hospitalis*, Ovid. Tr. 3, 13, 28.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, it is called EUPHEMISMUS; as, *Vitâ functus*, for *mortuus*; *conclamare suos*, to give up for lost, Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant*; *mactare* or *ferire*, for *occidere*; *Fecerunt id servi Milonis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecerunt*, Cic. Mil. 10 f. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrâsis*.

The PERIPHRAISIS, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, it is called a *Paraphrase*.

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, it is called *Onomatopœia*, (*nominis fictio*); as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buzz* and *bum* of insects, *biss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above-mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know in general that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiore notâ Falerni*, with a glass of old *Falernian wine*: *Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion, Horat. These and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer. (A. 453 & 510.)

2. Repetition

2. REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of Words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called ANAPHŌRA; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palatii. nihil urbis vigilia, &c.* Cic. Cat. I, 1. *Te, dulcis conjux, te solo in littore secum, Te veniente die, te, decedente, canebat,* Virg. 4, 466.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called EPISTRŌPHE or *conversio*; as, *Pænos Populus Romanus justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, liberalitate vicit,* Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called SYMPLŌCK or *Complexio*; as, *Quis legem tulit? Nullus. Quis, &c. Nullus,* Cic. Rull. 2, 9.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called EPANALEPSIS; as, *Vidimus victoriam tuam præliorum exitu terminatam; gladium vaginâ vacuum in urbe non vidimus,* Cic. pro Marcello. c. 6.

The reverse of the former is called ANADIPLŌSIS or *Reduplicatio*; as, *Hic tamen vivit; vivit! imo verò etiam in senatum venit,* Cic. Cat. I, 1.

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called EPANŌDOS or *Regressio*; as, *Crudelis tu quoque mater; Crudelis mater magis, an puer imprûbus ille? Imprûbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater,* Virg. E. 8, 48.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence is called EPIZEUXIS; as, *Excitate, excitate eum ab inferis,* Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus,* &c. Id. *Me, me: adsum qui feci, in me convertite ferrum,* Virg. A. 9, 427. *Bella, horrida bello,* ib. 6, 86. *Ibimus, ibimus,* Hor. od. 2, 17. 10.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called CLIMAX or *Gradatio*; as, *Africano virtutem industriis, virtus gloriam, gloria annulos comparavit,* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called POLYPTŌTON; as, *Pleni sunt omnis libri, plena sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas,* Cic. Arch. 6. *Littora littoribus contraria, fluctibus undis impetor, arma armis,* Virg. A. 4, 628. To this is usually referred what is called SYNONYMIA, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam,* Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spendo,* Id. And also EXPOLITIO, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called ANTANACLASIS; as, *Amari jucundum est, si caveatur ne quid inquit amari,* Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the PARONOMASIA or *Agnominatio*, when the

the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonorum artium, bonarum partium; Consul pravo animo & parvo; De oratore arator factus*, Cic. *Inceptio est amantium, baud amantium*, Ter. And. 1, 3, 13. This is also called a PUN.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called *HOMOIOPOTON*, i. e. *similiter cadens*; as, *Pollat auctoritate, circumfuit opibus, abundat amicis*, Cic. If the words have only a similar termination, it is called *HOMOIOTELEUTON*, i. e. *similiter desinens*; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fertiter, & vivere turpiter*, Cic.

3. FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are, the *Hyperbole*, *Prosopopeia*, *Apostrophe*, *Simile*, *Antithesis*, &c.

1. *HYPERBOLE* is when a thing is magnified above the truth; as, when Virgil speaking of *Polyphēmus* says, *Ipsæ arduus, altaque pulsat sidera*. A. 3, 619. So, *Contracta pisces æquora sentiunt*, Hor. Od. 3, 1, 33. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinōsis*. The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast*.

2. *PROSOPOPEIA*, or *Personification*, is when we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings; or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum, Catilina, sic agit*, &c. Cic. Cat. 1, 7. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secures*, Hor. Od. 3, 2, 19. *Arbore nunc aquas culpante*, Id. 3, 1, 30.

3. *APOSTROPHE*, or *Address*, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore often joined with it; as, *Trojaque nunc stares, Priamique arx alta maneres*, Virg. A. 2, 56.

4. *SIMILE*, or *Comparison*, is when one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another; as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion*.

5. *ANTITHESIS*, or *Opposition*, is when things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in

the more striking light; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious. Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentiâ magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato, &c. Sall. Cat. 54. Ex hac parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia, &c. Cic. Cat. 2, 11.* Similar to this figure is the *Oxumōran*, i. e. *acute dictum*; as, *Amici absentes adsunt, &c. Cic. Amic. 7. Impietate pia est, Ovid. M. 8, 477. Num capti potuerit capi, Virg. A. 7, 295.*

6. INTERROGATION, (*Græc. Erotēsis*), is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form; as, *Quousque tandem, &c. Cic. Cat. 1, 1. Creditis auctos hostes? Virg. A. 2, 43. Heu! quæ me æquora possunt accipere, ib. 69.* Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectio*; as, *Quid ergo? audacissimus ego ex omnibus? minime, Cic.* Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION; (*Ecphorēsis*) as, *O nomen dulce libertatis! &c. Cic. Verr. 5, 63. O tempora, O mores! Id. Cat. 1, 1. O patria! O Divûm domus Ilium! &c. Virg. A. 2, 241.*

8. DESCRIPTION, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotypōsis*), when any thing is painted in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision*; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem videre, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. Audire magnos jam videor duces, Non indecoro pulvere sordidos, Hor. Od. 8, 1, 21.* Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. *Virg. xi. 637. &c.*

9. EMPHASIS is when a particular stress is laid on some word in a sentence; as, *Hannibal peto pacem, Liv. 30, 30. Prob! Jupiter, ibit hic! i. e. Æneas, Virg. A. 4, 590.*

10. EPANORTHOSIS, or *Correction*, is when the speaker either recalls or corrects what he had last said; as, *Filium habui, ah! quid dixi habere me? imò habui, Ter. Heaut. 1, 1, 42.*

11. PARALEPSIS, or *Omission*, is when one pretends to omit or pass by, what he at the same time declares.

12. APA-

12. **APARITHMĒSIS**, or *Enumeration*, is when what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several parts.

13. **SYNATHROISMUS**, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together; as,

Facies in castra tulissem,
Implessemque foros flammis, natumque, patremque
Cum genere extinxem, memet super ipsa dedissem,

Virg. A. 4, 604.

14. **Incrementum**, or **CLIMAX** in sense, is when one number rises above another to the highest; as, *Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, scelus verberare, parricidium necare*, Cic. Verr. 5, 66.—When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called **AUXĒSIS**, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the *Similè* and the *Climax*.

15. **TRANSITION** (*metabasis*) is when a speech is abruptly introduced; or when a writer suddenly passes from one subject to another; as, Horat. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, a *change of person* is sometimes used; as, Virg. Æn. iv. 365. &c. xi. 406. &c.

16. **SUSPENSIO**, or *Sustentatio*, is when the mind of the hearer is long kept in suspense; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. **CONCESSIO** is the yielding of one thing to obtain another; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilegus, &c. at est bonus imperator*, Cic. in Verrem, v. 1.—**PROLEPSIS**, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is when an objection is started and answered. **ANACOIKŌSIS** or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers; which is also called *Diaporēsis* or *Addubitatio*.—**LICENTIA**, or the pretending to assume more *freedom* than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering; as, *Vide quam non reformidem, &c.* Cic. pro Ligario, c. 3.—**APOSIOPĒSIS**, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete; as, *Quos ego—sed præstat motos componere fluctus*, Virg. A. 1, 135.

18. **SENTENTIA**, (*gnome*), a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in

various forms; as, *Otium sine literis mors est*, Seneca. *Adeo in teneris consuescere multum est*, Virg. G. 2, 272. *Probitas laudatur & alget*, Juv. 1, 74. *Misera est magni custodia censûs*, Id. 14, 304. *Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus*, Juv. 8, 20.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper that the learner know the parts into which a regular formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium* or *Proœmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers: 2. The *Narration* or *Explication*: 3. The argumentative part, which includes *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation* or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn, are called *Loci*, topics; and are either intrinsic or extrinsic; common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the measures of Verse, is called *PROSODY*.

Syllables, with respect to their quantity, are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short; as, *tēdērē*.

Some syllables are *common*; that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*, that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lĕgo*

Lēgo is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lēgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlēgo*, *perlēgī*; *relēgo*, *-ere*; *relēgō*, *-āre*, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short; as,

Mēus, *alius*: so *nihil*; *b* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *create*, *bebave*.

Exc. 1. *i* is long in *fiō*, *fiēbam*, &c. unless when followed by *r*; as, *fiēri*, *fiērem*; thus,

Omnia jam fiēt, fiēri quæ posse negabā, Ovid. Tr. 1, 7, 7.

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long; as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āer*, *dius*, *ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, &c. in *Pompēi*, *Cai*, and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompei* in two syllables, *Horat. Od. 11. 7, 5.*

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *obe* and *Diana* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ias*; as, *illius*, *unius*, &c. to be read long in prose: *Alius*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *alpius*; *alterius* is always short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short; as, *Danāe*, *Idāa*, *Sophia*, *Symphonia*, *Simōis*, *Hyaēs*, *Phāon*, *Democāion*, *Pygmalion*, *Thebais*, &c.

Often it is long; as, *Lycāon*, *Machāon*, *Didymāon*; *Amphion*, *Arion*, *Ixon*, *Pandion*; *Nāis*, *Lāis*, *Achāia*; *Brisēis*, *Cadmēis*; *Latōus*, & *Latōis*, *Myrtōus*, *Nerēus*, *Priamēus*; *Achelōus*, *Minōus*; *Archelāus*, *Menelāus*, *Amphiarāus*; *Āneas*, *Penēus*, *Epeus*, *Acrifionēus*, *Adaman-tōus*, *Phœbēus*, *Gigantēus*; *Darius*, *Basilus*, *Eugenius*, *Bacchius*; *Cassio-pēa*, *Cæsarēa*, *Charonēa*, *Cytherēa*, *Galatēa*, *Medēa*, *Panthēa*, *Penelopēa*; *Clio*, *Enyō*, *Elegia*, *Iphigenia*, *Alexandria*, *Thalia*, *Antiochia*,

chīa, idololatriā, litanīa, politīa, &c. Lāertes, Dēiphōbus, Dēijanīra, Trōes, herōes, &c.

Sometimes it is common; as, Chorea, platea, Malca, Nereides, canopeum, Orion, Geryon, Eos, eōus, &c. So in foreign words, Michael, Israel, Raphael, Abraham, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *us* is usually short; as, *Opbēs, Salmonēa, Casparēa, &c.* but sometimes long; as, *Idomenēa, Ilionēs, Virg.* Instead of *Elegīa, Cytherēa*, we find *Elegēia, Cysbērēia, Ovid.* But the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *sciēce, idēa.*

II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long (*by POSITION, as it is called*): as,

ārma, fallo, āxis, gāza, māior; the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bijūgus, quadrījūgus, &c.*

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

Ferte citi flammās, date velā, scandite muros, Virg. 4, 694.

But this rarely occurs.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common;

as the middle syllable in *volucris, tenebræ*, thus,

Et primo similis volūcri, nox vera volūcris, Ovid. M. 13, 605.

Nox tenēbras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro, pbarstra, podagra, chiragra, celebris, latebra, &c.*

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus, *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris, acris*, is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris, ambulārum*, is always long; because they are derived from *salus, salūtis*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *orte, ablus*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. A contracted syllable is long; as,

Nil, for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mibi*; *cōgo*, for *coāgo*; *alius*, for *alius*; *tibicen*, for *tibiicen*; *ūt*, for *uit*; *sōdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *bīgæ*, for *bijūgæ*, *scīlicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

IV. A diphthong is always long; as,

Aurum, *Cæsar*, *Eubæa*, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *præire*, *præustus*; thus,

Nec totâ tamen ille prior præeunte carinâ. *Virg. A. 5, 186.*

Stipiticibus duris agitur sudibusque præustis. *Ib. 7. 524.*

But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

— *cùm vacuus domino præiret Arion.* *Theb. 6, 519.*

In English we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel; but then there is properly no diphthong.

SPECIAL RULES.

I. Concerning the FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.

V. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vēni*, *vīdi*, *vīci*.

Except *bībi*, *scīdi* from *scindo*, *fīdi* from *fundo*, *tūli*, *dēdi*, and *stēti*, which are shortened.

VI. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vīsum*, *cāsum*, *mōtum*.

Except *sātum*, from *sēro*; *cītum*, from *cīeo*; *lītum*, from *līno*; *sītum*, from *sīno*; *stātum*, from *sisto*; *ītum*, from *eo*; *dātum*, from *do*; *rātum*, from the compounds of *ruo*; *quītum*, from *queo*; *rātus*, from *reor*.

Preterites which double the first syllable.

VII. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as,

Cēcīdi, *tētigi*, *pēpūli*, *pēpēri*, *dīdīci*, *tūtūdi*: except *cēcīdi*, from *cædo*; *pēpēdi*, from *pædo*; and when two consonants intervene; as *fēfelli*, *tētēdi*, *pēpēdi*, *mōmordi*, &c.

Other verbs of two syllables in the preterite and supine retain the quantity of the present; except *pōsui*, *pōsitum*, from *pōno*; *pōtui*, from *pōssum*; *sōlūtum* and *vōlūtum*, from *solvo* and *volvo*,

INCREASE of NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has one or more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, *rex, régis*; *sermo, sermōnis*; *interpres, interpretis*. Here *re, mo, pre,* is called the *increase* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never cremenent.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter, itineris*; *anceps, ancipitis*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, *gener, generi, generōrum*; *regibus, sermonibus, &c.*

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus, fructūs*; *res, rei*; which fall under Rule I.

Nouns of the second declension, which increase, shorten the cremenent; as, *tener, tenēri*; *vir, viri*; *duumvir, -viri*; *satur, satūri*: except *Iber, a Spaniard; Ibēri*; and its compound *Celtibēri*.

CREMENTS of the THIRD DECLENSION.

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e, i,* and *u* short; as, *Pietātis, bonōris*; *mulieris, lapidis, murmuris*.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A

A noun in A shortens *atis* in the genitive; as, *dogma, atis*; *facinus, atis*.

O

O shortens *ois*, but lengthens *ōis* and *ōnis*; as, *cardo, -ōis*; *Virgo, -ōis*; *Anio, -ōnis*; *Cicero, -ōnis*. Gentile or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macedo, -ōnis*; *Saxo, -ōnis*: So *Lingōnes, Senōnes, Teutōnes, v. -ōni, Fangiōnes, Vascōnes*. Some are long; as, *Suessōnes, Vettōnes*. *Brittones* is common; it is shortened by Juvenal, 15, 124, and lengthened by Martial, II, 21, 9.

C. I. D.

I shortens *-itis*; as, *Hydromēli, -itis*. *Ec* lengthens *-ecis*; as, *Halec, -ecis*.

A noun in D shortens the ccrement; as, *David, -idis*; *Bogval, -ūdis*.—
Ecclesiastical poets often lengthen *Davidis*.

Masculines in AL shorten *ālis*; as, *Sal, -iālis*; *Hannibal, -ālis*; *Hafdrubal, -ālis*; but neuters lengthen it; as, *animal, -ālis*.

Sōlis from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael, -ēlis*.
Other nouns in L shorten the ccrement; as, *Vigil, -iltis*; *consul, -ūlis*.

N.

Nouns in ON vary the ccrement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon, -ōnis*; *Chiron, -ōnis*. Some shorten it; as, *Memnon, -ōnis*; *Acteōn, -ōnis*.

EN shortens *inis*; as, *flamen, -inis*; *tibicen, -inis*. Other Nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *ānis*; as, *Titan, -ānis*: EN, *ēnis*; as, *Sisen, -ēnis*: IN *īnis*; as, *dolphin, -īnis*: YN *ynis*; as, *Phorcyn, -ynis*.

R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar, -āris*. Except the following, *baccar, -āris*; *jubar, -āris*; *nectar, -āris*: Also the adjective *par, -āris*, and its compounds, *impar, -āris*, *dispar, -āris*, &c.

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive, *Nar, nāris*, the name of a river; *fur, fūris*; *ver, vōris*: Also *Recimer, -ēris*; *Bymer, -ēris*, proper names: and *Ser, Sēris*; *Iber, -ēris*, names of peoples or states.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris*; as, *crater, -ēris*; *character, -ēris*. Except *ather, -ēris*.

4. OR lengthens *oris*; as, *amor, -ōris*. Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor, -ōris*; *aquor, -ōris*: Greek nouns in *tor*: as, *Heclor, -ōris*; *Actor, -ōris*; *rbetor, -ōris*. Also *arbor, -ōris*, and *memor, -ōris*.

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *aris*, masc.; as, *Casur, -āris*; *Hamiscar, -āris*; *lar, -āris*. ER *eris* of any gender; as, *aēr, -ōris*; *mulier, -ēris*; *cadāver, -ēris*; *iter*, antiently *itiner, itinēris*; *verbāis*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *uris*; as, *vultur, -ūris*; *murmur, -ūris*. YR *yris*; as, *Martyr, -yris*.

AS.

1. Nouns in AS, which have *atis*, lengthen the ccrement; as, *pietas, -ātis*; *Macēnas, -ātis*. Except *anas, -ātis*.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the ccrement; as, Greek nouns having the genitive in *adis*, *ātis*, and *ānis*; thus, *Pallas, -adis*; *artocreas, -eātis*; *Melas, -ānis*, the name of a river. So *vas, vādis*; *mas, mādis*: But *vas vāsis*, is long.

ES.

ES shortens the ccrement; as, *miles, -itis*; *Ceres, -ēris*; *pes, -pēdis*.

Except *locuples, -ētis*; *quies, -ētis*; *mansues, -ētis*; *baves, -ēdis*; *mercas, -ēdis*: also Greek nouns; as, *lebes, -ētis*; *Tbales, -ētis*.

IS.

Nouns in IS shorten the ccrement; as, *lapis, -idis*; *Sanguis, -inis*; *Phyllis, -idis*; *cinis, cinēris*; *sanguis, -inis*.

Except

Except *Glis, gliris*; and Latin nouns which have *itis*; as, *lis, litis*; *dis, ditis*; *Quiris, -itis*; *Samnis, -itis*: But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has, *Charis*.

The following also lengthen the crement: *Cecenis, -ēdis*; *Pfopbis, -īdis*; *Nefis, -īdis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also in *as*, *Salamis*, or in, *Salaminis*.

OS.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement; as, *nepos, -ōtis*; *flor, flōris*.
Except *Bis, bōvis*; *compos, -ōtis*; and *impos, -ōtis*.

US.

US shortens the crement; as, *tempus, -ōris*; *vellus, -ōris*; *tripus, -ōdis*.
Except nouns which have *ūdis, ūris*, and *-ūtis*; as, *incus, ūdis*; *ius, jūris*; *salus, -ūtis*. But *Ligur* has *Ligūris*; the obsolete *pecus, pecūdis*; and *intercus, -ūtis*.

The neuter of the comparative has *ōris*; as, *melius, -ōris*.

YS.

YS shortens *ydis* or *yds*; as, *oblamys, -ydis*, or *-yds*. and lengthens *ynis*; as, *Trachys, -yhis*.

BS. PS. MS.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *calets, -lētis*; *inops, -ōpis*; *biems, biēmis*; *anceps, aucūpis*; *Dolēpi, -ōpis*; also *anceps, ancipitis*; *biceps, bicipitis*; and similar compounds of *caput*.

Except *Cyclops, -ōpis*; *seps, sēpis*; *gypt, grypis*; *Cercops, -ōpis*; *plebs, plēbis*; *hydrops, -ōpis*.

T.

T shortens the crement; as, *caput, -itis*: so *inciput, -itis*.

X.

1. Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; as, *conjug, -ūgis*; *remex, -īgis*; *Allabrax, -ōgis*; *Pbryx, Pbrygis*. But *lex, lēgis*; and *rex, rēgis*, are long; and likewise *frūis*.

2. FX shortens *icis*; as, *vertex, -icis*: except *vibex v. vibix, -icis*.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pan, pācis*; *radix, -icis*; *vox, vōcis*; *lux, lūcis*; *Pollux, -ūis*, &c.

Except *fācis, nōcis, vīcis, prēcis, callis, cillis, pīcis, fornācis, nōvis, Capadōcis, dūcis, nūcis, crūis, trūcis, onychis, Ergeis, mastyx, -ychis*, the rosin of the lentiscus, or mastich-tree; and many others, the quantity of which can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Sypbax, -ācis*, or *-ācis*; *Sandyx, -hōis*, or *-icis*; *Bebryx, -yēis*, or *yeis*.

Increase of the Plural Number.

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increase

crease, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long; but shorten *I*, and *U*; as,

musarum, rerum, dominorum; regibus, portibus: except *bobus* or *bubus*, contracted for *bovibus*.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas, amamus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the *increase* or *cement*; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas, amabimini*; in which case it is said to have a *first, second, or third increase*.

X. In the increase of verbs. *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u*, short; as,

Amare, docere, amatote; legimus, sumus, volumus.

The poets sometimes shorten *deserunt* and *fleerunt*; and lengthen *rimus*, and *ritus*, in the future of the subjunctive; as—*transferitis aquas*, Ovid. DO with its compounds, is the only verb of the first conjugation that shortens the first cement, but not the second; as, *dare, damus, dabam*, &c. *circumdare, -amus, -atis, abum, -abamus, -abo, -arem; aris, -atur*, &c. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

REMARKS on the Quantity of the PENULT of Words.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamides, Atlantides, &c.* Unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelides, Tydides, &c.*

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS, EIS, ITIS, OIS, OTIS, INE, and ONE*, commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achais, Ptolemais, Chryseis, Aeneis, Memphitis, Latois,*

Latōis, Icdriōtis, Nerīne, Aristōne. Except *Thebāis*, and *Pboāis*; and *Nerēis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS, ICUS, IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiācus, acadēmīcus, lepidus, legitīmus*; also superlatives; as, *fortissīmus, &c.* Except *opācus, amīcus, aprīcus, pudīcus, mendīcus, postīcus, fīdus, infīdus*, (but *perfidus*, of *per* and *fides*, is short), *bīmus, quadrīmus, patrīmus, matrīmus, opīmus*; and two superlatives, *īmus, primus*.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS, ANUS, ARUS, IVUS, ORUS, OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis, urbānus, avārus, cestrīvus, decorus, arenosus*. Except *barbārus, opipārus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult; as, *agīlis, facilis, &c.* But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anīlis, civīlis, herīlis, &c.* To these add, *exīlis, subtilis*; and names of months, *Aprīlis, Quīntīlis, Sextīlis*: Except *humīlis, parīlis*; and also *simīlis*. But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, *versatīlis, volatīlis, umbratīlis, plicatīlis, fluviatīlis, saxatīlis, &c.*

6. Adjectives in *INUS* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c.; also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracīnus, crocīnus, cedrīnus, fagīnus, oleagīnus; adamanīnus, cristallīnus, crastīnus, pristīnus, perendīnus, earīnus, annoīnus, &c.*

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as, *agnīnus, canīnus, leporīnus, binus, trīnus, quīnus, austrīnus, clandestīnus, Latīnus, marīnus, supīnus, vespertīnus, &c.*

7. Diminutives in *OLUS, OLA, OLUM*; and *ULUS, ULA, ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as, *urceolus, filiōla, muscōlum; lectūlus, ratiuncūla, corcūllum, &c.*

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidatīm, virītīm, tribūtīm*. Except *affatīm, perpētīm, and statīm*.

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second and third person is the penult; as, *esūrio, esūris, esūrit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio, ligūris; scatūrio, scatūris, &c.*

PENULT of PROPER NAMES.

The following proper names lengthen the penult. *Abdēra, Abūdus, Adōnis, Æfopus, Ætōlus, Ahāla, Alarīcus, Alcīdes, Amīclax, Andronīcus, Anū-*

Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Aristīdes, Aristobūlus, Aristogiton, Arpinum, Artabānus; Brachmānes, Busiris, Buthrōtus; Cethēgus, Chalcedon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Curētes; Darici, Demonicus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri; Ebūdes, Eriphyle, Eubūlus, Euclides, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Eurīpus, Euxīnus; Gargānus, Gētulus, Granicus; Heliogabālus, Henricus, Heraclīdes, Heraclītus, Hippōnax, Hispānus; Irēne; Lacýdas, Latōna, Leucāta, Lugdūnum, Lycōras; Mandāne, Mausōlus, Maximīnus, Meleāger, Mefsāla, Mefsāna, Milētus; Nasīca, Nicānor, Nicētas; Pachynus, Pandōra, Pelōris, & -us, Pharsālus, Phēnice, Polites, Polyclētus, Polynices, Priāpus; Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonice, Suffētes; Tigrānes, Thessalonica, Verōna, Verōnica.

The following are short: Amāthus, Amphipōlis, Anabāsis, Anticyra, Antigonus, & -ne, Antilochus, Antiōchus, Antiōpa, Antipas, Antipāter, Antiphānes, Antiphātes, Antiphīla, Antiphon, Anytus, Apūlus, Arcopāgus, Arimīnum, Armēnus, Athēsis, Attālus, Attica; Bitūrix, Bructēri; Calaber, Callicrātes, Callistrātus, Candāce, Cantāber, Carneādes, Cherīlus, Chrysofōmus, Cleombrōtus, Cleomēnes, Corýcos, Constantinopōlis, Cratērus, Cratylus, Cremēra, Crustumēri, Cybēle, Cyclādes, Cyzicus; Dalmātæ, Damōcles, Dardānus, Dejōces, Dejotārus, Democritus, Demīpho, Didymus, Diogēnes, Drepānum, Dumnōrix; Empedocles, Ephēsus, Evēgētes, Eumēnes, Eurymēdon, Euripylus; Fucinus; Geryōnes, Gyārus; Hecyra, Heliopōlis, Hermiōne, Herodōtus, Hesiodus, Hesiōne, Hippocrātes, Hippotāmos, Hypāta, Hypānis; Icārus, Icētas, Illýris, Iphirus, Ismārus, Ithāca; Laodice, Laomēdon, Lampsacus, Lamýrus, Lapithæ, Lucretīlis, Libānus, Lipāre, v. -a, Lyfīmāchus, Longimānus; Marāthon, Mænālus, Marmarica, Massagētæ, Matrōna, Megāra, Melītus, & -ta, Metropōlis, Mutīna, Mycōnus; Nēocles, Neritos, Noricum; Omphale; Patāra, Pegāfus, Pharnāces, Pifistrātus, Polydāmus, Polyxēna, Porfēua or Porfenna, Praxitēles, Putēoli, Pylādes, Pythagōras; Sarmātæ, Sarsīna, Semēle, Semirātuis, Sequāni, & -a, Serīphos, Sicōris, Socrātes, Sodōma, Sotādes, Spartācus, Sporādes, Strongyle, Stymphālus, Sybāris; Taygētus, Telgōnus, Telemāchus, Tenēdos, Tarrāco, Theophānes, Theophīus, Tomýris; Urbicus; Venēti, Vologēsus, Volūsus; Xenocrātes; Zoīlus, Zopyrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batāvi*, Lucan. *Batāvi*, Juv. & Mart. *Fortuitus*, Horat. *Fortuitus*, Martial. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables; but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*, Stat. *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *præfolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity, there is no certain authority.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

XI. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musă*, *templă*, *Tydeă*, *lampădă*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musă*, *Ænēă*; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*, as, *O Ænēă*, *O Pallă*.

A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as *Amā, frustrā, prætereā, ergā, intrā*.

Exc. *Itā, quā, ejā, postea, putā*, (adv.) are short; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contra, ultra*, and the compounds of *gintā*; as, *trigintā, &c.* *Contra* and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

E.

XII. *E* in the end of a word is short; as,

Natē, sedilē, patrē, currē, nempē, antē.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *mē, tē, sē*; except these enclitic conjunctions, *quē, vē, nē*; and these syllabical adjections, *ptē, cē, tē*; as, *suaptē, bujusce, tutē*; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long; as, *Calliōpe, Anchisē, fidē*. So *rē* and *diē*, with their compounds, *quarē, bodiē, pridiē, postridiē, quotidie*: Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetē, melē, Tempē*; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, *Docē, manē*; but *cave, vale, and vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placidē, pulchrē, valdē*, contracted for *validē*: To these add *fermē, ferē, and obē*; also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as *doctissimē, fortissimē*: But *benē* and *malē, infernē, supernē*, are short.

I.

XIII. *I* final is long; as, *Dominī, patrī, docerī*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short; as, *Alexī, Amaryllī*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase, is common; as, *Pallādi, Minōidi*.

Mibi, tibi, sibi, are also common: So likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi*; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicūī, sicūbī* and *necubī*, are always short.

O.

XIV. *O* final is common; as, *Virgo, amo, quando*.

Exc.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō*: The dative and ablative sing. of the second declension is long; as, *librō, dominō*: Also Greek nouns, as, *Didō, Sapphō*, and *Atbō* the genit. of *Atbos*; and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falso, paulō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō*; likewise *illō, idcircō, citrō, retrō, ultrō*.

Exc. 2. The following words are short; *Egō, sciō, cedō*, a defective verb, *homō, citō, illicō, immō, duō, ambō, modō*, with its compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, postmodō*: but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in *DO* in Virgil is long; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

U and Y.

XV. *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as,

Vultū: Moly.

B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. *B, D, L, R, and T*, in the end of a word, are short; as, *ab, apud, semel, precor, caput.*

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nīl*; *pār* and its compounds, *impar, dispar, &c.*; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr*; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr*; likewise *aēr, æther*: to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb, Daniël*: but *David, Bogud, &c.* are common.

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short: as, *Militūm octo*, Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *milit' octo*, except in compound words; as, *circūmagō, circūmeo.*

C, N.

XVII. *C* and *N*, in the end of a word, are long; as, *āc, sic, illūc; en, splen, non &c.*

So Greek nouns in *n*; as, *Tītān, Sirēn, Salamīn; Æneān, Anchisēn, Circēn; Lacedæmōn, &c.*

The following words are short, *nēc* and *donēc*; *Forsitān, in, forsān, tamēn, ān, vidēn*; likewise nouns in *en* which

have *īnis* in the genitive; as *carmĕn*, *crimĕn*; also the nom. and accus. sing. of Greek nouns in *on*, when written with a small *o* (*ο μικρον*;) as, *Ilion*, *Pylon*, *Erotion*; and the accusative, if the termination of the nominative be short; as, *Maiān*, *Ægīnān*, *Orpheōn*, *Alexīn*, *Ibīn*, *chelŷn*: so the dative plural in *sin*; as, *Arcāsīn*, *Troāsīn*.

The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. *AS, ES, and OS*, in the end of a word, are long; as, *Mās*, *quiēs*, *bonōs*.

The following words are short, *anās*, *ēs*, from *sum*, and *penēs*; *ōs*, having *ossis* in the genitive, *compōs*, and *impōs*; also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations: as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās*, *herōās*, *Pbrygēs*, *Arcadōs*, *Tenēdōs*, *Mēlōs*, &c. and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increasing short; as, *Alēs*, *bebēs*, *obsēs*. But *Cerēs*, *pariēs*, *ariēs*, *abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, ŶS.

XIX. *IS, US, and ŶS*, in the end of a word, are short; as,

Turrīs, *legīs*, *legīmŷs*, *annŷs*, *Capŷs*.

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us*, are long; as, *Pennīs*, *librīs*, *nobīs*, *omnīs*, for *omnes*, *fructŷs*, *manŷs*: also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portŷs*. But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is short; as, *florībŷs*, *fructībŷs*, *rebŷs*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *ītis*, *īnis*, or *entis*; as, *līs*, *Samnīs*, *Salamīs*, *Simōis*: To these add the adverbs *grātis* and *forīs*; the noun *glīs*, and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has, *ītis*; as, *audīs*, *abīs*, *possīs*. *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is lengthened by Ovid, *Fast.* 1, 17. but is always shortened by Horace, *od.* 4, 7, 20. *Sat.* 1, 4, 41. 2, 3, 220. 2, 6, 39. *Art.* 47.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grus*, *sŷs*: also nouns which in the genitive have *ūrīs*, *ūdīs*, *ūtīs*, *untīs*,

or *ōdis*; as, *tellūs*, *incūs*, *virtūs*, *Amātbūs*, *tripūs*. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension ending in *o*; as, *Cliūs*, *Sapphūs*, *Mantūs*; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, *Panthūs*:—so *Iēsūs*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcȳs* or *Phorcȳn*, and *Trachȳs* or *Trachȳn*.

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common;

Or, as some think, necessarily long on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

The QUANTITY of DERIVATIVE and COMPOUND Words.

1. DERIVATIVES.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

<i>Amicus</i> , from	<i>āmo</i> .	<i>Decōro</i> , from	<i>decus</i> , -ōris.
<i>Audiōnor</i> ,	<i>audiō</i> , -ōnis.	<i>Exūlo</i> ,	<i>exul</i> , -ūlis.
<i>Audiōro</i> ,	<i>auctor</i> , -ōris.	<i>Pāvidus</i> ,	<i>pāveo</i> .
<i>Audītor</i> ,	<i>auditum</i> .	<i>Quirīto</i> ,	<i>Quiris</i> , -ītis.
<i>Auspīcor</i> ,	<i>auspex</i> , īcis.	<i>Radicītus</i> ,	<i>radix</i> , -īcis.
<i>Caupōnor</i> ,	<i>caupo</i> , -ōnis.	<i>Sospīto</i> ,	<i>sospes</i> , -ītis.
<i>Compētitor</i> ,	<i>compētītum</i> ,	<i>Nātura</i> ,	<i>nātus</i> .
<i>Cornīcor</i> ,	<i>cornix</i> , -īcis.	<i>Māternus</i> ,	<i>māter</i> .
<i>Custōdio</i> ,	<i>custos</i> , -ōdis.	<i>Lēgebam</i> , &c.	<i>lēgo</i> .
<i>Decōrus</i> ,	<i>decor</i> , -ōris.	<i>Lēgetam</i> , &c.	<i>lēgi</i> .

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Long from short.

<i>Dēni</i> , from <i>dēcem</i> .	<i>Suspicio</i> , from <i>suspīcor</i> .	<i>Mōbilis</i> , from <i>mōveo</i> .
<i>Fōmes</i> , <i>fōveo</i> .	<i>Sēdes</i> ,	<i>Hūmor</i> ,
<i>Hūmanus</i> , <i>hōmo</i> .	<i>Sēcius</i> ,	<i>Jūmentum</i> ,
<i>Rēgula</i> , <i>rēgo</i> .	<i>Pēnuria</i> ,	<i>Vox</i> , <i>vōcis</i> ,
		<i>vōco</i> , &c.

2. Short from long.

<i>Ārena</i> and <i>ārista</i> , from <i>āreo</i> .	<i>Lūcerna</i> , from <i>lūceo</i> .
<i>Nōta</i> , and <i>nōto</i> ,	<i>Dux</i> , -ūcis,
<i>Vādum</i> ,	<i>stābilis</i> ,
<i>Fīdes</i> ,	<i>Dītio</i> ,
<i>Sōpor</i> ,	<i>Quāfillus</i> ,
	<i>qualus</i> , &c.

2. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them ; as,

Dēdūco, of *dē* and *dūco*. So *prōfēro*, *antēfēro*, *consōlor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpecūlor*, *deprāvo*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *enōdo*, *ērūdio*, *exsūdo*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incēro*, *inhūmo*, *investigo*, *prāgrāvo*, *prānāto*, *rēgēlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *prāgrāvīs*, *dēsōlo*, *suffōco* & *suffōco*, *diffidit* from *diffido*, and *diffidit* from *diffido*, *indīco-āre*, and *indīco-ēre*, *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*, *effōdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect ; so *exēdit* and *exēdit* ; *devēnit* and *devēnit* ; *devēnimus* and *devēnimus* ; *reperīmus* and *reperīmus* ; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity ; as, *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo* ; *incīdo*, from *in* and *cādo* ; *suffōco*, from *sub* and *faux*, *faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule ; as, *ādmitto*, *pērcello*, *dēosculor*, *prōhibeo*.

Exc. *Agnitum*, *cognitum*, *dējēro*, *pējēro*, *innūba*, *pronūba*, *maledīcus*, *veridīcus*, *nībilum*, *semisōpītus* ; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dīco*, *hīlum*, and *sōpio* : *ambītus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long ; but the substantives *ambītus* and *ambītio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Obs. 1. The preposition *PRO* in Greek words, for *ante*, before, is short ; as, *prōphēta*, *prōlōgus* : *PRO* in Latin words is long ; as, *prōdo*, *prōmitto*, &c. but it is short in the following words : *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōnepos*, *prōneptis*, *prōfestus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfānus*, *prōfecto*, *prōcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage ; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful : *propāgo*, to propagate ; *propīno*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūro*, and *Proserpīna*.

Obs. 2. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long ; as, *sēpāro*, *dīvello* : except *dīrimo*, *dīsertus*. *Re* is short ; as, *rēmītto*, *rēfēro* : except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Obs. 3. *I* and *O*, in the end of the former compound-word, are usually shortened ; as, *Caprīcornus*, *omnīpōtens*, *agrīcōla*, *signīfico*, *bīformis*, *alīger*, *Trīvia*, *tubīcen*,
vatīcinor,

vaicinor, architectus, bimeter, trimeter, &c. duodecim, hodie, sacrosanctus, Arctophylax, Argonauta, bibliotheca, philosphus, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quidam, quivis, tantidem, eadem, &c.* And when the compounding words may be taken separately; as, *ludimagister, lucrifacio, siquis, &c.*—or when a contraction is made by *Crisis* or *Syncopè*; as, *trigæ*, for *trijugæ*; *ilicet*, for *ire licet, &c.*—So in the compounds of *dies*, as, *bidium, tridium, meridies, pridie, postridie*; but the second syllable is sometimes shortened in *quotidie & quotidianus*. *Idem* in the masc. is long, (in the neuter short;) also *ubique, ibidem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

O is lengthened in the compounds of *intro, retro, contro*, and *quando*; as, *inroduco, intromitto, retrcedo, retrgradus, contrroversus, contrroversia, quandoque, quodocunque*; but *quandquidem* has the second syllable short. *O* is also long in *aliouquin, ceterouquin, utrobique*: So likewise in Greek words, written with a large *o* or *ω* *μετρα*; as, *geometra, Minotaurus, lagopus*.

Obf. 4. *A* in the former compounding part of a word is long; as, *quare, quapropter, quacunque*: So *trado, traduco, trano*, for *transdo, &c.*—*Eadem* is short, except in the abl. sing. *eadem*.

E is short; as, *nefas, nefastus, nefandus, nefarius, neque, nequeo, tredicim, trecenti, equidem, selibra, valdico, mudefacio, tefefacio, patefacio, &c. bujusmodi, ejusmodi*—Except *semicim, semodius, nequis, nequam, nequitia, nequando, nemo, credo, memet, mecum, tecum, secum; veneficus, videlicet*.

U also is short; as, *ducenti, dupondium; quadrupes, centuplum, Trojgæna, cornupeta*: but *judico* is long.—*Y* likewise in Greek words is short; as, *Polydorus, Polydamas, Polyphemus, dorjpborus*.

ACCENT.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphasis*.

There

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [']; as, *próseq̄uor*, *prósecute*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice or keeps it in its natural tone; and is thus marked [`]; as, *doctè*. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

3. The *circumflex* accent first raises, and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable; and is therefore placed only upon long syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [^]; as, *amáre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as in these adverbs, *aliquò*, *continuò*, *doctè*, *unà*, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poctà*, *glorià*, in the ablative: *fructús*, *tumultús*, in the genitive: *nostrúm*, *vestrúm*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos*: *ergò*, on account of; *occídís*, he flew; *Pompíli*, for *Pompilii*; *amáris*, for *amaveris*, &c.

VERSE.

A VERSE is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, than to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. Feet of two syllables.

Spondēus, consists of two long ; as, *ōmnēs*.
Pyrrhichius, two short ; as, *dēūs*.
Iambus, a short and a long ; as, *āmāns*.
Trochæus or *Chorēus*, a long and a short ; as, *sērvūs*.

2. Feet of three syllables.

Dactylus, a long and two short ; as, *scrībērē*.
Anapæstus, two short and a long ; as, *piētās*.
Amphimæcer, a long, a short, and a long ; as, *cbārītās*.
Tribrächys, three short ; as, *dōmīnūs*.

The following are not so much used.

<i>Moloffus</i> ,	<i>dēlēctānt</i> .	<i>Antispastus</i> ,	<i>Ālēxāndēr</i> .
<i>Amphibrachys</i> ,	<i>bōnōrē</i> .	<i>Ionicus minor</i> ,	<i>prōpērālānt</i> .
<i>Bacchius</i> ,	<i>dōlōrēs</i> .	<i>Ionicus major</i> ,	<i>cālcarībūs</i> .
<i>Autibacchius</i> ,	<i>pēllūntūr</i> .	<i>Præon primus</i> ,	<i>tēmpōrībūs</i> .
		<i>Præon secundus</i> ,	<i>pōtētīā</i> .
		<i>Præon tertius</i> ,	<i>ānimāiūs</i> .
		<i>Præon quartus</i> ,	<i>cēlētās</i> .
<i>Procleusmaticus</i> ,	<i>bōmīnībūs</i> .	<i>Epitritus primus</i> ,	<i>vōlūptātēs</i> .
<i>Dispondēus</i> ,	<i>ōrātōrēs</i> .	<i>Epitritus secundus</i> ,	<i>pænitentēs</i> .
<i>Dijambus</i> ,	<i>āmanītās</i> .	<i>Epitritus tertius</i> ,	<i>dīscōrdiās</i> .
<i>Choriambus</i> ,	<i>pōntificēs</i> .	<i>Epitritus quartus</i> ,	<i>fōrtūnatūs</i> .
<i>Dichorēus</i> ,	<i>Cāntillēnā</i> .		

3. Feet of four syllables.

Procleusmaticus, *bōmīnībūs*.
Dispondēus, *ōrātōrēs*.
Dijambus, *āmanītās*.
Choriambus, *pōntificēs*.
Dichorēus, *Cāntillēnā*.

SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectus* or *Acatalecticus*, an *Acatalectic* verse : If a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalecticus* ; if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalecticus*, or *Hypermeter*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio* or *Clausula*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee ; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees ; as,

Lūdērē

Lūdĕrĕ | quæ vĕl- | lĕm cālā- | mō pĕr- | mīſīt ā- | grĕſſī. *Virg.*
 Infān- | dūm Rē- | gīnā, jū- | bĕs rĕuō- | vārĕ dō- | lōrĕm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic*; as,

Cārā Dĕ- | ūm ſōbō- | lĕs mā- | gnūm Jōvis | īncrĕ- | mĕntūm. *Virg.*

This verse is used, when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omniā | Mĕrcūrī- | ō ſimī- | lis vō- | cĕmquĕ cō- | lōrĕmque.
 Et flavos crines ————— *Virg.*

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately; as,

Ludere quæ vellem calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*
 Pinguis et ingrata premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees; as,
 Tityre tu patulæ recubans sub tegmine fagi.

It is esteemed a great beauty in an Hexameter verse, when by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*
 Illi inter sese magnâ vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*
 Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.
 Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention, in scanning Hexameter verse, is the *CÆSURA*.

Cæsura is, when after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

At rē-gīnā grā-vī jām-dūdum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse, in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimeris*: When on the fifth half foot, or the syllable after the second

cond foot, it is called *Penthemimēris*: When it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half foot, it is called *Hepthemimēris*: and when on the ninth half foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Enneēmimēris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse; as,

Illē lā-tūs nīvē-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs hŷā-cīnthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice, in reading an hexameter verse thus composed: whence they call it the *Cæsural pause*; as,

Tityre dum rede-O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long; as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Without this a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose; as,

Rōmæ mōniā tērrūt impīgēr Hännibāl ārmīs, *Ennius.*

The ancient Romans in pronouncing verse paid a particular attention to its melody. They observed not only the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense.—All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth, an anapæstus; as,

Nātū-

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr sē- | mīnā quīf- | quē sūæ. *Propert.*
 Cārmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pūs In ōmī- | nē mēis. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a Cæsura; the latter, always of two dactyles and another Cæsura: thus,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr | sēmīnā | quīfquē sū- | æ.
 Cārmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs In | ōmnē mē- | īs.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadēan verse consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē- | nās ātāvīs | ēdītē rē- | gībūs. *Hor. Od. 1, 1, 1.*

But this verse may be more properly measured thus: In the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a Cæsura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæce- | nas ata- | vis | edite | regibus.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvīs | quæ tībī crē- | dītūm. *Horat. Od. 1, 3, 5.*

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles; thus,

Navis | quæ tibi | creditum.

5. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet, viz. a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intē- | gēr vī-tæ, scēlē- | risquē | pūrūs. *Horat. Od. 1, 22, 1.*

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and spondee; as,

Jūpītēr | ūrgēt. *Horat. ibid. v. 20.*

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, dactyle, and spondee; thus,

Nigrīs | æquōrā | vēntīs. *Horat. Od. 1, 5, 7.*

7. PHA-

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet, namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Sūmmūm | nēc mētū- | ās dī- | ēm, nēc | ōptes. *Martial.* 10, 47 f.

8. *The* GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic*, consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsura, then two dactyles; as,

Virtūs | rēpūl- | fæ | nēscīā | sōrdīdæ.

Intā- | minā- | tīs | fūlgēt hō- | nōribus, *Hor. Od.* 3, 2, 17.

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a Cæsura; as,

Nēc sū- | mīt, aūt | pōnīt | sēcū- | ōēs, *Horat. ibid.*

10. *The* LESSER ALCAIC.

The lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbitrī- | ō pōpū- | lārīs | aūrae, *ibid.*

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured; such as the dactylic, trochaic, anapestic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimeter*; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimeter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet

A a

were

were considered only as one measure in iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Inār- | sīt ae- | stūō- | sūs. *Horat.*

Trimeter, Sūs | ēt ī- | psā Rō- | nā vī- | ribus | rūit. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Cānīdī- | ā trā- | āvīt | dāpēs. *Horat.*

Vidē- | rē prōpē- | rāntēs | dōmūm. *Id.*

Trimeter, Quōquō | scēlē- | tī rūī- | tīs aut | cūr dēx- | tēris. *Id.*

Pāvīdūm- | quē lepō- | r' aut ād | vēnām | lāquōō | grūēm. *Id.*

Alitī | būs āt- | quē cānī- | būs hōmī- | cīd'Hē- | āōrēm.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter* or *Octonarius*.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*; *Systöle*, and *Diastöle*.

1. **SYNALOEPHA** is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Cōnticū- | ēr' om | nēs in- | tētī- | qu' ōrā tē- | nēbānt.

The *Synalæpha*, is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ō*, *heu*, *ab*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei*; as,

O pater, ō hominum, Divūmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. *Virg.*
 Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. *Id.*
 Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto.
 Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam.
 Glauco et Panopææ, et Inoo Melicertæ.

2. ECTHLIPSIS is, when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! *Perf.*
 thus,

O cū- | rās hōmī- | n', ō quān- | t' est in | rēbūs in- | anē.

Sometimes the Synalœpha and Ecthlipsis are found at the end of the verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque
 Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*
 Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum
 Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit*; *r' Ardua*.

3. SYNÆRESIS is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as *Phæthon* for *Phæthōn*. So *ei* in *Thesei*, *Orphei*, *deinde*, *Pompei*; *ui* in *huic*, *cui*; *oi* in *proinde*; *œd*, in *aured*; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. *Ovid.*
 Proinde tons eloquio, solitum tibi,—*Virg.*
 Filius huic contrâ, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*
 Auræâ percussam virgâ, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antebac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *decrit*, *vehemens*, *anteit*, *eodem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianimis*, *semibomo*, *fluviorum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c. as,

Unâ eademque viâ sanguisque animusque ferentur. *Virg.*
 Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*
 Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*
 Divitis uber agri, Troiæque opulenta decrit. *Virg.*
 Vehemens et liquidus puroque finillimus amni. *Hor.*
 Te semper anteit dira necessitas. *Alcaic. Hor. od. I, 35, 17.*
 Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*
 Cum refluit campis, & jam se condidit alveo. *Id.*
 Inde ubi venere ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*
 Bis patriæ cecidere manus: quin protinus omnia. *Id.*
 Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*

Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Virg.*
 Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*
 Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*
 Inde legit Capreus, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as in *genva*, *tennis*, *arjetat*, *tenvia*, *abjete*, *pitvita*, *parjetibus*, *Nasidjenus*; for *genua*, *tenuis*, &c. as,

Propterea quia corpus aquæ naturaque tennis. *Lucr.*
 Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*
 Arjetat in portas & duros objice postes. *Id.*
 Velleraque ut foliis depestant tennis Sere. *Id.*
 Ædificant, sectæque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*
 Præcipuè sanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. *Hor.*
 Parjetibusque premunt arcis, & quatuor addunt. *Virg.*
 Ut Nasidjeni jovit te cœna beati. *Hor.*

4. DIÆRËSIS divides one syllable into two; as, *aulai*, for *aulæ*; *Troïæ*, for *Trojæ*; *Persæus*, for *Perseus*; *miluus*, for *milvus*; *solvit*, for *solvit*; *volvit*, for *volvit*; *aquæ*, *suetus*, *suasit*, *Suevos*, *relanguit*, *reliquas*, for *aquæ*, *suetus*, &c. as,

Aulai in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*
 Stamina non ulli dissolvenda Deo. *Pentam. Tibullus.*
 Debuerant fufos evoluisse tuos. *Id. Ovid.*
 Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*
 Cum mihi non tantum fureque seræque suctæ. *Horat.*
 Atque alios alii irident, Veneremque fudent. *Lucr.*
 Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Suevos. *Lucan.*
 Imposito fratri moribunda relanguit ore. *Ovid.*
 Reliquas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. *Lucr.*

5. SYSTÖLE is when a long syllable is made short; as the penult in *tulerunt*; thus,

Matri longa decem tulerunt fastidia menses. *Virg. E. 4, 61.*

6. DIASTÖLE is when a syllable usually short is made long; as the last syllable in *amor*, in the following verse;

Confidant, si tantus amor, et mœnia condant. *Virg. A. 11, 323.*

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called PROSTHĒSIS; as, *gnavus*, for *navus*; *tetūli*, for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called EPENTHĒSIS; as, *relligio*, for *religio*: *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called PARAGŌGE; as, *dicier* for *dici*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called APHÆRĒSIS; as, *natus*, for *gnatus*; *tenderant*, for *tetenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called SYNCŌPE; as, *dixti*, for *dixisti*; *deūm*, for *deorum*: If from the end, APOCŌPE; as, *viden'*, for *videsne*; *Antōnī*, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called METATHĒSIS; as, *pistris*, for *pristis*; *Lybia*, for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another, it is called ANTITHĒSIS; as, *faciundum*, for *faciendum*; *olli*, for *illi*; *voltis*, for *vultis*.

Different kinds of POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem*, (*Poema* vel *Carmen*).

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an EPITHALAMIUM; on a mournful subject, an ELEGY or LAMENTATION. In praise of the Supreme Being, a HYMN; in praise of any person or thing, a PANEGYRIC or ENCOMIUM; on the vices of any ode, a SATIRE or INVECTIVE; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an EPITAPH, &c.

2. A short poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an ODE, whence such compositions are called *Lyric Poems*: A Poem in the form of a letter is called an EPISTLE; a short witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an EPIGRAM; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit in the end of an Epigram, is called its *Point*. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an ÆNIGMA or RIDDLE.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an ACROSTIC; as the following on our Saviour:—

I nter cuncta micans I gniti sidera cal I,
 E xpellit tenebras E toto Phœbus ut orb E;
 S ic curas removet IESVS caliginis umbra S,
 V ivificansque simul V ero præcordia mot V
 S olen iustitiæ S efe probat esse besti S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, Historical, Didactic, or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle); and Descriptive.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral poems* or BUCOLICS, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

Combination of VERSES in POEMS.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satires and Epistles, Ovid in his Metamorphoses, Lucan, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use Hexameter verse: Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly in those which are called Lyric poems, as the odes of Horace; and, in modern times, the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, MONOCOLON, sc. *poema*, v. *carmen*; or MONOCŌLOS, sc. *ode*; that which has two kinds, DICOLON; and that which has three kinds of verse, TRICOLON.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called DICOLON DISTRŌPHON; as when a single Pentameter

meter is alternately placed after an HEXAMETER, which is named *Elegiac verse*, (*carmen Elegiacum*), because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegēia, solve capillos;
Ah! nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit. *Ovid.*

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the *Metamorphoses*; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicolon Tristrophon*; when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetraströphon*; as, when after three *Sapphic* verses an *Adonian* verse is subjoined,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus ædii; caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ. *Horat.*

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricolon Tristrophon*; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetraströphon*; as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic, which is named *Carmen Horatianum*, or *Horatian verse*, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cælum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;
Cætusque vulgares, et udam
Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

Different Kinds of VERSE in HORACE and BUCHANAN.

I. ODES and PSALMS of one kind of Verse.

1. *Asclepiadæan*, See N^o 3. page 276. Hor. I. 1. IV. 8. III. 30.—Buch. Ps. 28, 40, 80.

2. *Choriambic*

2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, consisting of a spondee, three choriambuses, and a pyrrhichius or iambus : Hor. I. 11, 18. IV. 10.

3. *Iambic trimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 17.—Buch. Ps. 25, 94, 106.

4. *Hexameter*, N° 1. Hor. Satires and Epistles.—Buch. Ps. 1, 18, 45, 78, 85, 89, 104, 107, 132, 135.

5. *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11.—Buch. Ps. 13, 31, 37, 47, 52, 54, 59, 86, 96, 98, 117, 148, 149, 150.

6. *The Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8.—Buch. Ps. 26, 29, 32, 49, 61, 71, 73, 143.

7. *Trochaic*, consisting of seven trochees and a syllable ; admitting also a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the first, third, fifth, and seventh foot ; and in the even places, a tribrachys, spondee, dactyl, and anapestus.—Buch. Ps. 105, 119, 124, 129.

8. *Anapestic*, consisting of four anapestuses, admitting also a spondee or dactyl ; and in the last place, sometimes a tribrachys, amphimacer, or trochee.—Ps. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iambuses and a syllable ; in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapestus, and also a tribrachys.—Ps. 131.

II. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadæan*, N° 4. and 3.—Hor. I. 3, 13, 19, 36. III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV. 1, 3.—Buch. Ps. 14, 35, 43.

2. Every first line, (*Dactylico-Trochaic*), consisting of the first four feet of an hexameter verse, then three trochees or a spondee for the last ; every second verse (*Iambic Archilochian*) consisting of an iambus or spondaeus, an iambus, a cæsura, and then three trochees.—Hor. I. 4.

3. The first line, *Hexameter* ; and the second, *Alcmanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of an hexameter. Hor. I. 7, 28. Epod. 12.—Buch. Ps. 4, 111.

4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimacer : Every second line,
Choriambic

Choriambic Alcaic, consisting of epitritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius. Hor. I. 8.

5. The first line, (*Trochaic*), consisting of three trochees and a cæsura; or of an amphimacer and two iambuses. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, N^o 9. Hor. II. 18.

6. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second (*Dactylic Archilochian*), two dactyls and a cæsura. Hor. IV. 7.—Buch. Ps. 12.

7. The first line, *Iambic Trimeter*; and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, N^o 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.—Buch. Ps. 3, 6, 10, 21, 22, 27, 34, 38, 39, 41, 44, 48, 53, 62, 74, 76, 79, 87, 92, 110, 112, 115, 120, 127, 133, 134, 139, 141.

8. The first line, *Iambic Dimeter*; the second (*Sapphic*) consists of two dactyls, a cæsura, and four iambuses, admitting also a spondee, &c. But this verse is commonly divided into two parts; the first, the latter part of a pentameter, N^o 2. and the second, iambic dimeter, N^o 11. Hor. Epod. 11.

9. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 81.

10. *Hexameter*, and *Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16. Buch. Ps. 2, 20, 24, 57, 60, 69, 83, 93, 95, 97, 108, 109, 118, 126, 136, 147.

11. The first line, *Sapphic*, N^o 5. and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, N^o 11. Buch. Ps. 8.

12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*. Buch. Ps. 33, 70, 121, 142.

13. *Iambic Trimeter* and *Pentameter*. Buch. Ps. 36, 63.

14. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second line, the three last feet of an hexameter, with a long syllable or two short syllables before. Buch. Ps. 68.

15. *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*, or *Elegiac* verse. Buch. Ps. 88, 114, 137.

16. The first line, (*Trochaic*), three trochees and a syllable, admitting sometimes a spondee, tribrachys, &c. The second line, *Iambic Dimeter*, N^o 11. Buch. Ps. 100.

III. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The

1. The three first lines, *Sapphic*, and the fourth, *Adonian*, N^o 5. Horat. Carm. I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. IV. 2, 6, 11. *Carmen Secul.*—Buch. Ps. 5, 17, 51, 55, 65, 67, 72, 90, 101, 103.

2. The three first lines, *Asclepiadēan*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*: Hor. Carm. I. 6, 15, 24, 33. II. 22. III. 10, 16. IV. 5, 12.—Buch. Ps. 23, 42, 75, 99, 102, 144.

3. The two first lines, *Ionic Trimeter*, consisting of three *Ionici minores*; the third line *Ionic Tetrameter*, having one *Ionicus minor* more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two first lines have four trochees, admitting, in the second foot, a spondee, dactyl, &c. The third line, the same; only wanting a syllable at the end. Buch. Ps. 66.

5. The three first lines, *Glyconian*, N^o 4. admitting also a spondee, or iambus in the first foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, N^o 6. Buch. Ps. 116, 122, 128.

IV. ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The two first lines, *Asclepiadēan*, N^o 3. the third line, *Pherecratian*, N^o 6. and the fourth, *Glyconian*, N^o 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5, 14, 21, 23. III. 7, 13, IV. 13.—Buch. Ps. 9, 64, 84, 130.

2. The first two lines, *the Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N^o 8. The third, *Archilochian Iambic*, N^o 9. The fourth, *the Lesser Alcaic*, N^o 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37. II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 7, 11, 15, 19, 30, 46, 50, 56, 58, 77, 82, 91, 123, 125, 140, 146.

3. The first line, *Glyconian*; the second, *Asclepiadēan*; the third a spondee, three choriambuses, and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch. Ps. 16.

4. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*; and the third, two dactyls and a syllable; Hor. Epod. 13.—Buch. Ps. 138. Sometimes the two last verses are joined in one or inverted; as, Buch. Ps. 145.

ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of syllables in English verse is not precisely ascertained. With regard to this we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monosyllables are generally either long or short, as occasion requires. And in words of two or more syllables, the accented syllable is always long.

Of English verse there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank verse*.

In rhyme the lines are usually connected two and two, sometimes three and three in the final syllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*, three lines, a *Triplet*.

In blank verse similiarity of sound in the final syllables is carefully avoided.

In measuring most kinds of English verse we find long and short syllables succeeding one another alternately; and therefore the accents should rest on every second syllable.

The feet by which English verse is commonly measured, are either *Iambic*, *i. e.* consisting of a short and a long syllable; as, *ălōft, crēate*: or *Trochaic*, *i. e.* consisting of a long and a short syllable; as, *bōlŷ, lofiŷ*. In verses of the former kind the accents are to be placed on the even syllables; in the latter, on the odd syllables. But the measure of a verse in English is most frequently determined by its number of syllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

I. IAMBIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of four syllables, or of two feet; as,

With ravish'd ears,
The monarch hears. *Dryden.*

2. Of six syllables, or of three feet; as,

Aloft in awful state,
The godlike hero sat. *Dryden.*

3. Of eight syllables, or of four feet; as,

While dangers hourly round us rise,
No caution guards us from surprize. *Francis' Horcet.*

4. Of ten syllables, or of five feet; which is the common measure of heroic and tragic poetry; as,

Poetic fields encompass me around,
And still I seem to tread on classic ground;
For here the Muse so oft her harp has strung,
That not a mountain rears its head unstrung, *Addison.*

Obs. 1. In measures of this last sort, we sometimes find the last line of a couplet or triplet stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verse: thus,

A needless Alexandrine ends the song,
Which, like a wounded snake, drags its slow length along. *Pope.*

Waller was smooth; but Dryden taught to join
The varying verse, the full resounding line,
The long majestic march, and energy divine. *Pope.*

We also find the last verse of a triplet stretched out to fourteen syllables, or seven feet, but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verse before it; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant flow'rs is dress'd;
For thee the ocean smiles, and smooths her wavy breast,
And heav'n itself with more serene and purer light is blest. *Dryden.*
Sometimes also when there is no Alexandrine before it; thus,

At length by fate to power divine restor'd,
His thunder taught the world to know its lord,
The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. *Rowe.*

Obs. 2. The more strictly iambic these verses are, the more harmonious. In several of them, however, particularly in those of ten syllables, we often meet with a trochee, and likewise a spondee, instead of an iambus. Verses of heroic measure sometimes also admit a dactyle, or an anapestus, in place of the iambus; in which case a verse of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen syllables; thus,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14

And many an humorous, many an amorous lay

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

Was sung by many a Bard on many a day.

This manner of writing every syllable fully is now generally used by the best poets, and seems much more proper than the ancient custom of cutting off vowels by an apostrophe. Our language abounds too much in consonants of itself: the elision of vowels therefore should be avoided as much as possible, and ought only to be admitted where it is absolutely necessary; as, *o'er* for *over*; *e'er* for *ever*, &c. The same observation may be applied to every kind of measure.

II. TROCHAIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of three syllables; as,

Dreadful gleams,
Difnal screams, &c. *Pope.*

2. Of

2. Of five syllables; as,

In the days of old,
Stories plainly told,
Lovers felt anney.

3. Of seven syllables; as,

Fairest piece of well form'd earth,
Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Waller.*

These are the measures which are most commonly used in English poetry, especially those of seven, eight, and ten syllables.

We have another measure very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be called *Anapestic* measure, *i. e.* a verse consisting of feet of three syllables, two short, and one long, in which the accent rests upon every third syllable. Verses of anapestic measure consist of two, three, or four feet; that is, of six, nine, or twelve syllables; thus,

Let the loud trumpets sound,
'Till the roofs all around,
The shrill echoes rebound. *Pope.*

From the plains, from the woodlands, and groves,
How the nightingales warble their loves! *Shenstone.*

May I govern my passions with absolute sway,
And grow wiser and better, as life wears away. *Id.*

In this measure, a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot; as,

The sword or the dart
Shall pierce my sad heart. *Addison.*

Ye shepherds so cheerful and gay,
Whose flocks never carelessly roam, &c.

I vow'd to the muses my time and my care,
Since neither could win me the smiles of the fair. *Shenstone.*

These measures are variously combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in short poems; for generally in longer works the same measure is always observed.

Stanzas are composed of more or fewer verses, and these variously diversified, according to the nature of the subject, and the taste of the poet. But when they are stretched out to a great length, and consist of verses of many different measures, they are seldom agreeable.

Such poems as consist of Stanzas, which are not confined to a certain number of verses, nor the verses to a certain number of syllables, nor the rhymes to a certain distance, are called *Irregular*, or *Pindaric odes*. Of this kind are several of the poems of Cowley. But in the odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the strophes regular.

Stanzas of four lines are the most frequent, in which the first verse answers to the third, and the second to the fourth. There is a stanza of this kind, consisting of verses of eight and of six syllables alternately, which is very often used, particularly in sacred poetry. Here for the most part the second and fourth lines only rhyme together; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,
My rising soul surveys:
Transported with the view, I'm lost,
In wonder, love, and praise. *Addison.*

Sometimes also the first and third lines answer to one another; as,

Keep silence, all created things,
And wait your Maker's nod:
The muse stands trembling while she sings
The honours of her God. *Watts.*

This stanza is used in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verses, each consisting of fourteen syllables, having a pause after the eighth syllable.

Several of these measures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional short syllable at the end of the verse; as,

1. *In heroic measure, or verses of ten syllables, both in blank verse and rhyme.*

In Blank verse.

'Tis heav'n itself that points out an hereafter. *Addison.*

In Rhyme, where it is called Double Rhyme.

The piece, you think, is incorrect? Why, take it,
I'm all submission; what you'd have it, make it. *Pope.*

2. *In verses of eight syllables.*

They neither added nor confounded,
They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In*

3. *In verses of six syllables.*

'Twas when the seas were roaring,
 With hollow blasts of wind,
 A damsel lay deploring,
 All on a rock reclin'd. *Gay.*

4. *In verses of seven syllables.*

As Palemon, unsuspecting,
 Prais'd the sly musician's art;
 Love, his light disguise rejecting,
 Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. *Stevenson.*

5. *In verses of three syllables.*

Glooms inviting,
 Birds delighting. *Addison.*

6. *In the Anapestic measure.*

Ah! friend, 'tis but idle to make such a pother.
 Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. *Stevenson.*
 Now with furies furrounded,
 Despairing, confounded. *Pope.*

Double rhyme is used chiefly in poems of wit and humour, or in burlesque compositions.

Verses with double endings, in blank verse, most frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect; thus,

I here devote thee for my prince and country;
 Let them be safe, and let me nobly perish. *Thomson.*

The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,
 Darknefs inclos'd, and the winds whistled round me. *Owen.*

APPENDIX I.

Of Punctuation, Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, and the Division of the Roman Month.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,) ; *Semicolon* (;) ; *Colon* (:); *Period*, Punctum, or full stop (.) .

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence.—The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part, or subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence in this way of considering it. For the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod* or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the *Colon*, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end ; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon, the colon double of the semicolon ; and the semicolon, double of the comma.

There are other points which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice, in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?) the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!) and the *Parenthesis* (). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon,

colon, a colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parentthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other marks made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are, the *Apostrophe* ('); *Asterisk* (*); *Hyphen* (-); *Obelisk* (†); *Double Obelisk* (‡); *Parallel Lines* (||); *Paragraph* (¶); *Section* (§); *Quotation* (" "); *Crotchets* [] ; *Brace* (}); *Ellipsis* (. . . or —); *Caret* (^); which last is used only in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a smaller letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*; M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*; S. C. *Senatus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*; a silver coin, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books, A. D. marks *Anno Domini*; A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicinae Doctor*; LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextus*; Cos. *Consul*; Coss. *Consules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Imp. p. *Imp. ratores*.

In like manner, in English, Esq; *Esquire*; Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*; e. g. *exempli gratiâ*; v. g. *verbi gratiâ*.

Capitals were used by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters*. I. denoteth *one*, V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred*. By the various combination of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what it stands for to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

A thousand is marked thus, CIO. which in latter times was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IO. or, by contraction, D.

The annexing of O to IO. makes its value ten times greater; thus, IOO. marks *five thousand*; and IOOO. *fifty thousand*.

The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of O to the number of CIO. makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIOO. denotes *ten thousand*; and CCCIOOO. *a hundred thousand*. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIOOO, CCCIOOO. signified *two hundred thousand*, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn

drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus, $\overline{\text{III}}$ denotes *three thousand*; $\overline{\text{X}}$ *ten thousand*.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters or *figures*, which, from the ten fingers of the hands, were called *Digits*; 1 *one*, 2 *two*, 3 *three*, 4 *four*, 5 *five*, 6 *six*, 7 *seven*, 8 *eight*, 9 *nine*, 0 *nought*, *nothing*. The first nine are called *Significant figures*. The last is called a *Cypher*.

Significant figures placed after one another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left; thus,

8. Eight. 85 Eighty-five. 856 Eight hundred and fifty-six. 8566 Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times; thus,

1 One. 10 Ten. 100 A hundred. 1000 A thousand.

2 Two. 20 Twenty. 200 Two hundred. 2000 Two thousand.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two*.

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together; *CIC, ICCCXCVIII.* or *M, DCCXCVIII.* 1798.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the *Nones* fell upon the seventh day, and the *Ides* on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis* or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.*

The

The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante*; or, *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus*, or *Decembris*: The day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante*: The day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked, *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris*: The day before the nones, *Pridie Non. Dec. &c.* and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap-year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMQUE, NOVEMQUE tricenos;
 Unam plus reliqui; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;
 At si bissextus fuerit, superadditur unus.
 Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse kalendas.
 SEX MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
 Quatuor at reliqui; dabit idus quilibet octo.
 Omnes post idus luces dic esse kalendas,
 Nomen fortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April*, *June*, *September*, and *October*, was marked XVIII. *Kal.* of the following month; the 15th, XVII. *Kal. &c.* The 14th day of *January*, *August*, and *December*, XIX. *Kal. &c.* So the 16th day of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. *Kal. &c.* And the 14th day of February, XVI. *Kal. Martii* or *Martias*. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

APPENDIX II.

Containing RULES from RUDDIMAN'S Grammar, which will be found explained in the Pages of this Book that are marked before each Rule.

I. Concerning the GENDER of NOUNS.

Names of males and females, &c. p. 10.

1. QUÆ maribus solum tribuuntur, mascula funto.
 Esto femineum, quod femina sola reposcit.
 Sit commune duûm, sexum quod signat utrumque.

Names of brute animals. p. 11.

1. Multa quibus sexus promiscuus, unaque vox est,
 Nomina sunt quorum genus est à fine petendum.

Names of Months and Winds, p. 12.

Menses cum Ventis generi conjunge virili.

Names of Rivers and Mountains, p. 12.

Masculum Fluvii nomen Montisque reponè ;
 Sæpe tamen norma est finalis syllaba utrique.

Names of Countries and Cities, p. 12.

Jungito femineis nomen Regionis & Urbis,
 Præcipuè quod in *n* ternæ fit, *us* sive secundæ.
 Est *Tuder* atque *Argos* neutrum, quibus adjice *Gadir*.
 Rariùs hic *Marathon* capit, & *Pharsalus*, *Abydos*.
 Masculæ in *us* ternæ, *Pontus*, *Sasynque*, *Canopus*,
 Atque *Tunes*, *Tecmon*. Hic, at hoc vult sæpius *Anxur*.
 Cætera turba suos fines plerumque sequuntur.

Names of Ships and Poems, p. 12.

Femineum Naves genus atque Poëmata quærent.

Names.

Names of Trees, p. 12.

1. Arbor femineis dabitur: sed mas *oleaster*,
 Et *rbamnus*: petit hic potius *cytisusque rubusque*:
 Hic quandoque *larix*, *lotus* volet, atque *eupressus*:
 Hoc quod in *um*, *uberque*, *filer* dant, *robur acerque*.

Nouns in A of the first declension, p. 13. and 18.

2. Hæc dat A quod primæ est; sed neutrum *Pascha* requirit
Hadria mas æquor, pariterque *cometa*, *planeta*,
 Mascula & interdum *talpam damamque* videbis.

Nouns in US and OS. p. 27, 39, and 48.

4. Nomen in US mas est, seu quartæ five secundæ.

Hæc *domus* & *vannus*, pro fructu *ficus*, et *alvus*;
 Sic *humus* atque *manus* poscunt: *acus* addito quartæ,
Porticus atque *tribus*. Capit hoc *virus pelagusque*.

Nomen in OS Græcum, quod in US mutare Latini
 Sæpè solent, normam sequitur plerumque virilem;
 Feminæ sed multa petunt: ut *abyssus*, *eremus*,
Antidotusque, *pbarus*, *dialectus*, *carbafus*: adde
 Ex *odos* & *pbthongos* genitum, quæque à generali
 Voce genus plantæ et gemmæ capiunt muliebri.

Hic aut hæc donant *balanus*, *specus*, atque *phaselus*,
Barbitus, atque *penus*, *grössus*: sed *grus*, *atomusque*
 Feminæ potius cupiunt; *colus* adde, virile
 Quod rarè invenies: muliebri at contra *camelus*
 Est ubi nonnunquam videas. Vult hic dare *vulgus*,
 Sed magis hoc. Ternæ *specus* & *penus* addito neutris.

Vocative Singular in all the Declensions, p. 9.

Est primo quintus similis. Sed Græcus *s* aufert
 Sæpe; velut *Thoma*, *Tbesu*, *Panthu*, *Pari*, *Palla*.

Vocative of Nouns in the Second Declension. p. 19 & 27

US si rectus habet casus, per *e* vertito quintum.
 At *populus* dat & *us*. DEUS immutabile perstat.

Filius i *Genius*que petunt, in *IUS*que Latina
 Propria. Sed quintum, doctas imitatus Athenas,
 Servat in *US* recto similem quandoque Poëta.

Nouns of the Third Declension in A, E, I, and Y, p. 29. and 30.

Sit neutri generis per *A* quicquid tertia flectit.
 Hæc petit *E* primæ, neutrum deposcit *E* ternæ.
 Dant quibus *I* fines, *Y* vel *U*, sunt omnia neutra.

Nouns in O. p. 30 31.

Hic dat *O* : femineis *halo* cum *caro* dantur & *echo* ;
 Quæque in *IO*, seu sint verbo, seu nomine nata,
 Rem (numeris demptis) aliquam sine corpore signant.

Adjice femineis *DO*, *GO* : sed mascula *cudo*,
Harpago, sic *ordo*, simul *udo*, *tendo*, *ligo*que.
 Rarius hæc *margo* vati est, hic sæpe *cupido* :
Arrabato cum *cardo*, muliebria vix imitanda.

C and *L*. p. 32. rule 3.

Quod fit in *L*. vel *T*, *C*, vel *M**, neutralibus adde :
 Masculæ *sol*, *mugil*, seu *sal*, quod rarius hoc vult.

N. p. 32. rule 4.

Masculæum capit *N*. Finita in *men* dato neutris,
 Quæque secunda creat, cum *gluten* & *inguen* & *ungen* :
 Addideris *pollen*. *Sindon* petit hæc & *aëdon* :
Alcyonem junges, data postea queis comes *icon*.

AR and *UR*. p. 33. rule 5.

Postulat *AR* neutrum : sed masculæum *solar* optat.
 Hoc dat *UR*. Hic *furfur* capiet, cum *vulture* *turtur*.

ER and *OR*. p. 33. rule 6.

ER capit hic. Neutrum plantæ fructusve requirunt :
 At *tuber* hic fructus ; *tuber* quemcunque tumorem
 Significans neutrale petit ; cumque *ubere* *spinter*,
Verque, *cadaver*, *iter*. Dabit hic aut hæc tibi *linter*.

Hic

* *M* is not a termination of nouns in the third declension, but only in the second ; see p. 19.

Hic dat OR. Hæc arbor: cor, adorque hoc, maris
& æquor.

AS. p. 34. rule 7.

AS petit hæc. Neutrum est *vas, vasis*, queisque Pelasgi
Dant *atis* in patrio: quibus *antis* masculo funto.

AS partesque dabis maribus; sit at *uncia* dempta.

ES. p. 34. rule 8.

Hæc dabit ES. Capiant *ales* hic hæcve, *palumbes*,
Atque *dies*; sed mas proles: mas *poples* & *ames*,
Fomes, pes, paries, palmes, cum *limite stipes*,
Queis addes *trames, termes*, cum *gurgite cespes*;
Et quæ fonte fluunt Græcio; sed neutra capessunt
Hippomanes, panaces, nepenthes, sic racoëthes.

IS. p. 36. rule 9.

IS dabo femineis. Sunt mascula *piscis* & *axis*,
Glis, callis, vermis, vectis, mensis, cucumisque,
Mugilis & *postis* cum *sanguine fascis* & *orbis*,
Fustis item *collis, caulisque* & *follis* & *ensis*,
Serpentemque notans *cenchrus*, cum *vomere, torris*,
In NIS finitum Latium, *lapis, unguis, aqualis*.

Hic aut hæc *fnis, clunis*, cum *torque canalis*,
Dant *serobis*, ac *anguis*: *corbis* muliebre præoptat;
Masculo potius gaudent *pulvis, cinis, amnis*.

OS. p. 38. rule 10.

Os maribus detur. Sunt neutra *chaos, melos, os, os*:
Postulat hæc *arbor, cos, dos*, & origine Græcâ
Orta *eos, arctos, perimetros* cum *diametro*.

US. p. 38. rule 11.

Postulat US neutrum, quoties id tertia flectit.

Femineum voluere *palus, subsclusque, satiusque*,
Quæque *senex, juvenis*, cum *servio*, nomina formant,

Et *Virtus, incus*. At mascula sunt *lepus & mus*,
Et *pus* compositum: petit at muliebri *lagopus*.

YS. ÆS. and AUS. p. 39. rule 13.

Nomen in YS Græcum est, genus et sibi feminineum vult.

Æs neutrale petit: *laus, fraus*, muliebri funto.

S with a consonant before it. p. 40. rule 14.

S dato femineis, si consona ponitur ante.

Mascula sed *pons, fons, mons, seps*, dum denotat anguem;
Et queis P præit S polysyllaba, *forcipe* dempto,
Densque, chalybs, cum *gryphe, rudens*, quod rariùs hæc
vult.

Hic aut hæc *serpens* dat, *scrobs, stirps* truncus, *adepsque*.
Dans *animans* genus omne, tamen muliebri præoptat.

X. p. 41. rule 16.

Hæc petit X. *Ax, ex* maribus polysyllaba iunge:
Dic tamen hæc *fornax, smilax, carex*, velut *halax*,
Et cum prole *panax, & forfex* atque *supellex*.

Mascula funto *calix, phœnix*, pro *vermeque bombyx*,
Et *coccyx, fornix, & onyx* vas, aut lapis unde
Vas fit; *oryx, tradux, grex* his adijunge *calyxque*.
Femineo interdum data *tradux* cum grege cernes.

Hæc modò femineis, maribus modò iuncta videbis;
Calx pro parte pedis metâve laboris, & *hystrix*,
Imbrix; *sardonyxem* jungas, *rumicem, silicemque*:
Hic magè vult *cortex & obex*, cum *pumice, varix*:
Hæc potiùs *limax, lynx, & cum sandice perdis*:
Atriplici neutrum meliùs dabo quàm muliebri.

II. RULES concerning the OBLIQUE CASES.

Dative Singular of the third Declension, p. 40.

Exit in *i* ternus casus; per *e* flexus et olim.

The Accusative Singular of the Third Declension, p. 43.

Finit in EM quartus. Petit *im* sibi *ravis, amuffis, Vis cucumisque simul, iuffis, fitis atque sinapis, Cannabis & gummis, buris, conjunge mepbitim. Adde urbes, aliosque locos, amnesque, deosque, IS* quibus est recto: sed & hæc dant *in* quoque quarto.

Sæpius *im* *turris, puppis, cum reste securis: Em, sed & im* quandoque, volunt sibi *febris aqualis, Et navis, pelvis, clavis; sic lens, strigilisque, Sementisque cutis. Cumulant* his plura vetusti.

Impurè in patrio casu crescentia Græca,
Sæpe & *Tros, Minos, heros,* quartum per *a* formant:
EUS *ea* vult. Vix *em* dato *Pan,* cumque *æthere delphin*

Ablative Singular. p. 44.

Sextus *e* vult: quibus at rectus per E clauditur *i* dant,
(Propria ni fuerint:) AL & AR neutralia junge.
Deme *jubar, sal, far, par* fixum, *nectar & hepar.*
Sed solet has leges migrare licentia vatum.

I quoque dant *in* & *im* tantum facientia quarto.
Cannabis at Bætis, Tigris, voluistis utrumque.
Im quibus in quarto est, *ye* dant, aut *m* modo demunt.

Dant *e* vel *i* sexto, queis quartus in *em* vel in *im* sit.
Excipe sed *restis,* quod *e* semper, cum *cute,* donat.
I magè *sementis, strigilis* petit atque *securis.*
Quod simul *im* vel *idem* format, capit *i* sibi raro.

Hæc quoque dant *e* vel *i:* *fnis, cum rure, supellex, Occiput & veltis:* per UBI cum quaeritur, *urbes, Et pugil, & mugil,* jungas. Per *e* sæpius effer,
I raro, *civis, classis, fors, anguis, & ignis.*
Ufus plura tulit priscus, quæ respuit ætas
Cultior. *I* tantum sexto retinet *canalis.*

Genitive Plural. p. 45.

Præbet *ium* patrius, si sextus in *i* fuit antè.
Tolle *vigil, vetus, uber, inops, supplexque, memorque,*
Mugilis,

*Mugilis & confors, quibus & pugil & celer adde ;
Atque gradus medios ; (sed ium plus poscit.)* Adhærent
His composita *genus, capio, facioque, caputque.*

Sextus e si tantum dederit, capit *um* genitivus.
AS sed *ium* Latiale petit : polyfyllaba deme,
Queis magis *um* placuit. Sed *ium* quærentibus adde
Nomen in IS vel in ES non crescens : jungito & NS :
Tolle *parens, vates, panis, juvenisque, canisque.*

Donat *ium* *Samnis, linter, caro, dos, & os ossis,
Glis, nix, noxque cohors, mus, faux, uter* : adde *Quiritem,*
Atque *larem, licem, cotem, cor* ; compositumque
Uncia, quod simul *as* genuit ; monofyllaba junte
Consona quæ duplex claudit. *Bos* ritè *boum* dat.

Plural Cases of the Fourth Declension, p. 48.

Primus pluralis cum quarto semper in *us* fit,
Dat genitivus *um*. Per *ibus* tibi tertius exit.
Factus unus, specus, artus, acus, dant & lacus, arcus,
Atque *tribus* : sed utrumque *genu, portusque, veruque,*

RULES concerning the Gender of DEFECTIVE NOUNS,
p. 50, 51. &c.

Adjecto neutris quodcumque inflexile nomen.
Literæ amant neutrum ; sic pars pro nomine sumpta ;
Et verbum quodvis pro nuda voce repositum.

GENDER of PLURAL NOUNS.

I, Æ, A, & F. pluralis.

I maribus plurale dabis : muliebre sed Æ vult :
Ast A & E Græcum, cupiunt neutralibus addi.

In reliquis primo numero primæ categoriæ
Recto, animo qualem vocum natura reposcat,
Concipito talem : sic à *prece* *prex* tibi forma :
Hic dat *caste* tamen, dat & *impeto* ; *verbere* vul non
Hic *vepre*m, *pecudis* capit hæc ; hæc postulat *Idus*.
Cetera sunt alio melius memoranda libello.

RULES concerning the Declension of COMPOUND NOUNS

Compositum simplexque modo flectuntur eodem.

Demitur *exsanguis*, nec non *Capricornus* & *angiportus*, & *orta manus*; quæ pluraque postea dicam.

Compound nouns are declined like the simple nouns of which they are compounded; as, *bipes*, adj. two-footed, *bipedis*; like *pes*, *pedis*, m. foot:—except *exsanguis*, *is*, adj. bloodless, dead; *capricornus*, *i*, m. the figure of a Capricorn; *angiportus*, *us* & *i*, m. a narrow lane; *unimanus*, *i*, m. that has one hand; *longimanus*, *i*, that has long hands; &c.

Rectum in compositis tantum variato: priorem Immotum *alteruter* crebro tenet, ac *olusatrum*.

The nominative only of a compound noun is declined, whether in one or in both of its parts; as, *juris-peritus*, *juris-periti*, *juris-perito*, &c. a lawyer; so, *tribunus-plebis*, a tribune of the commons; *senatus-consultum*, *i*, a decree of the senate, &c. *res-publica*, *rei-publicæ*, *rem-publicam*, &c. the common wealth, a republick; *jurjurandum*, *jurisjurandi*, &c. an oath &c.—except, *alter-uter*, adj. *alter-utrius*, *alter-utri*, &c. and sometimes *alterius-utrius*, *alteri-utri*, &c. any one of two; *olus-âtrum*, *olus-atrî*, &c. and sometimes, *olêris-atrî*, the herb alifander.

RULES concerning ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives wanting the Positive. p. 71.

Hæc viduata gradu sunt pauca sequentia primo;
Ultimus, *ulterior*; *prior*, & *primus*; *propiorque*,
Proximus; *ceyor* atque *ocysimus* adjiciantur:
Deterior jungi quibus & *deterimus* ambit.

Adjectives wanting the Comparative. p. 71.

Nuperus, orba gradu medio, *novus* ac *meritus* sunt;
Par, *sacer*, *invidus*, *persuasus*, & *inclutus* adde.

Adjectives wanting the Superlative. p. 71.

Hæc superante carent: *satur*, & *diurnus*, & *ingens*,
Atque *senex*, *juvenis*, *adolescens*, *pronus*, *opimus*;
Et finita BILIS propè cuncta, vel ILIS, & ALIS:
Cum multis aliis quæ nunc describere longum est.

Adjectives wanting the Positive and Superlative. p. 71.

Anterior solum, *sequior*, *fatiorque* leguntur.

VERBS of the THIRD CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE;
and some wanting also the PRÆTERITE, p. 113.

SCO. p. 114.

————— *Disco*
Vult *didici* primam geminans; sic *posco, poposci*;
Dispescit, compescit UI dant; cuncta supinis
Orba. Nihil *glisco*, nihil Inceptiva creârunt.

UO. p. 113.

Nulla supina dabunt *metuo, pluo, congruo*, sicut
Annuo, cum *fociis*; quibus *ingruo, respuo* junges.

DO. p. 116.

Tundo facit *tutudi, tunsun*, compositaque *tusum*.
Et *cado* vult *cecidi casum*; sed nata supinum
(*Incido* si *demas, recido*, simul *occido*), spernunt.
Præterito DI *strido, rudo*, dant, absque supinis,
Sidoque, sed soboli *sedeo* dat mutuo *fedi*.

GO. p. 118.

————— Nil *vergo* capeffit.
XI *clango, ningo*, dat et *ango*, supinaque nulla.

VERBS of the FOURTH CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE,
p. 124.

Cæcutit, gestit, glocit, & dementit, ineptit,
Nulla supina dabunt, cum *prosilit* atque *ferocit*.

DEPONENT VERBS wanting the PARTICIPLE PER-
FECT. p. 128.

Nil formant *vescor, liquor, medeor, reminiscor*,
*Irascor, ringor, prævertor, diffiteor*que:
Queis demum adjungas *divertor, dequefetiscor*,

Verbs wanting the first person singular. p. 134.

Dor, furo, fur, der, fer, vix unquam suscipit usus.

but shorten words
comp. own. with
 V. RULES concerning the QUANTITY of SYLLABLES, &c. *nr*

I. Concerning FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

A vowel before another. p. 257.

Vocalem breviant aliâ subeunte Latini.

Ni capit *r*, *fo* produe: & nomina quintæ

E servant longum, si præsit *i*, ceu *speciëi*.

Aneeps *ius* erit patrio: sed protrahe *alius*.

Alterius brevia tantum; commune fit *obe*,

Pompëi, *Cai*, produe, conformia jungens.

Dianam varia: longa *aër*, *dus*, & *ebcu*,

Et patrius primæ cum sese solvit in *ei*.

Hic Græci variant, nec certâ lege tenentur.

A vowel long by position. p. 258.

Si postponatur vocali consona bina,

Aut duplex, longa est positu: sin utraque vocem

Incipiat, rarò præeunti est ultima longa.

A vowel before a mute and a liquid. p. 258.

Si mutæ liquida est subjuncta in syllabâ eâdem,

Quæ brevis antevenit vocalis, redditur aneeps.

Hauc tamen in prosa semper breviam memento.

Sunt *l*, *r*, liquida, queis rarò jungimus *m*, *n*.

Contracted Syllables and Diphthongs. p. 258 & 259.

Vocalem efficiet semper contractio longa.

Diphthongum produe in Græcis atque Latinis;

In Græcis semper: at *PRÆ* composita sequente

Vocali brevia; veluti *præit* atque *præustus*.

Preterites and Supines. p. 259.

Præterita assumunt primam dissyllaba longam.

Tolle *libit*, *scidit*, & *fidit*, ac *tulit*, ortaque *do*, *sto*.

Præteritum geminans primam, breviabit utramque,

Ut *pario*, *peperi*; vetet id nisi consona bina.

At quod *cedo* creat tardat, ceu *pedo*, secundam.

Cuncta Supina tenent primam dissyllaba longam :
Præter nata *fero, cieo, lino, cum sino, sisto,*
Quæ breviant ; *eo, doque, ruo, queo* junge, *reor*que.

Cætera præsentis mensuram verba reseruant.
Excipe sed *posui positum, genui genitum*que,
Et *potui* ; quæ dant quoque *solvo & volvo* supina.

Præ tum vocalem polysyllaba cuncta supina
Producunt, *atum, quibus, etum finis, & utum* :
Ivi præterito veniens sociabis & *itum*.

Cætera corripies in *itum* quæcunque residunt.
In *rus* participi semper penultima longa est.

The INCREASE of NOUNS.

The CREMENTS of the first, fourth, and fifth Declensions.
p. 260.

Vocalis numero coëat nisi bina priore,
Casibus obliquis non crescunt nomina primæ,
Nec quæ quarta dedit, dedit aut inflexio quinta.

The CREMENTS of the second Declension. p. 260, &c.
Quæ sequitur primam tantum producit *Iberi*.

The CREMENTS of the third Declension. p. 260.
Semper A curtat *atis* ternæ : sit *dogmatis* index.

O breviabit *inis* : sed porrigit *enis & onis*.
Mensuram variant at in his gentilia quædam.

I breve mittit *itis*. Sed ab *ec* producitur *ecis*.

In D crementum breve nomina pauca tulerunt.

AL mas curtat *alis* : sed neutrum protrahit *alis*.
Elis cum *Solis* produc ; reliquis breviatis.

ON nimis incertum est : EN *inis* rape : cætera produc.

Aris ab AR neutro produc : sed demito *bacchar*,
Par cum compositis, *jubar* his cum *neflare* jungens.
Protrahe *Nar, Naris, furis, veris, Recimeris,*
Byzer, Ser, & Iber, in ter Græcum, *æthere* dempto.

Oris ab *OR* longum est : cum neutris corripere Græca.
Arboris & *memoris* brevies, indiſtaque cuncta.

Atis ab *AS* tardant, *anatis* niſi, quæque Latina.
 Cætera, ſed *vaſis* dempto, correpta dabuntur.

ES patrium breviat : demas *locupleſque*, *quieſque*,
 Et *manſues*, *hæres*, *merces*, & Græca per *etis*.

Corripit *IS* creſcens patrium : ſed porrigere *gliris*,
 Et quod Romuleum genitivum format in *iris*.
 Et *Pſopbis*, *Crenis*, *Nefis*, Græcumque quod in dat.

OS patrii crementa dedit producta : ſed aufer
 Quæ tria correptis gaudent, *bos*, *compos*, & *impos*.

US crementa rapit : ſed in *uris*, & *utis*, & *udis*,
 Quod præit *u* longum eſt : *Ligus* hinc at tolle, *pecuſque*,
Intercuſque. Gradus medius producit *US oris*.

YS celerabit *ydos* : ſed tardè proferet *inis*.

Conſona cum præit *S*, patrii penultima curta eſt.
 Hinc *Cyclops*, *ſeps*, *gryps*, *Cercops*, *plebs* aufer & *hydraps*.

T breve crementum patrii per *itis* ſibi poſcit.

Præ *gis* vocalem rapit *X*. Producito *lex*, *rex*.
EX icis abbreviat, *vibex* niſi. Cætera produc.

The CREMENTS of the plural number. p. 262.

Pluralis caſus, ſi creſcit, protrahit *A*, *E*,
 Et ſimul *O*. *Bubus* dempto, ſed corripit *I*, *U*.

The INCREASE of VERBS. p. 263.

A verbum creſcens auctu producit in omni.
 Excipe crementum *dare* primum quod breve poſcit.

E quoque producent verba increſcentia : verùm
 Prima *E* corripunt ante *r* duo tempora ternæ.
Rere ſit & *reris* longum, *beris* at *bere* curtum.
 Semper *E* corripitur præ *ram*, *rim*, *roque* locatum.
 Curtat & interdum *ſteterunt*, *dederuntque* Poëta.

Corripit *I* creſcens verbum : ſed deme *velimus*,
Nolimus, *ſimus*, quæque hiſ ſata cætera ; jungens

Ivi præteritum, prima incrementaque quartæ.
 Præterito curtabis *imus* tamen undique : vates
 Exacto variant *rimus*, *ritis*que futuro.

O produc verbis crescentibus ; U breve profer.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A in the end of a word. p. 265.

Casibus A flexum brevia. Sed protrahe sextum,
 Et quintum, Græco quando hic de nomine in *as* fit.
 Casibus haud flexum produc. *Ita*, cum *quia*, & *eja*,
 Et *putà* non verbum subduxeris, *ballequelvja*.
 Curta quoque interdum, *contra*, *ultra*, & *ginta* creata.

E in the end of a word. p. 266.

E brevia. Primæ produc, et nomina quintæ
 Cum natis. Adde pluralia cuncta : secundæ
 Induperativum focians. Monosyllaba, demptis
 Encliticis ac syllabicis, quoque longa repones.
 Adde à mobilibus flexûs quæcunque secundi
 Manârunt, summique gradûs adverbia quævis.
 Sed *benè* cum *malè* corripies, *infernè*, *superne*,
 Productis *ferme* atque *ferè* jungantur, & *obe*.

I in the end of a word. p. 266.

I longum pono. Vocitantem corripe Græcis.
 His tamen at ternus dabitur crescentibus anceps.
 Sic variato *mibi*, *tibi*, cum *sibi* : sed magè curtis
 Vult *ibi*, vultque *cui*, *nisi*, mox *ubi*, cum *quasi*, jungi.
Sicuti sed breviant, cum *neubi*, *ficubi*, vates.

O in the end of a word. p. 266 & 267.

O commune loces. Dabis at monosyllaba longis,
 Græcaque ceu *Dido*, ternum sextumque secundæ,
 Et patrium Græcum, atque adverbia nomine nata,
 Quò jungens & *edò*. Variant at *denuò*, *serò*,
Mutuò, *postremò*, *verò* ; *modò* sed breve pones,
 Sæpiùs *ambo*, *duo*, *scio* corripe, & *illicò* & *imò*,
 Et *cedo da* signans, *ego* queis *homo*, cum *ciò* junge.
 Sunt aliis variata Gerundia, longa Maroni.
 Ergò pro causa produc : locus editur anceps.

U and Y in the end of a word. p. 267.

U semper longis, sed Y raptis jungere oportet.

B, D, L, M, R, and T, in the end of a word. p. 267.

Corrippe B Latium: peregrinum at tendere malim.

D breve ponatur. Variare at Barbara possis.

L breve sit. Cum *sol, sal, nil*, tolluntur Hebræa.

M nunc vocalis perimit: rapuere vetusti.

R brevis. Produc ejus dat patrius eris;

Addito *Iber, ær, æther*. Sit *Celtiber* anceps.

At *par, far, lar, Nar*, quoque *cur, fur*, adjice longis.

T breve semper erit, nisi quondam syneopa taret.

C and N in the end of a word. p. 267.

C produc, præter *nec, donec*: sed variabis

Hic bene pronomen: *fac* verbum jungimus isti.

N produc. Demas EN *inis* dans, quæque priore

Græca per ON casus numero tenuere secundæ;

Et quartum casum, si sit brevis ultima recti.

Sin quoque pluralis ternæ conjunge Pelasgum:

Forstian, in, forsan, tamen, an, viden' insuper addens.

AS, ES, and OS, in the end of a word. p. 268.

AS produc. Patrio sed *adis* quod flectit, *ansque*,

Sit breve: plurales ternæ quibus addito quartos.

Ponitur ES longum. Pluralia corrippe Græca

Quæ crescunt; velut *es de sum; penes* additur illi;

Cum neutris; & queis patrii penultima curta est

Ternæ. Tolle *Ceres, paries, aries, abies, pes*.

OS produc. Patrius brevis est, & *compas & impos*,

Osque offis præbens. Rectos breviate secundæ,

(O nisi det patrius:) neutra his dein additio Graium.

IS, US, and YS, in the end of a word. p. 268.

IS brevis. Verùm plurales protraho casus;

ISque quod in patrio mutatur in *itis & isis*,

Aut *entis*; *gratisque foris, glis, vis* quoque, nomen

Seu verbum fuerit : sicut & persona secunda

Protrahit IS, quoties *itis* plurale reponit.

In subjunctivi *ris* est commune futuro.

US correpta datur. Monosyllaba cum genitivis

Ternæ vel quartæ produc : numerique secundi

In quartâ primum, quartum quintumque ; & in *uris*,

Dumve in *utis* patrius, vel in *udis*, & *untis*, *odisve* est ;

Aut quintus fit in *u*, longus tum rectus habetur.

Ergo produces venerabile nomen IESUS.

YS junges brevibus. *Tethys* reperitur at anceps.

Longaque sunt rectis aliter quæ casibus VN dant.

The last syllable of a verse. p. 269.

Ultima cujusque est communis syllaba versûs.

III. The QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVES and COMPOUNDS.

1. *The quantity of Derivatives.* p. 269.

Derivata tenent mensuram primigenorum :

Orta tamen brevibus, *suspicio, regula, sedes,*

Secius, humanus, penuria, mobilis, humor,

Jumentum, fomes, primam producere gaudent.

Corripiunt sed *arista, vadium, sopor,* atque *lucerna,*

Duxque ducis, stabilisque, fides, ditioque, quasillus,

Nata licet longis ; quæ pluraque suggeret usus.

2. *The quantity of Compounds,* p. 270.

Simplicium servant legem composita suorum,

Quamvis diphthongus vel vocalis varietur.

At breviant *nihilum* cum *pejero, dejero*, nec non

Veridicus, fociis junctis, & *semisopitus*.

Cognitus his addes, velut *agnitus, innubus*, atque

Pronubus : at longis *ambitus* mobile junges,

Imbecillus item : sed *connubium* variabis.

Quam disjuncta dabat mensuram præpositura,

Juncta tenet : subiens illam nisi litera mutet.

Est PRO breve in Græcis, PRO longum ritè Latinis.

At rape quæ *fundus, fugio, nepis*que *nepos*que,

Et *festum, fari, fateor, fanumque* creârunt,
 Hisce *profectò* addes, pariterque *procella, protervus*.
 Atque *propago* genus, *propago* protrahe vitis.
Propino varia, verbum *propago, profundo* :
 Cum *pello, curo* genitis, *Proserpina* jungè.
 Se produc & DI, præter *dirimo* atque *difertus*.
 Est RE breve : at viduum personis protrahe *refert*.
 Pars si componens fini prior *i* vel *o* donat,
 Sit breve : *vaticinor* monstraverit, *Arctophylaxque*.
 I quibus est flexu mutabile jungito longis,
 Quæque queunt sensu salvo divellier, addens
 De quibus aut Crasis aliquid vel Syncopa tollit.
Idem masculineum produc, & *ubique & ibidem* ;
 Huic dein agglomerans turbæ composta *diei*.
 His *intro, retro, controque & quando* creata
 (*Quandoquidem* excepto,) bene junxeris, atque *alioquin*,
 Quæque per *o* magnum scribuntur nomina Graiis.

FIGURES of PROSODY.

Synalæpha and *Ecthlipsis*. p. 275.

Vocalem *Synalæpha, Ecthlipsis & m* quoque tollit,
 Altera cum voci est vocalis prima sequenti.

Synæresis and *Diæresis*. p. 276.

Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæresis* esto.
 Distrahit in geminas resoluta *Diæresis* unam.

Systolè and *Diastolè*. p. 277.

Systola præcipitat vocales ritè trahendas.
 Protrahit huic adversa *Diastola* corripiendas.

Figures of DICTION. p. 277.

PROTHESIS apponit capiti, sed APHÆRESIS aufert.
 SYNCOPA de medio tollit, sed EPENTHESIS addit.
 Abstrahit APOCOPE fini, sed dat PARAGOGÈ.
 Constringit CRASIS, distracta DIÆRESIS effert.
 Litera si legitur transposita, METATHESIS exit.
 ANTITHESIN dices, tibi litera si varietur.

IV. RULES concerning VERBS.

VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION wanting both PRE-
TERITE and SUPINE. p. 108.

———— *Labo, nexo, cum plico* nil dant.

VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting the SU-
PINE. p. 108.

Quod dat UI neutrum, *timeo, fileoque*, supina
Nulla dabunt. *Valeo, placeo, caret & licet* aufer,
Paret, item *jaceo, caleo, noceo, doleoque* ;
Queis coalet, latet atque meret sociabis, *oletque*.

Arceo quod simplex nescit, dant nata supinum :
Quod retinent *taceo, lateo, sobolique* recusant.

————— *Viduata* supinis

Si capiunt *urget, cum fulget, turget, & alget*.

VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting both PRE-
TERITE and SUPINE. p. 111.

Nil formant *laetet, livet, scateoque renidet*,
Mæret, avet, pollet, flavet, cum denseo glabret.

—————
[Omitted by mistake in page 305.]

Et *festum, fari, fateor, fanumque* creârunt.
 Hisce *profec̄to* addes, pariterque *procella, protervus*.
 Atque *propago* genus, *propago* protrahe *vitis*.
Propino varia, verbum *propago, profundo* :
 Cum *oello, curo* genitiis. *Proserpina* iunge.

Inverry

Heath Hall

Aberdeenshire

1879

[

1879

Litera si legitur transposita, DIAANTHESIS dicitur.
 ANTITHESIS dices, tibi litera si varietur.

FINIS.

SCOTLAND

Faint, illegible handwriting at the top of the page.









